

APPLICATION, ADMINISTRATION AND SCOPE

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
ADA CHAPTER 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION	1. PURPOSE. See Appendix 1. ⁴	IBC SECTION 101 GENERAL
101.1 General. This document contains scoping and technical requirements for accessibility to sites, facilities, buildings, and elements by individuals with disabilities. The requirements are to be applied during the design, construction, additions to, and alteration of sites, facilities, buildings, and elements to the extent required by regulations issued by Federal agencies under the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA).	This document sets guidelines for accessibility to places of public accommodation and commercial facilities by individuals with disabilities. These guidelines are to be applied during the design, construction, and alteration of such buildings and facilities to the extent required by regulations issued by Federal agencies, including the Department of Justice, under the Americans with Disabilities Act of	IBC 101.3 Intent. ⁵ The purpose of this code is to establish the minimum requirements to safeguard the public health, safety and general welfare through structural strength, means of egress facilities, stability, sanitation, adequate light and ventilation, energy conservation, and safety to life and property from fire and other hazards attributed to the built environment and to provide safety to fire fighters and emergency responders during emergency operations.

¹ Published in the *Federal Register* on July 23, 2004

² 28 CFR Part 36, App. A, July 1, 1994 Edition.

³ International Code Council (ICC) 2003 *International Building Code* and 2004 Supplement (referencing ICC/ANSI A117.1-2003) Copyright© 2004, International Code Council, Inc. All rights reserved. Reprinted with permission.

⁴ The appendix to this analysis contains requirements that were added to the Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG) by the U.S. Access Board, subsequent to the DOJ adoption of the Standards for Accessible Design in 1994, through September 2002. The material in the appendix has not been incorporated in the Department of Justice accessibility standards and therefore is not enforceable. It is referenced herein to indicate the source of the corresponding New ADAAG requirements.

⁵ Sections in this column are prefaced by 'IBC' or 'ANSI' to indicate the source as the *International Building Code* or ICC/ANSI A117.1 standard, respectively

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>1990.</p> <p>The technical specifications 4.2 through 4.35, of these guidelines are the same as those of the American National Standard Institute's document A117.1-1980, except as noted in this text by italics. However, sections 4.1.1 through 4.1.7 and sections 5 through 10 are different from ANSI A117.1 in their entirety and are printed in standard type.</p> <p>The illustrations and text of ANSI A117.1 are reproduced with permission from the American National Standards Institute. Copies of the standard may be purchased from the American National Standards Institute at 1430 Broadway, New York, New York 10018.</p>	<p>ANSI 101 Purpose</p> <p>The technical criteria in Chapters 3 through 9, and Sections 1002, 1003 and 1005 of this standard make sites, facilities, buildings and elements accessible to and usable by people with such physical disabilities as the inability to walk, difficulty walking, reliance on walking aids, blindness and visual impairment, deafness and hearing impairment, incoordination, reaching and manipulation disabilities, lack of stamina, difficulty interpreting and reacting to sensory information, and extremes of physical size. The intent of these sections is to allow a person with a physical disability to independently get to, enter, and use a site, facility, building, or element.</p> <p>Section 1004 of this standard provides criteria for Type B units. These criteria are intended to be consistent with the intent of the criteria of the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) Fair Housing Accessibility Guidelines. The Type B units are intended to supplement, not replace, Accessible units or Type A units as specified in this standard.</p> <p>This standard is intended for adoption by government agencies and by organizations setting model codes to achieve uniformity in the technical design criteria in building codes and other regulations.</p>
<p>101.2 Effect on Removal of Barriers in Existing Facilities. This document does not</p>		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>address existing facilities unless altered at the discretion of a covered entity. The Department of Justice has authority over existing facilities that are subject to the requirement for removal of barriers under title III of the ADA. Any determination that this document applies to existing facilities subject to the barrier removal requirement is solely within the discretion of the Department of Justice and is effective only to the extent required by regulations issued by the Department of Justice.</p>		
	2. GENERAL.	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>102 Dimensions for Adults and Children The technical requirements are based on adult dimensions and anthropometrics. In addition, this document includes technical requirements based on children's dimensions and anthropometrics for drinking fountains, water closets, toilet compartments, lavatories and sinks, dining surfaces, and work surfaces.</p>	<p>2.1 Provisions for Adults. The specifications in these guidelines are based upon adult dimensions and anthropometrics.</p> <p>See also Appendix 2.1.</p>	<p>ANSI 102 Anthropometric Provisions The technical criteria in this standard are based on adult dimensions and anthropometrics. This standard also contains technical criteria based on children's dimensions and anthropometrics for drinking fountains, water closets, toilet compartments, lavatories and sinks, dining surfaces and work surfaces.</p>
<p>103 Equivalent Facilitation Nothing in these requirements prevents the use of designs, products, or technologies as alternatives to those prescribed, provided they result in substantially equivalent or greater accessibility and usability.</p>	<p>2.2 Equivalent Facilitation. Departures from particular technical and scoping requirements of this guideline by the use of other designs and technologies are permitted where the alternative designs and technologies used will provide substantially equivalent or greater access to and usability of the facility.</p>	<p>ANSI 103 Compliance Alternatives Nothing in this standard is intended to prevent the use of designs, products, or technologies as alternatives to those prescribed by this standard, provided they result in equivalent or greater accessibility and such equivalency is approved by the administrative authority adopting this standard.</p>
		<p>IBC104.11 Alternative materials, design and methods of construction and equipment. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been approved. An alternative material, design or method of construction shall be approved where the building official finds that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, at least the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety.
	3. MISCELLANEOUS INSTRUCTIONS AND DEFINITIONS.	
104 Conventions	<p>3.1 Graphic Conventions. Graphic conventions are shown in Table 1. Dimensions that are not marked minimum or maximum are absolute, unless otherwise indicated in the text or captions.</p> <p>NOTE: Table 1 describes graphic conventions for showing dimensions on figures between boundary and element lines, how the direction of approach is denoted, centerline designation and boundary of clear floor area. All dimensions are shown in inches above the measure line, with the metric equivalent below. Where the dimension does not fit conveniently between lines, the measure line is extended beyond the lines and the dimension placed above (and below) the extension.</p>	ANSI 104 Conventions
		ANSI 104.1 General. Where specific criteria of this standard differ from the general criteria of this standard, the specific criteria shall apply.
104.1 Dimensions. Dimensions that are not stated as "maximum" or "minimum" are absolute.	3.2 Dimensional Tolerances. All dimensions are subject to conventional building industry tolerances for field conditions.	ANSI 104.2 Dimensions. Dimensions that are not stated as "maximum" or "minimum" are absolute. All dimensions are subject to conventional industry tolerances.
104.1.1 Construction and Manufacturing Tolerances. All dimensions are subject to conventional industry tolerances except where		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
the requirement is stated as a range with specific minimum and maximum end points.		
104.2 Calculation of Percentages. Where the required number of elements or facilities to be provided is determined by calculations of ratios or percentages and remainders or fractions result, the next greater whole number of such elements or facilities shall be provided. Where the determination of the required size or dimension of an element or facility involves ratios or percentages, rounding down for values less than one half shall be permitted.		
104.3 Figures. Unless specifically stated otherwise, figures are provided for informational purposes only.		ANSI 104.3 Figures. Unless specifically stated, figures included herein are provided for informational purposes only and are not considered part of the standard.
	3.3 Notes. The text of these guidelines does not contain notes or footnotes. Additional information, explanations, and advisory materials are located in the Appendix. Paragraphs marked with an asterisk have related, nonmandatory material in the Appendix. In the Appendix, the corresponding paragraph numbers are preceded by an A.	
	3.4 General Terminology. <i>comply with.</i> Meet one or more specifications of these guidelines. <i>if, if ... then.</i> Denotes a specification that applies only when the conditions described are	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>present.</p> <p><i>may</i>. Denotes an option or alternative.</p> <p><i>shall</i>. Denotes a mandatory specification or requirement.</p> <p><i>should</i>. Denotes an advisory specification or recommendation.</p>	
		ANSI 104.4 Floor or Floor Surface. The terms floor or floor surface refer to the finish floor surface or ground surface, as applicable.
105 Referenced Standards	See Appendix 2.3	IBC CHAPTER 35 REFERENCED STANDARDS
<p>105.1 General. The standards listed in 105.2 are incorporated by reference in this document and are part of the requirements to the prescribed extent of each such reference. The Director of the Federal Register has approved these standards for incorporation by reference in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of the referenced standards may be inspected at the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board, 1331 F Street, NW, Suite 1000, Washington, DC 20004; at the Department of Justice, Civil Rights Division, Disability Rights Section, 1425 New York Avenue, NW, Washington, DC; at the Department of Transportation, 400 Seventh Street, SW, Room 10424, Washington DC; or at the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). For</p>	See Appendix 2.3.1	<p>IBC 102.4 Referenced codes and standards. The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be considered part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference. Where differences occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
information on the availability of this material at NARA, call (202) 741-6030, or go to http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html .		
105.2 Referenced Standards. The specific edition of the standards listed below are referenced in this document. Where differences occur between this document and the referenced standards, this document applies.	See Appendix 2.3.2	Chapter 35 This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 102.4.
105.2.1 ANSI/BHMA. Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association, 355 Lexington Avenue, 17th floor, New York, NY 10017 (http://www.buildershardware.com).		
ANSI/BHMA A156.10-1999 American National Standard for Power Operated Pedestrian Doors (see 404.3).	See 4.13.12	BHMA A156.10--99
ANSI/BHMA A156.19-1997 American National Standard for Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors (see 404.3, 408.3.2.1, and 409.3.1). ANSI/BHMA A156.19-2002 American National Standard for Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors (see 404.3, 408.3.2.1, and 409.3.1).	See 4.13.12	BHMA A156.19--97
105.2.2 ASME. Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the American		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
Society of Mechanical Engineers, Three Park Avenue, New York, New York 10016 (http://www.asme.org).		
ASME A17.1- 2000 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, including ASME A17.1a-2002 Addenda and ASME A17.1b-2003 Addenda (see 407.1, 408.1, 409.1, and 810.9).	See 4.10.1	ASME A17.1-2000
ASME A18.1-1999 Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts, including ASME A18.1a-2001 Addenda and ASME A18.1b-2001 Addenda (see 410.1). ASME A18.1-2003 Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts, (see 410.1).	See 4.11.2	ASME A18.1-2003
105.2.3 ASTM. Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 100 Bar Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, Pennsylvania 19428 (http://www.astm.org).	See Appendix 2.3.2.1	
ASTM F 1292-99 Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment (see 1008.2.6.2).	See Appendix 15.6.7.2	
ASTM F 1292-04 Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surfacing Materials Within the Use Zone of Playground Equipment (see 1008.2.6.2).	See Appendix 15.6.7.2	
ASTM F 1487-01 Standard Consumer Safety Performance Specification for Playground		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
Equipment for Public Use (see 106.5).		
ASTM F 1951-99 Standard Specification for Determination of Accessibility of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment (see 1008.2.6.1).	See also Appendix 15.6.7.1	
105.2.4 ICC/IBC. Copies of the referenced standard may be obtained from the International Code Council, 5203 Leesburg Pike, Suite 600, Falls Church, Virginia 22041 (www.iccsafe.org).	See Appendix 2.3.2.2	
International Building Code, 2000 Edition (see 207.1, 207.2, 216.4.2, 216.4.3, and 1005.2.1). International Building Code, 2001 Supplement (see 207.1 and 207.2). International Building Code, 2003 Edition (see 207.1, 207.2, 216.4.2, 216.4.3, and 1005.2.1).	See Appendix 15.3.3.2	
		ANSI 105.2.1 Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices: MUTCD – 2000 (The Federal Highway Administration, Office of Transportation Operations, Room 3408, 400 7th Street, S.W., Washington, DC 20590)
105.2.5 NFPA. Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, Massachusetts 02169-7471, (http://www.nfpa.org).		
NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm Code, 1999 Edition (see 702.1 and 809.5.2).		ANSI 105.2.2 National Fire Alarm Code: NFPA 72–2002 (National Fire Protection

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm Code, 2002 Edition (see 702.1 and 809.5.2).		Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269–9101)
		IBC E112 DOJ 28 CFR Part 36 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Washington D.C.: Department of Justice, 1991
106 Definitions	3.5 Definitions.	IBC SECTION 1102 DEFINITIONS
106.1 General. For the purpose of this document, the terms defined in 106.5 have the indicated meaning.		IBC 1102.1 General. The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this chapter and as used elsewhere in this code, have the meanings shown herein.
106.2 Terms Defined in Referenced Standards. Terms not defined in 106.5 or in regulations issued by the Department of Justice and the Department of Transportation to implement the Americans with Disabilities Act, but specifically defined in a referenced standard, shall have the specified meaning from the referenced standard unless otherwise stated.		IBC 201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the <i>International Fuel Gas Code</i> , <i>International Fire Code</i> , <i>International Mechanical Code</i> or <i>International Plumbing Code</i> , such terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.
		ANSI 106.2 Terms Defined in Referenced Standards. Terms specifically defined in a referenced standard, and not defined in this section, shall have the specified meaning from the referenced standard.
106.3 Undefined Terms. The meaning of terms not specifically defined in 106.5 or in regulations issued by the Department of Justice and the Department of Transportation to implement the Americans with Disabilities Act or in referenced standards shall be as defined by collegiate dictionaries in the sense that the context implies.		IBC 201.4 Terms not defined. Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
106.4 Interchangeability. Words, terms and phrases used in the singular include the plural and those used in the plural include the singular.		IBC 201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words stated in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.
106.5 Defined Terms.		ANSI 106.5 Defined Terms.
	Access Aisle. An accessible pedestrian space between elements, such as parking spaces, seating, and desks, that provides clearances appropriate for use of the elements.	
Accessible. A site, building, facility, or portion thereof that complies with this part.	Accessible. Describes a site, building, facility, or portion thereof that complies with these guidelines.	IBC ACCESSIBLE. A site, building, facility or portion thereof that complies with this chapter.
	Accessible Element. An element specified by these guidelines (for example, telephone, controls, and the like).	
Accessible Means of Egress. A continuous and unobstructed way of egress travel from any point in a building or facility that provides an accessible route to an area of refuge, a horizontal exit, or a public way.		IBC ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS. A continuous and unobstructed way of egress travel from any point in a building or facility that provides an accessible route to an area of refuge, a horizontal exit or a public way.
	Accessible Route. A continuous unobstructed path connecting all accessible elements and spaces of a building or facility. Interior accessible routes may include corridors, floors, ramps, elevators, lifts, and clear floor space at fixtures. Exterior accessible routes may include parking access aisles, curb ramps, crosswalks at vehicular ways, walks, ramps, and lifts.	IBC ACCESSIBLE ROUTE. A continuous, unobstructed path that complies with this chapter.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	Accessible Space. Space that complies with these guidelines.	
		IBC ACCESSIBLE UNIT. A dwelling unit or sleeping unit that complies with this code and Chapters 1 through 9 of ICC A117.1.
	Adaptability. The ability of certain building spaces and elements, such as kitchen counters, sinks, and grab bars, to be added or altered so as to accommodate the needs of individuals with or without disabilities or to accommodate the needs of persons with different types or degrees of disability.	
Addition. An expansion, extension, or increase in the gross floor area or height of a building or facility.	Addition. An expansion, extension, or increase in the gross floor area of a building or facility.	IBC ADDITION. An extension or increase in floor area or height of a building or structure.
Administrative Authority. A governmental agency that adopts or enforces regulations and guidelines for the design, construction, or alteration of buildings and facilities.	Administrative Authority. A governmental agency that adopts or enforces regulations and guidelines for the design, construction, or alteration of buildings and facilities.	
Alteration. A change to a building or facility that affects or could affect the usability of the building or facility or portion thereof. Alterations include, but are not limited to, remodeling, renovation, rehabilitation, reconstruction, historic restoration, resurfacing of circulation paths or vehicular ways, changes or rearrangement of the structural parts or elements, and changes or rearrangement in the plan configuration of walls and full-height partitions.	Alteration. An alteration is a change to a building or facility made by, on behalf of, or for the use of a public accommodation or commercial facility, that affects or could affect the usability of the building or facility or part thereof. Alterations include, but are not limited to, remodeling, renovation, rehabilitation, reconstruction, historic restoration, changes or rearrangement of the structural parts or elements, and changes or rearrangement in the plan configuration of walls and full-height	IBC ALTERATION. Any construction or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
Normal maintenance, reroofing, painting or wallpapering, or changes to mechanical and electrical systems are not alterations unless they affect the usability of the building or facility.	partitions. Normal maintenance, reroofing, painting or wallpapering, or changes to mechanical and electrical systems are not alterations unless they affect the usability of the building or facility.	
Amusement Attraction. Any facility, or portion of a facility, located within an amusement park or theme park which provides amusement without the use of an amusement device. Amusement attractions include, but are not limited to, fun houses, barrels, and other attractions without seats.	See Appendix 3.5	
Amusement Ride. A system that moves persons through a fixed course within a defined area for the purpose of amusement.	See Appendix 3.5	
Amusement Ride Seat. A seat that is built-in or mechanically fastened to an amusement ride intended to be occupied by one or more passengers.	See Appendix 3.5	
	Area of Rescue Assistance. An area, which has direct access to an exit, where people who are unable to use stairs may remain temporarily in safety to await further instructions or assistance during emergency evacuation.	
Area of Sport Activity. That portion of a room or space where the play or practice of a sport occurs.	See Appendix 3.5	
Assembly Area. A building or facility, or	Assembly Area. A room or space	IBC 303.1 Assembly Group A. Assembly

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>portion thereof, used for the purpose of entertainment, educational or civic gatherings, or similar purposes. For the purposes of these requirements, assembly areas include, but are not limited to, classrooms, lecture halls, courtrooms, public meeting rooms, public hearing rooms, legislative chambers, motion picture houses, auditoria, theaters, playhouses, dinner theaters, concert halls, centers for the performing arts, amphitheaters, arenas, stadiums, grandstands, or convention centers.</p>	<p>accommodating a group of individuals for recreational, educational, political, social, civic, or amusement purposes, or for the consumption of food and drink.</p>	<p>Group A occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for the gathering together of persons for purposes such as civic, social or religious functions, recreation, food or drink consumption or awaiting transportation. A room or space used for assembly purposes by less than 50 persons and accessory to another occupancy shall be included as a part of that occupancy. Assembly areas with less than 750 square feet (69.7 m²) and which are accessory to another occupancy according to Section 302.2.1 are not assembly occupancies. Assembly occupancies which are accessory to Group E in accordance with Section 302.2 are not considered assembly occupancies. Religious educational rooms and religious auditoriums which are accessory to churches in accordance with Section 302.2 and which have occupant loads of less than 100 shall be classified as A-3.</p>
<p>Assistive Listening System (ALS). An amplification system utilizing transmitters, receivers, and coupling devices to bypass the acoustical space between a sound source and a listener by means of induction loop, radio frequency, infrared, or direct-wired equipment.</p>		
	<p>Automatic Door. A door equipped with a power-operated mechanism and controls that open and close the door automatically upon receipt of a momentary actuating signal. The switch that begins the automatic cycle may be a photoelectric device, floor mat, or manual switch (see power-assisted door).</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
Boarding Pier. A portion of a pier where a boat is temporarily secured for the purpose of embarking or disembarking.	See Appendix 3.5	
Boat Launch Ramp. A sloped surface designed for launching and retrieving trailered boats and other water craft to and from a body of water.	See Appendix 3.5	
Boat Slip. That portion of a pier, main pier, finger pier, or float where a boat is moored for the purpose of berthing, embarking, or disembarking.	See Appendix 3.5	
Building. Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy.	Building. Any structure used and intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy.	IBC BUILDING. Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy.
Catch Pool. A pool or designated section of a pool used as a terminus for water slide flumes.	See Appendix 3.5	
Characters. Letters, numbers, punctuation marks and typographic symbols.		ANSI characters: Letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and typographic symbols.
Children's Use. Describes spaces and elements specifically designed for use primarily by people 12 years old and younger.		ANSI children's use: Spaces and elements specifically designed for use primarily by people 12 years old and younger.
Circulation Path. An exterior or interior way of passage provided for pedestrian travel, including but not limited to, walks, hallways, courtyards, elevators, platform lifts, ramps, stairways, and landings.	Circulation Path. An exterior or interior way of passage from one place to another for pedestrians, including, but not limited to, walks, hallways, courtyards, stairways, and stair landings.	IBC CIRCULATION PATH. An exterior or interior way of passage from one place to another for pedestrians.
	Clear. Unobstructed.	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	Clear Floor Space. The minimum unobstructed floor or ground space required to accommodate a single, stationary wheelchair and occupant.	
Closed-Circuit Telephone. A telephone with a dedicated line such as a house phone, courtesy phone or phone that must be used to gain entry to a facility.	Closed Circuit Telephone. A telephone with dedicated line(s) such as a house phone, courtesy phone or phone that must be used to gain entrance to a facility.	IBC E 102 CLOSED-CIRCUIT TELEPHONE. A telephone with a dedicated line such as a house phone, courtesy phone or phone that must be used to gain entrance to a facility.
Common Use. Interior or exterior circulation paths, rooms, spaces, or elements that are not for public use and are made available for the shared use of two or more people.	Common Use. Refers to those interior and exterior rooms, spaces, or elements that are made available for the use of a restricted group of people (for example, occupants of a homeless shelter, the occupants of an office building, or the guests of such occupants).	IBC COMMON USE. Interior or exterior circulation paths, rooms, spaces or elements that are not for public use and are made available for the shared use of two or more people.
		ANSI counter slope: Any slope opposing the running slope of a curb ramp.
Cross Slope. The slope that is perpendicular to the direction of travel (see running slope).	Cross Slope. The slope that is perpendicular to the direction of travel (see running slope).	ANSI cross slope: The slope that is perpendicular to the direction of travel (see running slope).
Curb Ramp. A short ramp cutting through a curb or built up to it.	Curb Ramp. A short ramp cutting through a curb or built up to it.	ANSI curb ramp: A short ramp cutting through a curb or built up to it.
		ANSI destination-oriented elevator system: An elevator system that provides lobby controls for the selection of destination floors, lobby indicators designating which elevator to board, and a car indicator designating the floors at which the car will stop.
Detectable Warning. A standardized surface	Detectable Warning. A standardized surface	IBC DETECTABLE WARNING. A

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
feature built in or applied to walking surfaces or other elements to warn of hazards on a circulation path.	feature built in or applied to walking surfaces or other elements to warn visually impaired people of hazards on a circulation path.	standardized surface feature built in or applied to walking surfaces or other elements to warn visually impaired persons of hazards on a circulation path.
	Dwelling Unit. A single unit which provides a kitchen or food preparation area, in addition to rooms and spaces for living, bathing, sleeping, and the like. Dwelling units include a single family home or a townhouse used as a transient group home; an apartment building used as a shelter; guestrooms in a hotel that provide sleeping accommodations and food preparation areas; and other similar facilities used on a transient basis. For purposes of these guidelines, use of the term "Dwelling Unit" does not imply the unit is used as a residence.	IBC DWELLING UNIT, TYPE A. A dwelling unit designed and constructed for accessibility in accordance with ICC/ANSI A117.1.
		IBC DWELLING UNIT OR SLEEPING UNIT, TYPE B. A dwelling unit or sleeping unit designed and constructed for accessibility in accordance with ICC A117.1, consistent with the design and construction requirements of the federal Fair Housing Act.
		IBC DWELLING UNIT OR SLEEPING UNIT, MULTISTORY. A dwelling unit or sleeping unit with habitable space located on more than one story.
	Egress, Means of. A continuous and unobstructed way of exit travel from any point in a building or facility to a public way. A means of egress comprises vertical and horizontal travel and may include intervening room spaces, doorways, hallways, corridors, passageways, balconies, ramps, stairs, enclosures, lobbies, horizontal exits, courts and yards. An accessible means of egress is one that complies with these guidelines and does not include stairs, steps, or escalators. Areas of rescue assistance or evacuation elevators may be included as part of accessible means of egress.	IBC MEANS OF EGRESS. A continuous and unobstructed path of vertical and horizontal egress travel from any occupied portion of a building or structure to a public way. A means of egress consists of three separate and distinct parts: the exit access, the exit and the exit discharge.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
Element. An architectural or mechanical component of a building, facility, space, or site.	Element. An architectural or mechanical component of a building, facility, space, or site, e.g., telephone, curb ramp, door, drinking fountain, seating, or water closet.	ANSI element: An architectural or mechanical component of a building, facility, space, or site.
Elevated Play Component. A play component that is approached above or below grade and that is part of a composite play structure consisting of two or more play components attached or functionally linked to create an integrated unit providing more than one play activity.	See Appendix 3.5	
		ANSI elevator car call sequential step scanning: A technology used to enter a car call by means of an up or down floor selection button.
Employee Work Area. All or any portion of a space used only by employees and used only for work. Corridors, toilet rooms, kitchenettes and break rooms are not employee work areas.		IBC EMPLOYEE WORK AREA. All or any portion of a space used only by employees and only for work. Corridors, toilet rooms, kitchenettes and break rooms are not employee work areas.
Entrance. Any access point to a building or portion of a building or facility used for the purpose of entering. An entrance includes the approach walk, the vertical access leading to the entrance platform, the entrance platform itself, vestibule if provided, the entry door or gate, and the hardware of the entry door or gate.	Entrance. Any access point to a building or portion of a building or facility used for the purpose of entering. An entrance includes the approach walk, the vertical access leading to the entrance platform, the entrance platform itself, vestibules if provided, the entry door(s) or gate(s), and the hardware of the entry door(s) or gate(s).	
Facility. All or any portion of buildings, structures, site improvements, elements, and pedestrian routes or vehicular ways located on	Facility. All or any portion of buildings, structures, site improvements, complexes, equipment, roads, walks, passageways,	IBC FACILITY. All or any portion of buildings, structures, site improvements, elements and pedestrian or vehicular routes located on a

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
a site.	parking lots, or other real or personal property located on a site.	site.
Gangway. A variable-sloped pedestrian walkway that links a fixed structure or land with a floating structure. Gangways that connect to vessels are not addressed by this document.	See Appendix 3.5	
Golf Car Passage. A continuous passage on which a motorized golf car can operate.	See Appendix 3.5	
	Ground Floor. Any occupiable floor less than one story above or below grade with direct access to grade. A building or facility always has at least one ground floor and may have more than one ground floor as where a split level entrance has been provided or where a building is built into a hillside.	
Ground Level Play Component. A play component that is approached and exited at the ground level.	See Appendix 3.5	
		IBC INTENDED TO BE OCCUPIED AS A RESIDENCE. This refers to a dwelling unit or sleeping unit that can or will be used all or part of the time as the occupant=s place of abode.
Key Station. Rapid and light rail stations, and commuter rail stations, as defined under criteria established by the Department of Transportation in 49 CFR 37.47 and 49 CFR 37.51, respectively.		
		ANSI key surface: The surface or plane of any key or button that must be touched to

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		activate or deactivate an operable part or a machine function or enter data.
		IBC E101.1 Scope. The provisions of this appendix shall control the supplementary requirements for the design and construction of facilities for accessibility to physically disabled persons.
		IBC E101.2 Design. Technical requirements for items herein shall comply with this code and ICC A117.1.
Mail Boxes. Receptacles for the receipt of documents, packages, or other deliverable matter. Mail boxes include, but are not limited to, post office boxes and receptacles provided by commercial mail-receiving agencies, apartment facilities, or schools.		IBC E102 MAILBOXES. Receptacles for the receipt of documents, packages or other deliverable matter. Mailboxes include, but are not limited to, post office boxes and receptacles provided by commercial mail-receiving agencies, apartment houses and schools.
Marked Crossing. A crosswalk or other identified path intended for pedestrian use in crossing a vehicular way.	Marked Crossing. A crosswalk or other identified path intended for pedestrian use in crossing a vehicular way.	ANSI marked crossing: A crosswalk or other identified path intended for pedestrian use in crossing a vehicular way.
Mezzanine. An intermediate level or levels between the floor and ceiling of any story with an aggregate floor area of not more than one-third of the area of the room or space in which the level or levels are located. Mezzanines have sufficient elevation that space for human occupancy can be provided on the floor below.	Mezzanine or Mezzanine Floor. That portion of a story which is an intermediate floor level placed within the story and having occupiable space above and below its floor.	IBC MEZZANINE. An intermediate level or levels between the floor and ceiling of any story with an aggregate floor area of not more than one-third of the area of the room or space in which the level or levels are located (see Section 505).
	Multifamily Dwelling. Any building containing more than two dwelling units.	
		IBC MULTILEVEL ASSEMBLY SEATING.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		Seating that is arranged in distinct levels where each level is comprised of either multiple rows, or a single row of box seats accessed from a separate level.
	Occupiable. A room or enclosed space designed for human occupancy in which individuals congregate for amusement, educational or similar purposes, or in which occupants are engaged at labor, and which is equipped with means of egress, light, and ventilation.	
Occupant Load. The number of persons for which the means of egress of a building or portion of a building is designed.		IBC OCCUPANT LOAD. The number of persons for which the means of egress of a building or portion thereof is designed.
Operable Part. A component of an element used to insert or withdraw objects, or to activate, deactivate, or adjust the element.	Operable Part. A part of a piece of equipment or appliance used to insert or withdraw objects, or to activate, deactivate, or adjust the equipment or appliance (for example, coin slot, pushbutton, handle).	ANSI operable part: A component of an element used to insert or withdraw objects, or to activate, deactivate, or adjust the element.
	Path of Travel. (Reserved).	
Pictogram. A pictorial symbol that represents activities, facilities, or concepts.		ANSI pictogram: A pictorial symbol that represents activities, facilities, or concepts.
Play Area. A portion of a site containing play components designed and constructed for children.	See Appendix 3.5	
Play Component. An element intended to generate specific opportunities for play, socialization, or learning. Play components are manufactured or natural; and are stand-alone or part of a composite play structure.	See Appendix 3.5	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	Power-assisted Door. A door used for human passage with a mechanism that helps to open the door, or relieves the opening resistance of a door, upon the activation of a switch or a continued force applied to the door itself.	
Private Building or Facility. A place of public accommodation or a commercial building or facility subject to title III of the ADA and 28 CFR part 36 or a transportation building or facility subject to title III of the ADA and 49 CFR 37.45.	See Appendix 3.5	
Public Building or Facility. A building or facility or portion of a building or facility designed, constructed, or altered by, on behalf of, or for the use of a public entity subject to title II of the ADA and 28 CFR part 35 or to title II of the ADA and 49 CFR 37.41 or 37.43.	See Appendix 3.5	
Public Entrance. An entrance that is not a service entrance or a restricted entrance.		IBC PUBLIC ENTRANCE. An entrance that is not a service entrance or a restricted entrance.
Public Use. Interior or exterior rooms, spaces, or elements that are made available to the public. Public use may be provided at a building or facility that is privately or publicly owned.	Public Use. Describes interior or exterior rooms or spaces that are made available to the general public. Public use may be provided at a building or facility that is privately or publicly owned.	IBC PUBLIC-USE AREAS. Interior or exterior rooms or spaces that are made available to the general public.
Public Way. Any street, alley or other parcel of land open to the outside air leading to a public street, which has been deeded, dedicated or otherwise permanently appropriated to the public for public use and which has a clear width and height of not less than 10 feet (3050)		IBC PUBLIC WAY. A street, alley or other parcel of land open to the outside air leading to a street, that has been deeded, dedicated or otherwise permanently appropriated to the public for public use and which has a clear width and height of not less than 10 feet (3048)

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
mm).		mm).
Qualified Historic Building or Facility. A building or facility that is listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places, or designated as historic under an appropriate State or local law.	4.1.7(1)(b) Definition. A qualified historic building or facility is a building or facility that is: (i) Listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places; or (ii) Designated as historic under an appropriate State or local law.	
Ramp. A walking surface that has a running slope steeper than 1:20.	Ramp. A walking surface which has a running slope greater than 1:20.	IBC RAMP. A walking surface that has a running slope steeper than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope).
Residential Dwelling Unit. A unit intended to be used as a residence, that is primarily long-term in nature. Residential dwelling units do not include transient lodging, inpatient medical care, licensed long-term care, and detention or correctional facilities.		
Restricted Entrance. An entrance that is made available for common use on a controlled basis but not public use and that is not a service entrance.		IBC RESTRICTED ENTRANCE. An entrance that is made available for common use on a controlled basis, but not public use, and that is not a service entrance.
Running Slope. The slope that is parallel to the direction of travel (see cross slope).	Running Slope. The slope that is parallel to the direction of travel (see cross slope).	ANSI running slope: The slope that is parallel to the direction of travel (see cross slope).
Self-Service Storage. Building or facility designed and used for the purpose of renting or leasing individual storage spaces to customers for the purpose of storing and removing personal property on a self-service basis.		IBC SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITY. Real property designed and used for the purpose of renting or leasing individual storage spaces to customers for the purpose of storing and removing personal property on a self-service basis.
Service Entrance. An entrance intended	Service Entrance. An entrance intended	IBC SERVICE ENTRANCE. An entrance

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
primarily for delivery of goods or services.	primarily for delivery of goods or services.	intended primarily for delivery of goods or services.
	Signage. Displayed verbal, symbolic, tactile, and pictorial information.	ANSI sign: An architectural element composed of displayed textual, symbolic, tactile, or pictorial information.
Site. A parcel of land bounded by a property line or a designated portion of a public right-of-way.	Site. A parcel of land bounded by a property line or a designated portion of a public right-of-way.	IBC SITE. A parcel of land bounded by a property line or a designated portion or a public right-of-way.
	Site Improvement. Landscaping, paving for pedestrian and vehicular ways, outdoor lighting, recreational facilities, and the like, added to a site.	
	Sleeping Accommodations. Rooms in which people sleep; for example, dormitory and hotel or motel guest rooms or suites.	ANSI sleeping unit: A room or space in which people sleep that can also include permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are also part of a dwelling unit are not sleeping units.
Soft Contained Play Structure. A play structure made up of one or more play components where the user enters a fully enclosed play environment that utilizes pliable materials, such as plastic, netting, or fabric.	See Appendix 3.5	
Space. A definable area, such as a room, toilet room, hall, assembly area, entrance, storage room, alcove, courtyard, or lobby.	Space. A definable area, e.g., room, toilet room, hall, assembly area, entrance, storage room, alcove, courtyard, or lobby.	
Story. That portion of a building or facility designed for human occupancy included between the upper surface of a floor and upper	Story. That portion of a building included between the upper surface of a floor and upper surface of the floor or roof next above. If such	IBC STORY. That portion of a building included between the upper surface of a floor and the upper surface of the floor or roof next

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
surface of the floor or roof next above. A story containing one or more mezzanines has more than one floor level.	portion of a building does not include occupiable space, it is not considered a story for purposes of these guidelines. There may be more than one floor level within a story as in the case of a mezzanine or mezzanines.	above (also see “Basement,” “Mezzanine” and Section 502.1). It is measured as the vertical distance from top to top of two successive tiers of beams or finished floor surfaces and, for the topmost story, from the top of the floor finish to the top of the ceiling joists or, where there is not a ceiling, to the top of the roof rafters.
Structural Frame. The columns and the girders, beams, and trusses having direct connections to the columns and all other members that are essential to the stability of the building or facility as a whole.	Structural Frame. The structural frame shall be considered to be the columns and the girders, beams, trusses and spandrels having direct connections to the columns and all other members which are essential to the stability of the building as a whole.	
Tactile. An object that can be perceived using the sense of touch.	Tactile. Describes an object that can be perceived using the sense of touch.	ANSI tactile: Describes an object that can be perceived using the sense of touch.
Technically Infeasible. With respect to an alteration of a building or a facility, something that has little likelihood of being accomplished because existing structural conditions would require removing or altering a load-bearing member that is an essential part of the structural frame; or because other existing physical or site constraints prohibit modification or addition of elements, spaces, or features that are in full and strict compliance with the minimum requirements.	4.1.6(1)(j) Technically Infeasible. Means, with respect to an alteration of a building or a facility, that it has little likelihood of being accomplished because existing structural conditions would require removing or altering a load-bearing member which is an essential part of the structural frame; or because other existing physical or site constraints prohibit modification or addition of elements, spaces, or features which are in full and strict compliance with the minimum requirements for new construction and which are necessary to provide accessibility. See also Appendix 3.5	IBC TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE. An alteration of a building or a facility that has little likelihood of being accomplished because the existing structural conditions require the removal or alteration of a load-bearing member that is an essential part of the structural frame, or because other existing physical or site constraints prohibit modification or addition of elements, spaces or features which are in full and strict compliance with the minimum requirements for new construction and which are necessary to provide accessibility.
Teeing Ground. In golf, the starting place for the hole to be played.	See Appendix 3.5	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>Transfer Device. Equipment designed to facilitate the transfer of a person from a wheelchair or other mobility aid to and from an amusement ride seat.</p>	<p>See Appendix 3.5</p>	
<p>Transient Lodging. A building or facility containing one or more guest room(s) for sleeping that provides accommodations that are primarily short-term in nature. Transient lodging does not include residential dwelling units intended to be used as a residence, inpatient medical care facilities, licensed long-term care facilities, detention or correctional facilities, or private buildings or facilities that contain not more than five rooms for rent or hire and that are actually occupied by the proprietor as the residence of such proprietor.</p>	<p>Transient Lodging. A building, facility, or portion thereof, excluding inpatient medical care facilities, that contains one or more dwelling units or sleeping accommodations. Transient lodging may include, but is not limited to, resorts, group homes, hotels, motels, and dormitories.</p> <p>9.1.1 EXCEPTION: Sections 9.1 through 9.4 do not apply to an establishment located within a building that contains not more than five rooms for rent or hire and that is actually occupied by the proprietor of such establishment as the residence of such proprietor.</p>	<p>IBC 1103.2.11 Residential Group R-1. Buildings of Group R-1 containing not more than five sleeping units for rent or hire that are also occupied as the residence of the proprietor are not required to be accessible.</p> <p>IBC 310.1 Residential Group R. Residential Group R includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for sleeping purposes when not classified as an Institutional Group I. Residential occupancies shall include the following:</p> <p>R-1 Residential occupancies where the occupants are primarily transient in nature, including: Boarding houses (transient) Hotels (transient) Motels (transient)</p> <p>1103.2.11 Residential Group R-1. Buildings of Group R-1 containing not more than five sleeping units for rent or hire that are also occupied as the residence of the proprietor are not required to be accessible.</p> <p>E102 TRANSIENT LODGING. A building, facility or portion thereof, excluding inpatient medical care facilities and long-term care facilities, that contains one or more dwelling units or sleeping units. Examples of transient</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		lodging include, but are not limited to, resorts, group homes, hotels, motels, dormitories, homeless shelters, halfway houses and social service lodging. See also IBC 310.2 Definitions, TRANSIENT.
Transition Plate. A sloping pedestrian walking surface located at the end(s) of a gangway.	See Appendix 3.5	
TTY. An abbreviation for teletypewriter. Machinery that employs interactive text-based communication through the transmission of coded signals across the telephone network. TTYs may include, for example, devices known as TDDs (telecommunication display devices or telecommunication devices for deaf persons) or computers with special modems. TTYs are also called text telephones.	Text Telephone. Machinery or equipment that employs interactive graphic (i.e., typed) communications through the transmission of coded signals across the standard telephone network. Text telephones can include, for example, devices known as TDDs (telecommunication display devices or telecommunication devices for deaf persons) or computers. See also Appendix 3.5	ANSI TTY: An abbreviation for teletypewriter. Equipment that employs interactive, text-based communications through the transmission of coded signals across the standard telephone network. The term TTY also refers to devices known as text telephones and TDDs.
Use Zone. The ground level area beneath and immediately adjacent to a play structure or play equipment that is designated by ASTM F 1487 (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1) for unrestricted circulation around the play equipment and where it is predicted that a user would land when falling from or exiting the play equipment.	See Appendix 3.5	
Vehicular Way. A route provided for vehicular traffic, such as in a street, driveway, or parking facility.	Vehicular Way. A route intended for vehicular traffic, such as a street, driveway, or parking lot.	ANSI vehicular way: A route provided for vehicular traffic.
Walk. An exterior prepared surface for	Walk. An exterior pathway with a prepared	ANSI walk: An exterior pathway with a

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
pedestrian use, including pedestrian areas such as plazas and courts.	surface intended for pedestrian use, including general pedestrian areas such as plazas and courts.	prepared surface for pedestrian use.
Wheelchair Space. Space for a single wheelchair and its occupant.		IBC WHEELCHAIR SPACE. A space for a single wheelchair and its occupant.
Work Area Equipment. Any machine, instrument, engine, motor, pump, conveyor, or other apparatus used to perform work. As used in this document, this term shall apply only to equipment that is permanently installed or built-in in employee work areas. Work area equipment does not include passenger elevators and other accessible means of vertical transportation.		
201 Application	4. ACCESSIBLE ELEMENTS AND SPACES: SCOPE AND TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS.	IBC SECTION 1101 GENERAL
	4.1 Minimum Requirements	
201.1 Scope. All areas of newly designed and newly constructed buildings and facilities and altered portions of existing buildings and facilities shall comply with these requirements.	4.1.1 Application. (1) General. All areas of newly designed or newly constructed buildings and facilities required to be accessible by 4.1.2 and 4.1.3 and altered portions of existing buildings and facilities required to be accessible by 4.1.6 shall comply with these guidelines, 4.1 through 4.35, unless otherwise provided in this section or as modified in a special application section.	IBC 1101.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design and construction of facilities for accessibility to physically disabled persons.
		IBC 1101.2 Design. Buildings and facilities shall be designed and constructed to be accessible in accordance with this code and

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		ICC A117.1.
201.2 Application Based on Building or Facility Use. Where a site, building, facility, room, or space contains more than one use, each portion shall comply with the applicable requirements for that use.	4.1.1(2) Application Based on Building Use. Special application sections 5 through 10 provide additional requirements for restaurants and cafeterias, medical care facilities, business and mercantile, libraries, accessible transient lodging, and transportation facilities. When a building or facility contains more than one use covered by a special application section, each portion shall comply with the requirements for that use.	IBC 1103.2.12 Day care facilities. Where a day care facility (Groups A-3, E, I-4 and R-3) is part of a dwelling unit, only the portion of the structure utilized for the day care facility is required to be accessible.
201.3 Temporary and Permanent Structures. These requirements shall apply to temporary and permanent buildings and facilities.	4.1.1(4) Temporary Structures. These guidelines cover temporary buildings or facilities as well as permanent facilities. Temporary buildings and facilities are not of permanent construction but are extensively used or are essential for public use for a period of time. Examples of temporary buildings or facilities covered by these guidelines include, but are not limited to: reviewing stands, temporary classrooms, bleacher areas, exhibit areas, temporary banking facilities, temporary health screening services, or temporary safe pedestrian passageways around a construction site. Structures, sites and equipment directly associated with the actual processes of construction, such as scaffolding, bridging, materials hoists, or construction trailers are not included.	IBC 1103.1 Where required. Sites, buildings, structures, facilities, elements and spaces, temporary or permanent, shall be accessible to persons with physical disabilities.
202 Existing Buildings and Facilities	4.1.6 Accessible Buildings: Alterations.	IBC SECTION 3409 ACCESSIBILITY FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS
202.1 General. Additions and alterations to	4.1.6 (1) General. Alterations to existing	IBC 3409.1 Scope. The provisions of Sections

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
existing buildings or facilities shall comply with 202.	buildings and facilities shall comply with the following:	<p>3409.1 through 3409.8 apply to maintenance, change of occupancy, additions and alterations to existing buildings, including those identified as historic buildings.</p> <p>Exception: Type B dwelling or sleeping units required by Section 1107 are not required to be provided in existing buildings and facilities.</p>
		<p>IBC 3409.3 Change of occupancy. Existing buildings, or portions thereof, that undergo a change of group or occupancy shall have all of the following accessible features:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. At least one accessible building entrance. 2. At least one accessible route from an accessible building entrance to primary function areas. 3. Signage complying with Section 1110. 4. Accessible parking, where parking is being provided. 5. At least one accessible passenger loading zone, when loading zones are provided. 6. At least one accessible route connecting accessible parking and accessible passenger loading zones to an accessible entrance. <p>Where it is technically infeasible to comply with the new construction standards for any of these requirements for a change of group or occupancy, the above items shall conform to</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		the requirements to the maximum extent technically feasible. Change of group or occupancy that incorporates any alterations or additions shall comply with this section and Sections 3409.4, 3409.5, 3409.6 and 3409.7.
<p>202.2 Additions. Each addition to an existing building or facility shall comply with the requirements for new construction. Each addition that affects or could affect the usability of or access to an area containing a primary function shall comply with 202.4.</p>	<p>4.1.5 Accessible Buildings: Additions. Each addition to an existing building or facility shall be regarded as an alteration. Each space or element added to the existing building or facility shall comply with the applicable provisions of 4.1.1 to 4.1.3, Minimum Requirements (for New Construction) and the applicable technical specifications of section 4 and the special application sections. Each addition that affects or could affect the usability of an area containing a primary function shall comply with 4.1.6(2).</p>	<p>IBC 3409.4 Additions. Provisions for new construction shall apply to additions. An addition that affects the accessibility to, or contains an area of primary function, shall comply with the requirements in Section 3409.6.</p>
<p>202.3 Alterations. Where existing elements or spaces are altered, each altered element or space shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 2.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Unless required by 202.4, where elements or spaces are altered and the circulation path to the altered element or space is not altered, an accessible route shall not be required. 2. In alterations, where compliance with applicable requirements is technically infeasible, the alteration shall comply with the requirements to the maximum extent feasible. 3. Residential dwelling units not required to be 	<p>4.1.6(1)(b) If existing elements, spaces, or common areas are altered, then each such altered element, space, feature, or area shall comply with the applicable provisions of 4.1.1 to 4.1.3 Minimum Requirements (for New Construction). If the applicable provision for new construction requires that an element, space, or common area be on an accessible route, the altered element, space, or common area is not required to be on an accessible route except as provided in 4.1.6(2) (Alterations to an Area Containing a Primary Function.)</p>	<p>IBC 3409.5 Alterations. A building, facility or element that is altered shall comply with the applicable provisions in Chapter 11 and ICC A117.1, unless technically infeasible. Where compliance with this section is technically infeasible, the alteration shall provide access to the maximum extent technically feasible.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The altered element or space is not required to be on an accessible route, unless required by Section 3409.6. 2. Accessible means of egress required by

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
accessible in compliance with a standard issued pursuant to the Americans with Disabilities Act or Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, shall not be required to comply with 202.3.	4.1.6(1)(j) EXCEPTION: In alteration work, if compliance with 4.1.6 is technically infeasible, the alteration shall provide accessibility to the maximum extent feasible. Any elements or features of the building or facility that are being altered and can be made accessible shall be made accessible within the scope of the alteration.	Chapter 10 are not required to be provided in existing buildings and facilities.
	4.1.6(1)(c) If alterations of single elements, when considered together, amount to an alteration of a room or space in a building or facility, the entire space shall be made accessible.	
202.3.1 Prohibited Reduction in Access. An alteration that decreases or has the effect of decreasing the accessibility of a building or facility below the requirements for new construction at the time of the alteration is prohibited.	4.1.6(1)(a) No alteration shall be undertaken which decreases or has the effect of decreasing accessibility or usability of a building or facility below the requirements for new construction at the time of alteration.	IBC 3409.2 Maintenance of facilities. A building, facility or element that is constructed or altered to be accessible shall be maintained accessible during occupancy.
202.3.2 Extent of Application. An alteration of an existing element, space, or area of a building or facility shall not impose a requirement for accessibility greater than required for new construction.	4.1.6(1)(d) No alteration of an existing element, space, or area of a building or facility shall impose a requirement for greater accessibility than that which would be required for new construction. For example, if the elevators and stairs in a building are being altered and the elevators are, in turn, being made accessible, then no accessibility modifications are required to the stairs connecting levels connected by the elevator. If stair modifications to correct unsafe conditions are required by other codes, the modifications shall be done in compliance with these	IBC 3409.5.1 Extent of application. An alteration of an existing element, space or area of a building or facility shall not impose a requirement for greater accessibility than that which would be required for new construction. Alterations shall not reduce or have the effect of reducing accessibility of a building, portion of a building or facility.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	guidelines unless technically infeasible.	
<p>202.4 Alterations Affecting Primary Function Areas. In addition to the requirements of 202.3, an alteration that affects or could affect the usability of or access to an area containing a primary function shall be made so as to ensure that, to the maximum extent feasible, the path of travel to the altered area, including the rest rooms, telephones, and drinking fountains serving the altered area, are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, unless such alterations are is proportionate to the overall alterations in terms of cost and scope as determined under criteria established by the Attorney General. In existing transportation facilities, an area of primary function shall be as defined under regulations published by the Secretary of the Department of Transportation or the Attorney General.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Residential dwelling units shall not be required to comply with 202.4.</p>	<p>4.1.6(2) Alterations to an Area Containing a Primary Function: In addition to the requirements of 4.1.6(1), an alteration that affects or could affect the usability of or access to an area containing a primary function shall be made so as to ensure that, to the maximum extent feasible, the path of travel to the altered area and the restrooms, telephones, and drinking fountains serving the altered area, are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, unless such alterations are disproportionate to the overall alterations in terms of cost and scope (as determined under criteria established by the Attorney General).</p> <p>4.1.6(1)(i) If the alteration work is limited solely to the electrical, mechanical, or plumbing system, or to hazardous material abatement, or automatic sprinkler retrofitting, and does not involve the alteration of any elements or spaces required to be accessible under these guidelines, then 4.1.6(2) does not apply.</p>	<p>IBC 3409.6 Alterations affecting an area containing a primary function. Where an alteration affects the accessibility to, or contains an area of primary function, the route to the primary function area shall be accessible. The accessible route to the primary function area shall include toilet facilities or drinking fountains serving the area of primary function.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The costs of providing the accessible route are not required to exceed 20 percent of the costs of the alterations affecting the area of primary function. 2. This provision does not apply to alterations limited solely to windows, hardware, operating controls, electrical outlets and signs. 3. This provision does not apply to alterations limited solely to mechanical systems, electrical systems, installation or alteration of fire protection systems and abatement of hazardous materials. 4. This provision does not apply to alterations undertaken for the primary purpose of increasing the accessibility of an existing building, facility or element.
	4.1.6(1)(e) At least one interior public text telephone complying with 4.31.9 shall be provided if:	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>(i) alterations to existing buildings or facilities with less than four exterior or interior public pay telephones would increase the total number to four or more telephones with at least one in an interior location; or</p> <p>(ii) alterations to one or more exterior or interior public pay telephones occur in an existing building or facility with four or more public telephones with at least one in an interior location.</p>	
<p>202.5 Alterations to Qualified Historic Buildings and Facilities. Alterations to a qualified historic building or facility shall comply with 202.3 and 202.4.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where the State Historic Preservation Officer or Advisory Council on Historic Preservation determines that compliance with the requirements for accessible routes, entrances, or toilet facilities would threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building or facility, the exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities for that element shall be permitted to apply.</p>	<p>4.1.7 Accessible Buildings: Historic Preservation.</p> <p>(1) Applicability:</p> <p>(a) General Rule. Alterations to a qualified historic building or facility shall comply with 4.1.6 (Accessible Buildings: Alterations), the applicable technical specifications of section 4 and the applicable special application sections unless it is determined in accordance with the procedures in 4.1.7(2) that compliance with the requirements for accessible routes (exterior and interior), ramps, entrances, or toilets would threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building or facility in which case the alternative requirements in 4.1.7(3) may be used for the feature.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: (Reserved).</p>	<p>IBC 3409.8 Historic buildings. These provisions shall apply to buildings and facilities designated as historic structures that undergo alterations or a change of occupancy, unless technically infeasible. Where compliance with the requirements for accessible routes, ramps, entrances or toilet facilities would threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building or facility, as determined by the authority having jurisdiction, the alternative requirements of Sections 3409.8.1 through 3409.8.5 for that element shall be permitted.</p>
	<p>4.1.7(2) Procedures:</p> <p>(a) Alterations to Qualified Historic Buildings and Facilities Subject to Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act:</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>(i) Section 106 Process. Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act (16 U.S.C. 470 f) requires that a Federal agency with jurisdiction over a Federal, federally assisted, or federally licensed undertaking consider the effects of the agency's undertaking on buildings and facilities listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places and give the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation a reasonable opportunity to comment on the undertaking prior to approval of the undertaking.</p> <p>(ii) ADA Application. Where alterations are undertaken to a qualified historic building or facility that is subject to section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act, the Federal agency with jurisdiction over the undertaking shall follow the section 106 process. If the State Historic Preservation Officer or Advisory Council on Historic Preservation agrees that compliance with the requirements for accessible routes (exterior and interior), ramps, entrances, or toilets would threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building or facility, the alternative requirements in 4.1.7(3) may be used for the feature.</p> <p>(b) Alterations to Qualified Historic Buildings and Facilities Not Subject to Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act. Where alterations are undertaken to a qualified historic building or facility that is not subject to section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act, if the entity undertaking the alterations believes that compliance with the requirements for accessible routes (exterior</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>and interior), ramps, entrances, or toilets would threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building or facility and that the alternative requirements in 4.1.7(3) should be used for the feature, the entity should consult with the State Historic Preservation Officer. If the State Historic Preservation Officer agrees that compliance with the accessibility requirements for accessible routes (exterior and interior), ramps, entrances or toilets would threaten or destroy the historical significance of the building or facility, the alternative requirements in 4.1.7(3) may be used.</p> <p>(c) Consultation With Interested Persons. Interested persons should be invited to participate in the consultation process, including State or local accessibility officials, individuals with disabilities, and organizations representing individuals with disabilities.</p> <p>(d) Certified Local Government Historic Preservation Programs. Where the State Historic Preservation Officer has delegated the consultation responsibility for purposes of this section to a local government historic preservation program that has been certified in accordance with section 101(c) of the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (16 U.S.C. 470a (c)) and implementing regulations (36 C.F.R. 61.5), the responsibility may be carried out by the appropriate local government body or official.</p>	
	4.1.7(3) Historic Preservation: Minimum Requirements	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>4.1.7(3)(a) At least one accessible route complying with 4.3 from a site access point to an accessible entrance shall be provided.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: A ramp with a slope no greater than 1:6 for a run not to exceed 2 ft (610 mm) may be used as part of an accessible route to an entrance.</p>	<p>IBC 3409.8.5 Ramps. The slope of a ramp run of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in eight units horizontal (12-percent slope).</p>
	<p>4.1.7(3)(e) Displays and written information, documents, etc., should be located where they can be seen by a seated person. Exhibits and signage displayed horizontally (e.g., open books), should be no higher than 44 in (1120 mm) above the floor surface.</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
203 General Exceptions	4.1.1(5) General Exceptions.	
	4.1.1(5)(a) In new construction, a person or entity is not required to meet fully the requirements of these guidelines where that person or entity can demonstrate that it is structurally impracticable to do so. Full compliance will be considered structurally impracticable only in those rare circumstances when the unique characteristics of terrain prevent the incorporation of accessibility features. If full compliance with the requirements of these guidelines is structurally impracticable, a person or entity shall comply with the requirements to the extent it is not structurally impracticable. Any portion of the building or facility which can be made accessible shall comply to the extent that it is not structurally impracticable.	
203.1 General. Sites, buildings, facilities, and elements are exempt from these requirements to the extent specified by 203.		IBC 1103.2 General exceptions. Sites, buildings, structures, facilities, elements and spaces shall be exempt from this chapter to the extent specified in this section.
		IBC 1103.2.1 Specific requirements. Accessibility is not required in buildings and facilities, or portions thereof, to the extent permitted by Sections 1104 through 1110.
		IBC 1103.2.2 Existing buildings. Existing buildings shall comply with Section 3409.
		IBC 1103.2.4 Detached dwellings. Detached one- and two-family dwellings and accessory structures, and their associated sites and

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		facilities as applicable in Section 101.2, are not required to be accessible.
		<p>IBC 1103.2.5 Utility buildings. Occupancies in Group U are exempt from the requirements of this chapter other than the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In agricultural buildings, access is required to paved work areas and areas open to the general public. 2. Private garages or carports that contain required accessible parking.
<p>203.2 Construction Sites. Structures and sites directly associated with the actual processes of construction, including but not limited to, scaffolding, bridging, materials hoists, materials storage, and construction trailers shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route. Portable toilet units provided for use exclusively by construction personnel on a construction site shall not be required to comply with 213 or to be on an accessible route.</p>	<p>4.1.1(4) Temporary Structures. These guidelines cover temporary buildings or facilities as well as permanent facilities. Temporary buildings and facilities are not of permanent construction but are extensively used or are essential for public use for a period of time. Examples of temporary buildings or facilities covered by these guidelines include, but are not limited to: reviewing stands, temporary classrooms, bleacher areas, exhibit areas, temporary banking facilities, temporary health screening services, or temporary safe pedestrian passageways around a construction site. Structures, sites and equipment directly associated with the actual processes of construction, such as scaffolding, bridging, materials hoists, or construction trailers are not included.</p>	<p>IBC 1103.2.6 Construction sites. Structures, sites and equipment directly associated with the actual processes of construction including, but not limited to, scaffolding, bridging, materials hoists, materials storage or construction trailers are not required to be accessible.</p>
<p>203.3 Raised Areas. Areas raised primarily for purposes of security, life safety, or fire safety, including but not limited to, observation or</p>	<p>4.1.1(5)(b) Accessibility is not required to (i) observation galleries used primarily for security purposes; or (ii) in non-occupiable spaces</p>	<p>IBC 1103.2.7 Raised areas. Raised areas used primarily for purposes of security, life safety or fire safety including, but not limited to,</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
lookout galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers, or life guard stands shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.	accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, very narrow passageways, or freight (non-passenger) elevators, and frequented only by service personnel for repair purposes; such spaces include, but are not limited to, elevator pits, elevator penthouses, piping or equipment catwalks. See also Appendix 4.1.1(5)(b)(I)	observation galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers or lifeguard stands are not required to be accessible or to be served by an accessible route.
203.4 Limited Access Spaces. Spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, or very narrow passageways shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.	4.1.1(5)(b) in non-occupiable spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, very narrow passageways, or freight (non-passenger) elevators, and frequented only by service personnel for repair purposes; such spaces include, but are not limited to, elevator pits, elevator penthouses, piping or equipment catwalks.	IBC 1103.2.8 Limited access spaces. Nonoccupiable spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, freight elevators or very narrow passageways, are not required to be accessible.
203.5 Machinery Spaces. Spaces frequented only by service personnel for maintenance, repair, or occasional monitoring of equipment shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route. Machinery spaces include, but are not limited to, elevator pits or elevator penthouses; mechanical, electrical or communications equipment rooms; piping or equipment catwalks; water or sewage treatment pump rooms and stations; electric substations and transformer vaults; and highway and tunnel utility facilities.	4.1.1(5)(b) in non-occupiable spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, very narrow passageways, or freight (non-passenger) elevators, and frequented only by service personnel for repair purposes; such spaces include, but are not limited to, elevator pits, elevator penthouses, piping or equipment catwalks. 4.1.3(5) EXCEPTION 2: Elevator pits, elevator penthouses, mechanical rooms, piping or equipment catwalks are exempted from this requirement. See also Appendix 4.1.1(5)(b)(ii)	IBC 1103.2.9 Equipment spaces. Spaces frequented only by personnel for maintenance, repair or monitoring of equipment are not required to be accessible. Such spaces include, but are not limited to, elevator pits, elevator penthouses, mechanical, electrical, or communications equipment rooms, piping or equipment catwalks, water or sewage treatment pump rooms and stations, electric substations and transformer vaults, and highway and tunnel utility facilities.
203.6 Single Occupant Structures. Single occupant structures accessed only by	See Appendix 4.1.1(5)(b)(iii)	IBC 1103.2.10 Single-occupant structures. Single-occupant structures accessed only by

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
passageways below grade or elevated above standard curb height, including but not limited to, toll booths that are accessed only by underground tunnels, shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.		passageways below grade or elevated above grade including, but not limited to, toll booths that are accessed only by underground tunnels, are not required to be accessible.
203.7 Detention and Correctional Facilities. In detention and correctional facilities, common use areas that are used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel and that do not serve holding cells or housing cells required to comply with 232, shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.		IBC 1103.2.13 Detention and correctional facilities. In detention and correctional facilities, common use areas that are used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel, and that do not serve holding cells or housing cells required to be accessible, are not required to be accessible or to be served by an accessible route.
		IBC 1103.2.14 Fuel-dispensing systems. The operable parts on fuel-dispensing devices shall comply with ICC A117.1, Section 308.2.1 or 308.3.1.
203.8 Residential Facilities. In residential facilities, common use areas that do not serve residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 through 809.4 shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.		
203.9 Employee Work Areas. Spaces and elements within employee work areas shall only be required to comply with 206.2.8, 207.1, and 215.3 and shall be designed and constructed so that individuals with disabilities can approach, enter, and exit the employee work area. Employee work areas, or portions	4.1.1(3) Areas Used Only by Employees as Work Areas. Areas that are used only as work areas shall be designed and constructed so that individuals with disabilities can approach, enter, and exit the areas. These guidelines do not require that any areas used only as work areas be constructed to permit maneuvering	IBC 1103.2.3 Employee work areas. Spaces and elements within employee work areas shall only be required to comply with Sections 907.9.1.2, 1007 and 1104.3.1 and shall be designed and constructed so that individuals with disabilities can approach, enter, and exit the work area. Work areas, or portions of work

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
of employee work areas, other than raised courtroom stations, that are less than 300 square feet (28 m ²) and elevated 7 inches (180 mm) or more above the finish floor or ground where the elevation is essential to the function of the space shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.	within the work area or be constructed or equipped (i.e., with racks or shelves) to be accessible.	areas, that are less than 150 square feet (14 m ²) in area and elevated 7 inches (178 mm) or more above the ground or finish floor where the elevation is essential to the function of the space shall be exempt from all requirements.
203.10 Raised Refereeing, Judging, and Scoring Areas. Raised structures used solely for refereeing, judging, or scoring a sport shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.	See Appendix 4.1.1(5)(b)	
203.11 Water Slides. Water slides shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.	See Appendix 4.1.1(5)(b)	
203.12 Animal Containment Areas. Animal containment areas that are not for public use shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.	See Appendix 4.1.1(5)(b)	
203.13 Raised Boxing or Wrestling Rings. Raised boxing or wrestling rings shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.	See Appendix 4.1.1(5)(b)	
203.14 Raised Diving Boards and Diving Platforms. Raised diving boards and diving platforms shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
204 Protruding Objects		IBC 1003.3 Protruding objects. Protruding objects shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1003.3.1 through 1003.3.4.
204.1 General. Protruding objects on circulation paths shall comply with 307. EXCEPTIONS: 1. Within areas of sport activity, protruding objects on circulation paths shall not be required to comply with 307. 2. Within play areas, protruding objects on circulation paths shall not be required to comply with 307 provided that ground level accessible routes provide vertical clearance in compliance with 1008.2.	4.1.2(3) All objects that protrude from surfaces or posts into circulation paths shall comply with 4.4. See also Appendix 4.1.2(2) 4.1.3(2) All objects that overhang or protrude into circulation paths shall comply with 4.4.	
		IBC 1109.1 General. Accessible building features and facilities shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1109.2 through 1109.15. Exception: Type A and Type B dwelling and sleeping units shall comply with ICC A117.1.
205 Operable Parts		IBC 1109.13 Controls, operating mechanisms and hardware. Controls, operating mechanisms and hardware intended for operation by the occupant, including switches that control lighting and ventilation, and electrical convenience outlets, in accessible spaces, along accessible routes or as parts of accessible elements shall be accessible.
205.1 General. Operable parts on accessible elements, accessible routes, and in accessible rooms and spaces shall comply with 309.	4.1.3(13) Controls and operating mechanisms in accessible spaces, along accessible routes, or as parts of accessible elements (for example, light switches and dispenser controls) shall comply with 4.27.	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
EXCEPTIONS: 1. Operable parts that are intended for use only by service or maintenance personnel shall not be required to comply with 309.	4.27.3 Exception: These requirements do not apply where the use of special equipment dictates otherwise or where electrical and communications systems receptacles are not normally intended for use by building occupants.	Exceptions: 1. Operable parts that are intended for use only by service or maintenance personnel shall not be required to be accessible.
2. Electrical or communication receptacles serving a dedicated use shall not be required to comply with 309.		2. Electrical or communication receptacles serving a dedicated use shall not be required to be accessible.
3. Where two or more outlets are provided in a kitchen above a length of counter top that is uninterrupted by a sink or appliance, one outlet shall not be required to comply with 309.		3. Where two or more outlets are provided in a kitchen above a length of counter top that is uninterrupted by a sink or appliance, one outlet shall not be required to be accessible.
4. Floor electrical receptacles shall not be required to comply with 309.		4. Floor electrical receptacles shall not be required to be accessible.
5. HVAC diffusers shall not be required to comply with 309.		5. HVAC diffusers shall not be required to be accessible.
6. Except for light switches, where redundant controls are provided for a single element, one control in each space shall not be required to comply with 309.		6. Except for light switches, where redundant controls are provided for a single element, one control in each space shall not be required to be accessible.
7. Cleats and other boat securement devices shall not be required to comply with 309.3.	See Appendix 15.2.5.2	
8. Exercise machines and exercise equipment shall not be required to comply with 309.	See Appendix 4.1.3(13) Exception	
206 Accessible Routes		
206.1 General. Accessible routes shall be provided in accordance with 206 and shall comply with Chapter 4.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
206.2 Where Required. Accessible routes shall be provided where required by 206.2.		
206.2.1 Site Arrival Points. At least one accessible route shall be provided within the site from accessible parking spaces and accessible passenger loading zones; public streets and sidewalks; and public transportation stops to the accessible building or facility entrance they serve.	4.1.2(1) At least one accessible route complying with 4.3 shall be provided within the boundary of the site from public transportation stops, accessible parking spaces, passenger loading zones if provided, and public streets or sidewalks, to an accessible building entrance.	IBC 1104.1 Site arrival points. Accessible routes within the site shall be provided from public transportation stops, accessible parking and accessible passenger loading zones, and public streets or sidewalks to the accessible building entrance served. Exception: An accessible route shall not be required between site arrival points and the building or facility entrance if the only means of access between them is a vehicular way not providing for pedestrian access.
	4.3.2 Location. (1) At least one accessible route within the boundary of the site shall be provided from public transportation stops, accessible parking, and accessible passenger loading zones, and public streets or sidewalks to the accessible building entrance they serve. The accessible route shall, to the maximum extent feasible, coincide with the route for the general public. (2) At least one accessible route shall connect accessible buildings, facilities, elements, and spaces that are on the same site. See also Appendix 4.1.6(1)(k)	
EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities are permitted by 202.5, no more than one accessible route from a site arrival point to an accessible entrance shall be required.	4.1.7(3) Historic Preservation: Minimum Requirements: (a) At least one accessible route complying with 4.3 from a site access point to an accessible entrance shall be provided.	IBC 3409.8.1 Site arrival points. At least one accessible route from a site arrival point to an accessible entrance shall be provided.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	EXCEPTION: A ramp with a slope no greater than 1:6 for a run not to exceed 2 ft (610 mm) may be used as part of an accessible route to an entrance.	
2. An accessible route shall not be required between site arrival points and the building or facility entrance if the only means of access between them is a vehicular way not providing pedestrian access.		See 1104.1
206.2.2 Within a Site. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements, and accessible spaces that are on the same site.	4.1.2(2) At least one accessible route complying with 4.3 shall connect accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements, and accessible spaces that are on the same site.	IBC 1104.2 Within a site. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements and accessible spaces that are on the same site.
EXCEPTION: An accessible route shall not be required between accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements, and accessible spaces if the only means of access between them is a vehicular way not providing pedestrian access.		Exception: An accessible route is not required between accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements and accessible spaces that have, as the only means of access between them, a vehicular way not providing for pedestrian access.
206.2.3 Multi-Story Buildings and Facilities. At least one accessible route shall connect each story and mezzanine in multi-story buildings and facilities.	4.1.3(5) One passenger elevator complying with 4.10 shall serve each level, including mezzanines, in all multi-story buildings and facilities unless exempted below. If more than one elevator is provided, each passenger elevator shall comply with 4.10.	IBC 1104.4 Multilevel buildings and facilities. At least one accessible route shall connect each accessible level, including mezzanines, in multistory buildings and facilities.
EXCEPTIONS: 1. In private buildings or facilities that are less than three stories or that have less than 3000 square feet (279 m ²) per story, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories provided that the building or facility is not a	EXCEPTION 1: Elevators are not required in facilities that are less than three stories or that have less than 3000 square feet per story unless the building is a shopping center, a shopping mall, or the professional office of a health care provider, or another type of facility	Exceptions: 1. An accessible route is not required to stories and mezzanines above and below accessible levels that have an aggregate area of not more than 3,000 square feet (278.7 m ²). This exception shall not apply to:

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
shopping center, a shopping mall, the professional office of a health care provider, a terminal, depot or other station used for specified public transportation, an airport passenger terminal, or another type of facility as determined by the Attorney General.	as determined by the Attorney General. See 10.1 See also Appendix 4.1.3(5) Exception (1)	1.1 Multiple tenant facilities of Group M occupancies containing five or more tenant spaces; 1.2 Levels containing office of health care providers (Group B or I); or 1.3 Passenger transportation facilities and airports (Groups A-3 or B).
2. Where a two story public building or facility has one story with an occupant load of five or fewer persons that does not contain public use space, that story shall not be required to be connected to the story above or below.	See Appendix 4.1.3(5) Exception (1)	4. Where a two story building or facility has one story with an occupant load of five or fewer persons that does not contain public space, that story shall not be required to be connected by an accessible route to the story above or below.
	The elevator exemption set forth in this paragraph does not obviate or limit in any way the obligation to comply with the other accessibility requirements established in section 4.1.3. For example, floors above or below the accessible ground floor must meet the requirements of this section except for elevator service. If toilet or bathing facilities are provided on a level not served by an elevator, then toilet or bathing facilities must be provided on the accessible ground floor. In new construction, if a building or facility is eligible for exemption but a passenger elevator is nonetheless planned, that elevator shall meet the requirements of 4.10 and shall serve each level in the building. A passenger elevator that provides service from a garage to only one level of a building or facility is not required to serve other levels.	
	4.1.3(5) EXCEPTION 3: Accessible ramps complying with 4.8 may be used in lieu of an	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	elevator.	
	<p>4.1.6(1)(k) EXCEPTION:</p> <p>(i) These guidelines do not require the installation of an elevator in an altered facility that is less than three stories or has less than 3,000 square feet per story unless the building is a shopping center, a shopping mall, the professional office of a health care provider, or another type of facility as determined by the Attorney General.</p> <p>(ii) The exemption provided in paragraph (i) does not obviate or limit in any way the obligation to comply with the other accessibility requirements established in these guidelines. For example, alterations to floors above or below the ground floor must be accessible regardless of whether the altered facility has an elevator. If a facility subject to the elevator exemption set forth in paragraph (i) nonetheless has a passenger elevator, that elevator shall meet, to the maximum extent feasible, the accessibility requirements of these guidelines.</p>	
3. In detention and correctional facilities, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories where cells with mobility features required to comply with 807.2, all common use areas serving cells with mobility features required to comply with 807.2, and all public use areas are on an accessible route.	See Appendix 12.1 EXCEPTION	2. In Groups A, I, R and S occupancies, levels that do not contain accessible elements or other spaces required by Section 1107 or 1108 are not required to be served by an accessible route from an accessible level.
4. In residential facilities, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories where		See exception 2

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
residential dwelling units with mobility features required to comply with 809.2 through 809.4, all common use areas serving residential dwelling units with mobility features required to comply with 809.2 through 809.4, and public use areas serving residential dwelling units are on an accessible route.		
5. Within multi-story transient lodging guest rooms with mobility features required to comply with 806.2, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories provided that spaces complying with 806.2 are on an accessible route and sleeping accommodations for two persons minimum are provided on a story served by an accessible route.	<p>9.2.2 Minimum Requirements. An accessible unit, sleeping room or suite shall be on an accessible route complying with 4.3 and have the following accessible elements and spaces.</p> <p>(2) An accessible route complying with 4.3 shall connect all accessible spaces and elements, including telephones, within the unit, sleeping room, or suite. This is not intended to require an elevator in multi-story units as long as the spaces identified in 9.2.2(6) and (7) are on accessible levels and the accessible sleeping area is suitable for dual occupancy.</p>	See exception 2
6. In air traffic control towers, an accessible route shall not be required to serve the cab and the floor immediately below the cab.	See Appendix 4.1.3(5) Exception 5	3. In air traffic control towers, an accessible route is not required to serve the cab and the floor immediately below the cab.
7. Where exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities are permitted by 202.5, an accessible route shall not be required to stories located above or below the accessible story.	4.1.7(3)(d) Accessible routes from an accessible entrance to all publicly used spaces on at least the level of the accessible entrance shall be provided. Access shall be provided to all levels of a building or facility in compliance with 4.1 whenever practical.	IBC 3409.8.2 Multilevel buildings and facilities. An accessible route from an accessible entrance to public spaces on the level of the accessible entrance shall be provided.
206.2.3.1 Stairs and Escalators in Existing Buildings. In alterations and additions, where an escalator or stair is provided where none existed previously and major structural	4.1.6(1)(f) If an escalator or stair is planned or installed where none existed previously and major structural modifications are necessary for such installation, then a means of	IBC 3409.7.4 Stairs and escalators in existing buildings. In alterations where an escalator or stair is added where none existed previously, an accessible route shall be

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
modifications are necessary for the installation, an accessible route shall be provided between the levels served by the escalator or stair unless exempted by 206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 7.	accessible vertical access shall be provided that complies with the applicable provisions of 4.7, 4.8, 4.10 or 4.11.	provided in accordance with Sections 1104.4 and 1104.5.
206.2.4 Spaces and Elements. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with all accessible spaces and elements within the building or facility which are otherwise connected by a circulation path unless exempted by 206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 7.	4.1.3 Accessible Buildings: New Construction. Accessible buildings and facilities shall meet the following minimum requirements:	IBC 1104.3 Connected spaces. When a building, or portion of a building, is required to be accessible, an accessible route shall be provided to each portion of the building, to accessible building entrances connecting accessible pedestrian walkways and the public way.
	4.1.3(1) At least one accessible route complying with 4.3 shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with all accessible spaces and elements within the building or facility.	
	4.3.2(3) At least one accessible route shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with all accessible spaces and elements and with all accessible dwelling units within the building or facility.	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>4.14 Entrances.</p> <p>4.14.1 Minimum Number. Entrances required to be accessible by 4.1 shall be part of an accessible route complying with 4.3. Such entrances shall be connected by an accessible route to public transportation stops, to accessible parking and passenger loading zones, and to public streets or sidewalks if available (see 4.3.2(1)). They shall also be connected by an accessible route to all accessible spaces or elements within the building or facility.</p>	
<p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. Raised courtroom stations, including judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations, and court reporters' stations shall not be required to provide vertical access provided that the required clear floor space, maneuvering space, and, if appropriate, electrical service are installed at the time of initial construction to allow future installation of a means of vertical access complying with 405, 407, 408, or 410 without requiring substantial reconstruction of the space.</p>	<p>See Appendix 11.2.1(1) EXCEPTION</p>	
<p>2. In assembly areas with fixed seating required to comply with 221, an accessible route shall not be required to serve fixed seating where wheelchair spaces required to be on an accessible route are not provided.</p>		<p>IBC 1104.3, Exception: In assembly areas with fixed seating required to be accessible, an accessible route shall not be required to serve fixed seating where wheelchair spaces or designated aisle seats required to be on an accessible route are not provided.</p>
<p>3. Accessible routes shall not be required to</p>	<p>4.1.3(5) One passenger elevator complying</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
connect mezzanines where buildings or facilities have no more than one story. In addition, accessible routes shall not be required to connect stories or mezzanines where multi-story buildings or facilities are exempted by 206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 7.	with 4.10 shall serve each level, including mezzanines, in all multi-story buildings and facilities unless exempted below. If more than one elevator is provided, each passenger elevator shall comply with 4.10.	
206.2.5 Restaurants and Cafeterias. In restaurants and cafeterias, an accessible route shall be provided to all dining areas, including raised or sunken dining areas, and outdoor dining areas.	5.4 Dining Areas. In new construction, all dining areas, including raised or sunken dining areas, loggias, and outdoor seating areas, shall be accessible. In non-elevator buildings, an accessible means of vertical access to the mezzanine is not required under the following conditions: 1) the area of mezzanine seating measures no more than 33 percent of the area of the total accessible seating area; 2) the same services and decor are provided in an accessible space usable by the general public; and, 3) the accessible areas are not restricted to use by people with disabilities. In alterations, accessibility to raised or sunken dining areas, or to all parts of outdoor seating areas is not required provided that the same services and decor are provided in an accessible space usable by the general public and are not restricted to use by people with disabilities.	IBC 1108.2.9 Dining areas. In dining areas, the total floor area allotted for seating and tables shall be accessible.
EXCEPTIONS: 1. In buildings or facilities not required to provide an accessible route between stories, an accessible route shall not be required to a mezzanine dining area where the mezzanine contains less than 25 percent of the total combined area for seating and dining and where the same decor and services are		Exceptions: 1. In buildings or facilities not required to provide an accessible route between levels, an accessible route to a mezzanine seating area is not required, provided that the mezzanine contains less than 25 percent of the total area and the same services are provided in the accessible area.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
provided in the accessible area.		
2. In alterations, an accessible route shall not be required to existing raised or sunken dining areas, or to all parts of existing outdoor dining areas where the same services and decor are provided in an accessible space usable by the public and not restricted to use by people with disabilities.		
3. In sports facilities, tiered dining areas providing seating required to comply with 221 shall be required to have accessible routes serving at least 25 percent of the dining area provided that accessible routes serve seating complying with 221 and each tier is provided with the same services.		2. In sports facilities, tiered dining areas providing seating required to be accessible shall be required to have accessible routes serving at least 25 percent of the dining area, provided that accessible routes serve accessible seating and where each tier is provided with the same services.
206.2.6 Performance Areas. Where a circulation path directly connects a performance area to an assembly seating area, an accessible route shall directly connect the assembly seating area with the performance area. An accessible route shall be provided from performance areas to ancillary areas or facilities used by performers unless exempted by 206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 7.	4.33.5 Access to Performing Areas. An accessible route shall connect wheelchair seating locations with performing areas, including stages, arena floors, dressing rooms, locker rooms, and other spaces used by performers.	IBC 1108.2.6 Performance areas. An accessible route shall directly connect the performance area to the assembly seating area where a circulation path directly connects a performance area to an assembly seating area. An accessible route shall be provided from performance areas to ancillary areas or facilities used by performers.
	4.1.6(3)(f)(ii) Where it is technically infeasible to alter all performing areas to be on an accessible route, at least one of each type of performing area shall be made accessible.	IBC 3409.7.6 Performance areas. Where it is technically infeasible to alter performance areas to be on an accessible route, at least one of each type of performance area shall be made accessible.
	5.7 Raised Platforms. In banquet rooms or	IBC E103.1 Raised platforms. In banquet

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	spaces where a head table or speaker's lectern is located on a raised platform, the platform shall be accessible in compliance with 4.8 or 4.11. Open edges of a raised platform shall be protected by placement of tables or by a curb.	rooms or spaces where a head table or speaker's lectern is located on a raised platform, an accessible route shall be provided to the platform.
206.2.7 Press Boxes. Press boxes in assembly areas shall be on an accessible route.		IBC 1104.3.2 Press boxes. Press boxes in assembly areas shall be on an accessible route.
EXCEPTIONS: 1. An accessible route shall not be required to press boxes in bleachers that have points of entry at only one level provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes is 500 square feet (46 m ²) maximum.		Exceptions: 1. An accessible route shall not be required to press boxes in bleachers that have points of entry at only one level, provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes is 500 square feet (46 m ²) maximum.
2. An accessible route shall not be required to free-standing press boxes that are elevated above grade 12 feet (3660 mm) minimum provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes is 500 square feet (46 m ²) maximum.		2. An accessible route shall not be required to free-standing press boxes that are elevated above grade 12 feet (3660 mm) minimum provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes is 500 square feet (46 m ²) maximum.
206.2.8 Employee Work Areas. Common use circulation paths within employee work areas shall comply with 402.	4.1.1(3) Areas Used Only by Employees as Work Areas. Areas that are used only as work areas shall be designed and constructed so that individuals with disabilities can approach, enter, and exit the areas. These guidelines do not require that any areas used only as work areas be constructed to permit maneuvering within the work area or be constructed or equipped (i.e., with racks or shelves) to be accessible.	IBC 1104.3.1 Employee work areas. Common use circulation paths within employee work areas shall be accessible routes.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
EXCEPTIONS: 1. Common use circulation paths located within employee work areas that are less than 1000 square feet (93 m ²) and defined by permanently installed partitions, counters, casework, or furnishings shall not be required to comply with 402.		Exceptions: 1. Common use circulation paths, located within employee work areas that are less than 300 square feet (27.9 m ²) in size and defined by permanently installed partitions, counters, casework or furnishings, shall not be required to be accessible routes.
2. Common use circulation paths located within employee work areas that are an integral component of work area equipment shall not be required to comply with 402.		2. Common use circulation paths, located within employee work areas, that are an integral component of equipment, shall not be required to be accessible routes.
3. Common use circulation paths located within exterior employee work areas that are fully exposed to the weather shall not be required to comply with 402.		3. Common use circulation paths, located within exterior employee work areas that are fully exposed to the weather, shall not be required to be accessible routes.
206.2.9 Amusement Rides. Amusement rides required to comply with 234 shall provide accessible routes in accordance with 206.2.9. Accessible routes serving amusement rides shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1002.2.	See Appendix 15.1	
206.2.9.1 Load and Unload Areas. Load and unload areas shall be on an accessible route. Where load and unload areas have more than one loading or unloading position, at least one loading and unloading position shall be on an accessible route.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
206.2.9.2 Wheelchair Spaces, Ride Seats Designed for Transfer, and Transfer Devices. When amusement rides are in the load and unload position, wheelchair spaces complying with 1002.4, amusement ride seats designed for transfer complying with 1002.5, and transfer devices complying with 1002.6 shall be on an accessible route.		
206.2.10 Recreational Boating Facilities. Boat slips required to comply with 235.2 and boarding piers at boat launch ramps required to comply with 235.3 shall be on an accessible route. Accessible routes serving recreational boating facilities shall comply with Chapter 4, except as modified by 1003.2.	See Appendix 15.2	
206.2.11 Bowling Lanes. Where bowling lanes are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one of each type of bowling lane, shall be on an accessible route.	See Appendix 15.7.3	
206.2.12 Court Sports. In court sports, at least one accessible route shall directly connect both sides of the court.	See Appendix 4.1.3(1)(b)	
206.2.13 Exercise Machines and Equipment. Exercise machines and equipment required to comply with 236 shall be on an accessible route.	See Appendix 15.7.2	
206.2.14 Fishing Piers and Platforms. Fishing piers and platforms shall be on an accessible route. Accessible routes serving fishing piers and platforms shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1005.1.	See Appendix 15.3	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>206.2.15 Golf Facilities. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible elements and spaces within the boundary of the golf course. In addition, accessible routes serving golf car rental areas; bag drop areas; course weather shelters complying with 238.2.3; course toilet rooms; and practice putting greens, practice teeing grounds, and teeing stations at driving ranges complying with 238.3 shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1006.2.</p>	See Appendix 15.4	
<p>EXCEPTION: Golf car passages complying with 1006.3 shall be permitted to be used for all or part of accessible routes required by 206.2.15.</p>		
<p>206.2.16 Miniature Golf Facilities. Holes required to comply with 239.2, including the start of play, shall be on an accessible route. Accessible routes serving miniature golf facilities shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1007.2.</p>	See Appendix 15.5	
<p>206.2.17 Play Areas. Play areas shall provide accessible routes in accordance with 206.2.17. Accessible routes serving play areas shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1008.2.</p>	See Appendix 15.6	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>206.2.17.1 Ground Level and Elevated Play Components. At least one accessible route shall be provided within the play area. The accessible route shall connect ground level play components required to comply with 240.2.1 and elevated play components required to comply with 240.2.2, including entry and exit points of the play components.</p>		
<p>206.2.17.2 Soft Contained Play Structures. Where three or fewer entry points are provided for soft contained play structures, at least one entry point shall be on an accessible route. Where four or more entry points are provided for soft contained play structures, at least two entry points shall be on an accessible route.</p>		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>206.3 Location. Accessible routes shall coincide with or be located in the same area as general circulation paths. Where circulation paths are interior, required accessible routes shall also be interior.</p>	<p>4.3.2 Location. (1) At least one accessible route within the boundary of the site shall be provided from public transportation stops, accessible parking, and accessible passenger loading zones, and public streets or sidewalks to the accessible building entrance they serve. The accessible route shall, to the maximum extent feasible, coincide with the route for the general public.</p>	<p>IBC 1104.5 Location. Accessible routes shall coincide with or be located in the same area as a general circulation path. Where the circulation path is interior, the accessible route shall also be interior. Where only one accessible route is provided, the accessible route shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, restrooms, closets or similar spaces.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Accessible routes from parking garages contained within and serving Type B dwelling units are not required to be interior. 2. A single accessible route is permitted to pass through a kitchen or storage room in an Accessible, Type A or Type B dwelling unit.
<p>206.4 Entrances. Entrances shall be provided in accordance with 206.4. Entrance doors, doorways, and gates shall comply with 404</p>		<p>IBC SECTION 1105 ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
and shall be on an accessible route complying with 402.		IBC 3409.7.1 Entrances. Accessible entrances shall be provided in accordance with Section 1105.2.
EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where an alteration includes alterations to an entrance, and the building or facility has another entrance complying with 404 that is on an accessible route, the altered entrance shall not be required to comply with 206.4 unless required by 202.4.	4.1.6(1)(h) Entrances: If a planned alteration entails alterations to an entrance, and the building has an accessible entrance, the entrance being altered is not required to comply with 4.1.3(8), except to the extent required by 4.1.6(2). If a particular entrance is not made accessible, appropriate accessible signage indicating the location of the nearest accessible entrance(s) shall be installed at or near the inaccessible entrance, such that a person with disabilities will not be required to retrace the approach route from the inaccessible entrance.	Exception: Where an alteration includes alterations to an entrance, and the building or facility has an accessible entrance, the altered entrance is not required to be accessible, unless required by Section 3409.6. Signs complying with Section 1110 shall be provided.
2. Where exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities are permitted by 202.5, no more than one public entrance shall be required to comply with 206.4. Where no public entrance can comply with 206.4 under criteria established in 202.5 Exception, then either an unlocked entrance not used by the public shall comply with 206.4; or a locked entrance complying with 206.4 with a notification system or remote monitoring shall be provided.	4.1.7(3)(b) At least one accessible entrance complying with 4.14 which is used by the public shall be provided. EXCEPTION: If it is determined that no entrance used by the public can comply with 4.14, then access at any entrance not used by the general public but open (unlocked) with directional signage at the primary entrance may be used. The accessible entrance shall also have a notification system. Where security is a problem, remote monitoring may be used.	IBC 3409.8.3 Entrances. At least one main entrance shall be accessible. Exceptions: 1. If a main entrance cannot be made accessible, an accessible non public entrance that is unlocked while the building is occupied shall be provided; or 2. If a main entrance cannot be made accessible, a locked accessible entrance with a notification system or remote monitoring shall be provided. Signs complying with Section 1110 shall be provided at the primary entrance and the accessible entrance.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>206.4.1 Public Entrances. In addition to entrances required by 206.4.2 through 206.4.9, at least 60 percent of all public entrances shall comply with 404.</p>	<p>4.1.3(8) The requirements in (a) and (b) below shall be satisfied independently: (a)(i) At least 50 percent of all public entrances (excluding those in (b) below) shall comply with 4.14. At least one must be a ground floor entrance. Public entrances are any entrances that are not loading or service entrances. (ii) Accessible public entrances must be provided in a number at least equivalent to the number of exits required by the applicable building or fire codes. (This paragraph does not require an increase in the total number of public entrances planned for a facility.)</p>	<p>IBC 1105.1 Public entrances. In addition to accessible entrances required by 1105.1.1 through 1105.1.6, at least 50 percent of all public entrances shall be accessible.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. An accessible entrance is not required to areas not required to be accessible. 2. Loading and service entrances that are not the only entrance to a tenant space.
<p>206.4.2 Parking Structure Entrances. Where direct access is provided for pedestrians from a parking structure to a building or facility entrance, each direct access to the building or facility entrance shall comply with 404.</p>	<p>4.1.3(8)(b)(i) In addition, if direct access is provided for pedestrians from an enclosed parking garage to the building, at least one direct entrance from the garage to the building must be accessible.</p>	<p>IBC 1105.1.1 Parking garage entrances. Where provided, direct access for pedestrians from parking structures to buildings or facility entrances shall be accessible.</p>
<p>206.4.3 Entrances from Tunnels or Elevated Walkways. Where direct access is provided for pedestrians from a pedestrian tunnel or elevated walkway to a building or facility, at least one direct entrance to the building or facility from each tunnel or walkway shall comply with 404.</p>	<p>4.1.3(8)(b)(ii) If access is provided for pedestrians from a pedestrian tunnel or elevated walkway, one entrance to the building from each tunnel or walkway must be accessible.</p> <p>One entrance may be considered as meeting more than one of the requirements in (b).</p> <p>Because entrances also serve as emergency exits whose proximity to all parts of buildings and facilities is essential, it is preferable that all entrances be accessible.</p>	<p>IBC 1105.1.2 Entrances from tunnels or elevated walkways. Where direct access is provided for pedestrians from a pedestrian tunnel or elevated walkway to a building or facility, at least one entrance to the building or facility from each tunnel or walkway shall be accessible.</p> <p>Exception: Where the entrance serves stories containing only dwelling units and sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, the entrance is required to be accessible only if the story contains required Accessible units, required Type A units, or is required by Section 1107.7.1.4 to contain Type B units.</p>
<p>206.4.4 Transportation Facilities. In addition</p>	<p>10.3.1 New Construction. New stations in</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
to the requirements of 206.4.2, 206.4.3, and 206.4.5 through 206.4.9, transportation facilities shall provide entrances in accordance with 206.4.4.	rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, intercity bus, intercity rail, high speed rail, and other fixed guideway systems (e.g., automated guideway transit, monorails, etc.) shall comply with the following provisions, as applicable . . . See also 10.3.2(2)	
206.4.4.1 Location. In transportation facilities, where different entrances serve different transportation fixed routes or groups of fixed routes, at least one public entrance serving each fixed route or group of fixed routes shall comply with 404.	10.3.1(2) In lieu of compliance with 4.1.3(8), at least one entrance to each station shall comply with 4.14, Entrances. If different entrances to a station serve different transportation fixed routes or groups of fixed routes, at least one entrance serving each group or route shall comply with 4.14, Entrances. All accessible entrances shall, to the maximum extent practicable, coincide with those used by the majority of the general public.	IBC E109.2.1 Station entrances. Where different entrances to a station serve different transportation fixed routes or groups of fixed routes, at least one entrance serving each group or route shall comply with Section 1104 and ICC A117.1.
EXCEPTION: Entrances to key stations and existing intercity rail stations retrofitted in accordance with 49 CFR 37.49 or 49 CFR 37.51 shall not be required to comply with 206.4.4.1.	10.3.2 Existing Facilities: Key Stations. (1) Rapid, light and commuter rail key stations, as defined under criteria established by the Department of Transportation in subpart C of 49 C.F.R. part 37 and existing intercity rail stations shall provide at least one accessible route from an accessible entrance to those areas necessary for use of the transportation system.	
	(2) The accessible route required by 10.3.2(1) shall include the features specified in 10.3.1(1), (4)-(9), (11)-(15), and (17)-(19).	
206.4.4.2 Direct Connections. Direct connections to other facilities shall provide an accessible route complying with 404 from the	10.3.1(3) Direct connections to commercial, retail, or residential facilities shall have an accessible route complying with 4.3 from the	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
point of connection to boarding platforms and all transportation system elements required to be accessible. Any elements provided to facilitate future direct connections shall be on an accessible route connecting boarding platforms and all transportation system elements required to be accessible.	point of connection to boarding platforms and all transportation system elements used by the public. Any elements provided to facilitate future direct connections shall be on an accessible route connecting boarding platforms and all transportation system elements used by the public.	
EXCEPTION: In key stations and existing intercity rail stations, existing direct connections shall not be required to comply with 404.	See 10.3.2(2)	
206.4.4.3 Key Stations and Intercity Rail Stations. Key stations and existing intercity rail stations required by Subpart C of 49 CFR part 37 to be altered, shall have at least one entrance complying with 404.	10.3.3 Existing Facilities: Alterations. (1) For the purpose of complying with 4.1.6(2) Alterations to an Area Containing a Primary Function, an area of primary function shall be as defined by applicable provisions of 49 C.F.R. 37.43(c) (Department of Transportation's ADA Rule) or 28 C.F.R. 36.403 (Department of Justice's ADA Rule). See also 10.3.2(1)	
206.4.5 Tenant Spaces. At least one accessible entrance to each tenancy in a facility shall comply with 404.	4.1.3(8)(a)(iii) An accessible public entrance must be provided to each tenancy in a facility (for example, individual stores in a strip shopping center). One entrance may be considered as meeting more than one of the requirements in (a). Where feasible, accessible public entrances shall be the entrances used by the majority of people visiting or working in the building.	IBC 1105.1.6 Tenant spaces, dwelling units and sleeping units. At least one accessible entrance shall be provided to each tenancy, dwelling unit and sleeping unit in a facility. Exceptions: 1. An accessible entrance is not required to tenants that are not required to be accessible. 2. An accessible entrance is not required to dwelling units and sleeping units that are not required to be Accessible units, Type A units or Type B units.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
EXCEPTION: Self-service storage facilities not required to comply with 225.3 shall not be required to be on an accessible route.		
206.4.6 Residential Dwelling Unit Primary Entrance. In residential dwelling units, at least one primary entrance shall comply with 404. The primary entrance to a residential dwelling unit shall not be to a bedroom.		See 1105.1.6
206.4.7 Restricted Entrances. Where restricted entrances are provided to a building or facility, at least one restricted entrance to the building or facility shall comply with 404.	See Appendix 4.1.3(8)(a) and Appendix 4.1.3(8)(b)	IBC 1105.1.3 Restricted entrances. Where restricted entrances are provided to a building or facility, at least one restricted entrance to the building or facility shall be accessible.
206.4.8 Service Entrances. If a service entrance is the only entrance to a building or to a tenancy in a facility, that entrance shall comply with 404.	4.1.3(8)(c) If the only entrance to a building, or tenancy in a facility, is a service entrance, that entrance shall be accessible.	IBC 1105.1.5 Service entrances. If a service entrance is the only entrance to a building or to a tenant space in a facility, that entrance shall be accessible.
	4.14.2 Service Entrances. A service entrance shall not be the sole accessible entrance unless it is the only entrance to a building or facility (for example, in a factory or garage).	
206.4.9 Entrances for Inmates or Detainees. Where entrances used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel are provided at judicial facilities, detention facilities, or correctional facilities, at least one such entrance shall comply with 404.	See Appendix 4.1.3(8)(a) and Appendix 4.1.3(8)(b)	IBC 1105.1.4 Entrances for inmates or detainees. Where entrances used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel are provided at judicial facilities, detention facilities or correctional facilities, at least one such entrance shall be accessible.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>206.5 Doors, Doorways, and Gates. Doors, doorways, and gates providing user passage shall be provided in accordance with 206.5.</p> <p>206.5.1 Entrances. Each entrance to a building or facility required to comply with 206.4 shall have at least one door, doorway, or gate complying with 404.</p> <p>206.5.2 Rooms and Spaces. Within a building or facility, at least one door, doorway, or gate serving each room or space complying with these requirements shall comply with 404.</p>	<p>4.1.3(7) Doors</p> <p>(a) At each accessible entrance to a building or facility, at least one door shall comply with 4.13.</p> <p>(b) Within a building or facility, at least one door at each accessible space shall comply with 4.13.</p> <p>(c) Each door that is an element of an accessible route shall comply with 4.13.</p> <p>(d) Each door required by 4.3.10, Egress, shall comply with 4.13.</p>	<p>IBC 1008.1.1 Size of doors. The minimum width of each door opening shall be sufficient for the occupant load thereof and shall provide a clear width of not less than 32 inches (813 mm). Clear openings of doorways with swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees (1.57 rad). Where this section requires a minimum clear width of 32 inches (813 mm) and a door opening includes two door leaves without a mullion, one leaf shall provide a clear opening width of 32 inches (813 mm). The maximum width of a swinging door leaf shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) nominal. Means of egress doors in an occupancy in Group I-2 used for the movement of beds shall provide a clear width not less than 41 1/2 inches (1054 mm). The height of doors shall not be less than 80 inches (2032 mm).</p>
<p>206.5.3 Transient Lodging Facilities. In transient lodging facilities, entrances, doors, and doorways providing user passage into and within guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall comply with 404.2.3.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Shower and sauna doors in guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall not be required to comply with 404.2.3.</p>	<p>9.4 Other Sleeping Rooms and Suites. Doors and doorways designed to allow passage into and within all sleeping units or other covered units shall comply with 4.13.5.</p>	
<p>206.5.4 Residential Dwelling Units. In residential dwelling units required to provide</p>		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
mobility features complying with 809.2 through 809.4, all doors and doorways providing user passage shall comply with 404.		
206.6 Elevators. Elevators provided for passengers shall comply with 407. Where multiple elevators are provided, each elevator shall comply with 407.	4.1.3(5) One passenger elevator complying with 4.10 shall serve each level, including mezzanines, in all multi-story buildings and facilities unless exempted below. If more than one elevator is provided, each full passenger elevator shall comply with 4.10.	IBC 1109.6 Elevators. Passenger elevators on an accessible route shall be accessible and comply with Section 3001.3. IBC 3001.3 Accessibility. Passenger elevators required to be accessible by Chapter 11 shall conform to ICC A117.1.
EXCEPTIONS: 1. In a building or facility permitted to use the exceptions to 206.2.3 or permitted by 206.7 to use a platform lift, elevators complying with 408 shall be permitted.		
2. Elevators complying with 408 or 409 shall be permitted in multi-story residential dwelling units.		
206.6.1 Existing Elevators. Where elements of existing elevators are altered, the same element shall also be altered in all elevators that are programmed to respond to the same hall call control as the altered elevator and shall comply with the requirements of 407 for the altered element.		IBC 3409.7.2 Elevators. Altered elements of existing elevators shall comply with ASME A17.1 and ICC A117.1. Such elements shall also be altered in elevators programmed to respond to the same hall call control as the altered elevator.
206.7 Platform Lifts. Platform lifts shall comply with 410. Platform lifts shall be permitted as a component of an accessible route in new construction in accordance with 206.7. Platform lifts shall be permitted as a component of an accessible route in an	4.1.3(5) EXCEPTION 4: Platform lifts (wheelchair lifts) complying with 4.11 of this guideline and applicable State or local codes may be used in lieu of an elevator only under the following conditions:	IBC 1109.7 Lifts. Platform (wheelchair) lifts are permitted to be a part of a required accessible route in new construction where indicated in Items 1 through 7. Platform (wheelchair) lifts shall be installed in accordance with ASME A18.1.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
existing building or facility.	4.1.6(3)(g) Platform Lifts (Wheelchair Lifts): In alterations, platform lifts (wheelchair lifts) complying with 4.11 and applicable state or local codes may be used as part of an accessible route. The use of lifts is not limited to the conditions in exception 4 of 4.1.3(5).	IBC 3409.7.3 Platform lifts. Platform (wheelchair) lifts complying with ICC A117.1 and installed in accordance with ASME A18.1 shall be permitted as a component of an accessible route.
206.7.1 Performance Areas and Speakers' Platforms. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to performance areas and speakers' platforms	(a) To provide an accessible route to a performing area in an assembly occupancy.	1. An accessible route to a performing area and speakers platforms in occupancies in Group A.
206.7.2 Wheelchair Spaces. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide an accessible route to comply with the wheelchair space dispersion and line-of-sight requirements of 221 and 802.	(b) To comply with the wheelchair viewing position line-of- sight and dispersion requirements of 4.33.3.	2. An accessible route to wheelchair spaces required to comply with the wheelchair space dispersion requirements of Sections 1108.2.2 through 1108.2.4.
206.7.3 Incidental Spaces. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide an accessible route to incidental spaces which are not public use spaces and which are occupied by five persons maximum.	(c) To provide access to incidental occupiable spaces and rooms which are not open to the general public and which house no more than five persons, including but not limited to equipment control rooms and projection booths.	3. An accessible route to spaces that are not open to the general public with an occupant load of not more than five.
		5. An accessible route to wheelchair seating spaces located in outdoor dining terraces in A-5 occupancies where the means of egress from the dining terraces to a public way is open to the outdoors.
206.7.4 Judicial Spaces. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide an accessible route to: jury boxes and witness stands; raised courtroom stations including, judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks'	See Appendix 4.1.3(5)	6. An accessible route to raised judges benches, clerks stations, jury boxes, witness stands and other raised or depressed areas in a court.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
stations, and court reporters' stations; and to depressed areas such as the well of a court.		
206.7.5 Existing Site Constraints. Platform lifts shall be permitted where existing exterior site constraints make use of a ramp or elevator infeasible.	(d) To provide access where existing site constraints or other constraints make use of a ramp or an elevator infeasible.	7. An accessible route where existing exterior site constraints make use of a ramp or elevator infeasible.
206.7.6 Guest Rooms and Residential Dwelling Units. Platform lifts shall be permitted to connect levels within transient lodging guest rooms required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 or residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 through 809.4.		4. An accessible route within a dwelling or sleeping unit.
206.7.7 Amusement Rides. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to load and unload areas serving amusement rides.	See Appendix 15.1.3	
206.7.8 Play Areas. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to play components or soft contained play structures.	See Appendix 15.6	
206.7.9 Team or Player Seating. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity.	See Appendix 4.1.3(5)	
206.7.10 Recreational Boating Facilities and Fishing Piers and Platforms. Platform lifts shall be permitted to be used instead of gangways that are part of accessible routes serving recreational boating facilities and	See Appendix 15.2	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
fishing piers and platforms.		
<p>206.8 Security Barriers. Security barriers, including but not limited to, security bollards and security check points, shall not obstruct a required accessible route or accessible means of egress.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where security barriers incorporate elements that cannot comply with these requirements such as certain metal detectors, fluoroscopes, or other similar devices, the accessible route shall be permitted to be located adjacent to security screening devices. The accessible route shall permit persons with disabilities passing around security barriers to maintain visual contact with their personal items to the same extent provided others passing through the security barrier.</p>	<p>7.4 Security Bollards. Any device used to prevent the removal of shopping carts from store premises shall not prevent access or egress to people in wheelchairs. An alternate entry that is equally convenient to that provided for the ambulatory population is acceptable.</p> <p>10.4.1(8) Security Systems. In public facilities that are airports, at least one accessible route complying with 4.3 shall be provided through fixed security barriers at each single barrier or group of security barriers. A group is two or more security barriers immediately adjacent to each other at a single location. Where security barriers incorporate equipment such as metal detectors, fluoroscopes, or other similar devices which cannot be made accessible, an accessible route shall be provided adjacent to such security screening devices to facilitate an equivalent circulation path. The circulation path shall permit persons with disabilities passing through security barriers to maintain visual contact with their personal items to the same extent provided other members of the general public.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Doors, doorways, and gates designed to be operated only by security personnel shall be exempt from 4.13.9, 4.13.11, and 4.13.12.</p>	<p>IBC 1104.6 Security barriers. Security barriers including, but not limited to, security bollards and security check points shall not obstruct a required accessible route or accessible means of egress.</p> <p>Exception: Where security barriers incorporate elements that cannot comply with these requirements, such as certain metal detectors, fluoroscopes or other similar devices, the accessible route shall be permitted to be provided adjacent to security screening devices. The accessible route shall permit persons with disabilities passing around security barriers to maintain visual contact with their personal items to the same extent provided others passing through the security barrier.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
207 Accessible Means of Egress		IBC SECTION 1007 ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS
<p>207.1 General. Means of egress shall comply with section 1003.2.13 of the International Building Code (2000 edition and 2001 Supplement) or section 1007 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1).</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where means of egress are permitted by local building or life safety codes to share a common path of egress travel, accessible means of egress shall be permitted to share a common path of egress travel. 2. Areas of refuge shall not be required in detention and correctional facilities. 	<p>4.1.3(9) In buildings or facilities, or portions of buildings or facilities, required to be accessible, accessible means of egress shall be provided in the same number as required for exits by local building/life safety regulations. Where a required exit from an occupiable level above or below a level of accessible exit discharge is not accessible, an area of rescue assistance shall be provided on each such level (in a number equal to that of inaccessible required exits). Areas of rescue assistance shall comply with 4.3.11. A horizontal exit, meeting the requirements of local building/life safety regulations, shall satisfy the requirement for an area of rescue assistance.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Areas of rescue assistance are not required in buildings or facilities having a supervised automatic sprinkler system.</p> <p>4.1.6(1)(g) In alterations, the requirements of 4.1.3(9), 4.3.10 and 4.3.11 do not apply.</p> <p>See also Appendix 12.1 EXCEPTION</p>	<p>IBC 1007.1 Accessible means of egress required. Accessible means of egress shall comply with this section. Accessible spaces shall be provided with not less than one accessible means of egress. Where more than one means of egress is required by Section 1014.1 or 1018.1 from any accessible space, each accessible portion of the space shall be served by not less than two accessible means of egress.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Accessible means of egress are not required in alterations to existing buildings. 2. One accessible means of egress is required from an accessible mezzanine level in accordance with Section 1007.3, 1007.4 or 1007.5. 3. In assembly spaces with sloped floors, one accessible means of egress is required from a space where the common path of travel of the accessible route for access to the wheelchair spaces meets the requirements in Section 1024.9.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>4.3.10 Egress. Accessible routes serving any accessible space or element shall also serve as a means of egress for emergencies or connect to an accessible area of rescue assistance.</p>	
		<p>IBC 1007.2 Continuity and components. Each required accessible means of egress shall be continuous to a public way and shall consist of one or more of the following components:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Accessible routes complying with Section 1104. 2. Stairways within exit enclosures complying with Sections 1007.3 and 1019.1. 3. Elevators complying with Section 1007.4. 4. Platform lifts complying with Section 1007.5. 5. Horizontal exits. 6. Smoke barriers. 7. Ramps complying with Section 1010. <p>Exceptions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where the exit discharge is not accessible, an exterior area for assisted rescue must be provided in accordance with Section 1007.8.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>2. Where the exit stairway is open to the exterior, the accessible means of egress shall include either an area of refuge in accordance with Section 1007.6 or an exterior area for assisted rescue in accordance with Section 1007.8.</p>
		<p>IBC 1007.2.1 Buildings with four or more stories. In buildings where a required accessible floor is four or more stories above or below a level of exit discharge, at least one required accessible means of egress shall be an elevator complying with Section 1007.4.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <p>1. In buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the elevator shall not be required on floors provided with a horizontal exit and located at or above the level of exit discharge.</p> <p>2. In buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the elevator shall not be required on floors provided with a ramp conforming to the provisions of Section 1010.</p>
	<p>4.3.11.3 Stairway Width. Each stairway adjacent to an area of rescue assistance shall have a minimum clear width of 48 inches between handrails.</p>	<p>IBC 1007.3 Enclosed exit stairways. An enclosed exit stairway, to be considered part of an accessible means of egress, shall have a clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum between handrails and shall either incorporate an area of refuge within an enlarged floor-level</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>landing or shall be accessed from either an area of refuge complying with Section 1007.6 or a horizontal exit.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open exit stairways as permitted by Section 1019.1 are permitted to be considered part of an accessible means of egress. 2. The area of refuge is not required at open stairways that are permitted by Section 1019.1 in buildings or facilities that are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with the Section 903.3.1.1 3. The clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails and the area of refuge is not required at exit stairways in buildings or facilities equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. 4. The clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails is not required for enclosed exit stairways accessed from a horizontal exit. 5. Areas of refuge are not required at exit stairways serving open parking garages.
		<p>IBC 1007.4 Elevators. An elevator to be considered part of an accessible means of egress shall comply with the emergency operation and signaling device requirements of Section 2.27 of ASME A17.1. Standby power</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>shall be provided in accordance with Sections 2702 and 3003. The elevator shall be accessed from either an area of refuge complying with Section 1007.6 or a horizontal exit.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <p>1. Elevators are not required to be accessed from an area of refuge or horizontal exit in open parking garages.</p> <p>2. Elevators are not required to be accessed from an area of refuge or horizontal exit in buildings and facilities equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.</p>
		<p>IBC 1007.5 Platform lifts. Platform (wheelchair) lifts shall not serve as part of an accessible means of egress, except where allowed as part of a required accessible route in Section 1109.7. Platform lifts shall be installed in accordance with ASME A18.1. Standby power shall be provided for platform lifts permitted to serve as part of a means of egress.</p>
	<p>4.3.11 Areas of Rescue Assistance.</p>	<p>IBC 1007.6 Areas of refuge. Every required area of refuge shall be accessible from the space it serves by an accessible means of egress. The maximum travel distance from any accessible space to an area of refuge shall not exceed the travel distance permitted for the occupancy in accordance with Section 1015.1. Every required area of refuge shall have direct</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		access to an enclosed stairway complying with Sections 1007.3 and 1019.1 or an elevator complying with Section 1007.4. Where an elevator lobby is used as an area of refuge, the shaft and lobby shall comply with Section 1019.1.8 for smokeproof enclosures except where the elevators are in an area of refuge formed by a horizontal exit or smoke barrier.
	<p>4.3.11.2 Size. Each area of rescue assistance shall provide at least two accessible areas each being not less than 30 inches by 48 inches (760 mm by 1220 mm). The area of rescue assistance shall not encroach on any required exit width. The total number of such 30-inch by 48-inch (760 mm by 1220 mm) areas per story shall be not less than one for every 200 persons of calculated occupant load served by the area of rescue assistance.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: The appropriate local authority may reduce the minimum number of 30-inch by 48-inch (760 mm by 1220 mm) areas to one for each area of rescue assistance on floors where the occupant load is less than 200.</p>	<p>IBC 1007.6.1 Size. Each area of refuge shall be sized to accommodate one wheelchair space of 30 inches (762 mm) by 48 inches (1219 mm) for each 200 occupants or portion thereof, based on the occupant load of the area of refuge and areas served by the area of refuge. Such wheelchair spaces shall not reduce the required means of egress width. Access to any of the required wheelchair spaces in an area of refuge shall not be obstructed by more than one adjoining wheelchair space.</p>
	<p>4.3.11.1 Location and Construction. An area of rescue assistance shall be one of the following:</p> <p>(1) A portion of a stairway landing within a smokeproof enclosure (complying with local requirements).</p> <p>(6) When approved by the appropriate local authority, an area or a room which is separated from other portions of the building</p>	<p>IBC 1007.6.2 Separation. Each area of refuge shall be separated from the remainder of the story by a smoke barrier complying with Section 709. Each area of refuge shall be designed to minimize the intrusion of smoke.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <p>1. Areas of refuge located within a stairway enclosure.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>by a smoke barrier. Smoke barriers shall have a fire-resistive rating of not less than one hour and shall completely enclose the area or room. Doors in the smoke barrier shall be tight-fitting smoke- and draft-control assemblies having a fire-protection rating of not less than 20 minutes and shall be self-closing or automatic closing. The area or room shall be provided with an exit directly to an exit enclosure. Where the room or area exits into an exit enclosure which is required to be of more than one-hour fire- resistive construction, the room or area shall have the same fire- resistive construction, including the same opening protection, as required for the adjacent exit enclosure.</p> <p>(7) An elevator lobby when elevator shafts and adjacent lobbies are pressurized as required for smokeproof enclosures by local regulations and when complying with requirements herein for size, communication, and signage. Such pressurization system shall be activated by smoke detectors on each floor located in a manner approved by the appropriate local authority. Pressurization equipment and its duct work within the building shall be separated from other portions of the building by a minimum two-hour fire- resistive construction.</p>	<p>2. Areas of refuge where the area of refuge and areas served by the area of refuge are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.</p>
	<p>(3) A portion of a one-hour fire-resistive corridor (complying with local requirements for fire-resistive construction and for openings) located immediately adjacent to an exit enclosure.</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	(4) A vestibule located immediately adjacent to an exit enclosure and constructed to the same fire-resistive standards as required for corridors and openings.	
	(5) A portion of a stairway landing within an exit enclosure which is vented to the exterior and is separated from the interior of the building with not less than one-hour fire-resistive doors.	
	4.3.11.4 Two-way Communication. A method of two-way communication, with both visible and audible signals, shall be provided between each area of rescue assistance and the primary entry. The fire department or appropriate local authority may approve a location other than the primary entry.	IBC 1007.6.3 Two-way communication. Areas of refuge shall be provided with a two-way communication system between the area of refuge and a central control point. If the central control point is not constantly attended, the area of refuge shall also have controlled access to a public telephone system. Location of the central control point shall be approved by the fire department. The two-way communication system shall include both audible and visible signals.
	See 4.3.11.5	IBC 1007.6.4 Instructions. In areas of refuge that have a two-way emergency communications system, instructions on the use of the area under emergency conditions shall be posted adjoining the communications system. The instructions shall include all of the following: Directions to find other means of egress. Persons able to use the exit stairway do so as soon as possible, unless they are assisting others.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>Information on planned availability of assistance in the use of stairs or supervised operation of elevators and how to summon such assistance.</p> <p>Directions for use of the emergency communications system.</p>
	<p>4.3.11.5 Identification. Each area of rescue assistance shall be identified by a sign which states "AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE" and displays the international symbol of accessibility. The sign shall be illuminated when exit sign illumination is required. Signage shall also be installed at all inaccessible exits and where otherwise necessary to clearly indicate the direction to areas of rescue assistance. In each area of rescue assistance, instructions on the use of the area under emergency conditions shall be posted adjoining the two-way communication system.</p>	<p>IBC 1007.6.5 Identification. Each door providing access to an area of refuge from an adjacent floor area shall be identified by a sign complying with ICC A117.1, stating: AREA OF REFUGE, and including the International Symbol of Accessibility. Where exit sign illumination is required by Section 1011.2, the area of refuge sign shall be illuminated. Additionally, tactile signage complying with ICC A117.1 shall be located at each door to an area of refuge.</p>
		<p>IBC 1007.7 Signage. At exits and elevators serving a required accessible space but not providing an approved accessible means of egress, signage shall be installed indicating the location of accessible means of egress.</p>
	<p>4.3.11.1(2) A portion of an exterior exit balcony located immediately adjacent to an exit stairway when the balcony complies with local requirements for exterior exit balconies. Openings to the interior of the building located within 20 feet (6 m) of the area of rescue assistance shall be protected with fire</p>	<p>IBC 1007.8 Exterior area for assisted rescue. The exterior area for assisted rescue must be open to the outside air and meet the requirements of Section 1007.6.1. Separation walls shall comply with the requirements of Section 704 for exterior walls. Where walls or openings are between the area for assisted</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	assemblies having a three- fourths hour fire protection rating.	rescue and the interior of the building, the building exterior walls within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of a nonrated wall or unprotected opening shall be constructed as required for a minimum 1-hour fire-resistance rating with ¾-hour opening protectives. This construction shall extend vertically from the ground to a point 10 feet (3048 mm) above the floor level of the area for assisted rescue or to the roof line, whichever is lower.
		IBC 1007.8.1 Openness. The exterior area for assisted rescue shall be at least 50 percent open, and the open area above the guards shall be so distributed as to minimize the accumulation of smoke or toxic gases.
		IBC 1007.8.2 Exterior exit stairway. Exterior exit stairways that are part of the means of egress for the exterior area for assisted rescue shall provide a clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails.
		IBC 1007.8.3 Identification. Exterior areas for assisted rescue shall have identification as required for area of refuge that complies with Section 1007.6.5.
207.2 Platform Lifts. Standby power shall be provided for platform lifts permitted by section 1003.2.13.4 of the International Building Code (2000 edition and 2001 Supplement) or section 1007.5 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1) to serve as a part of an accessible means of egress.		See 1007.5

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
208 Parking Spaces	<p>4.1.2(5)(a) If parking spaces are provided for self-parking by employees or visitors, or both, then accessible spaces complying with 4.6 shall be provided in each such parking area in conformance with the table below. Spaces required by the table need not be provided in the particular lot. They may be provided in a different location if equivalent or greater accessibility, in terms of distance from an accessible entrance, cost and convenience is ensured.</p>	IBC SECTION 1106 PARKING AND PASSENGER LOADING FACILITIES
<p>208.1 General. Where parking spaces are provided, parking spaces shall be provided in accordance with 208.</p>		<p>IBC 1106.1 Required. Where parking is provided, accessible parking spaces shall be provided in compliance with Table 1106.1, except as required by Sections 1106.2 through 1106.4. The number of accessible parking spaces shall be determined based on the total number of parking spaces provided for the facility.</p>
<p>EXCEPTION: Parking spaces used exclusively for buses, trucks, other delivery vehicles, law enforcement vehicles, or vehicular impound shall not be required to comply with 208 provided that lots accessed by the public are provided with a passenger loading zone complying with 503.</p>		<p>Exception: This section does not apply to parking spaces used exclusively for buses, trucks, other delivery vehicles, law enforcement vehicles or vehicular impound and motor pools where lots accessed by the public are provided with an accessible passenger loading zone.</p>
<p>208.2 Minimum Number. Parking spaces complying with 502 shall be provided in accordance with Table 208.2 except as required by 208.2.1, 208.2.2, and 208.2.3. Where more than one parking facility is provided on a site, the number of accessible spaces provided on the site shall be calculated according to the number of spaces required for each parking facility.</p>		

New ADAAG ¹		DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²		International Building Code ³	
Table 208.2 Parking Spaces				IBC Table 1106.1 Accessible Parking Spaces	
Total Number of Parking Spaces Provided in Parking Facility	Minimum Number of Required Accessible Parking Spaces	Total Parking in Lot	Required Minimum Number of Accessible Spaces	Total Parking Spaces Provided	Required Minimum Number of Accessible Parking Spaces
1 to 25	1	1 to 25	1	1 to 25	1
26 to 50	2	26 to 50	2	26 to 50	2
51 to 75	3	51 to 75	3	51 to 75	3
76 to 100	4	76 to 100	4	76 to 100	4
101 to 150	5	101 to 150	5	101 to 150	5
151 to 200	6	151 to 200	6	151 to 200	6
201 to 300	7	201 to 300	7	201 to 300	7
301 to 400	8	301 to 400	8	301 to 400	8
401 to 500	9	401 to 500	9	401 to 500	9
501 to 1000	2 percent of total	501 to 1000	2 percent of total	501 to 1000	2% of total
1001 and over	20, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000	1001 and over	20, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000	1001 and over	20 plus one for each 100 over 1,000
		9.2.2(6) Where provided as part of an accessible unit, sleeping room, or suite, the following spaces shall be accessible and shall be on an accessible route: (g) carports, garages or parking spaces.			
208.2.1 Hospital Outpatient Facilities. Ten percent of patient and visitor parking spaces provided to serve hospital outpatient facilities shall comply with 502.		4.1.2(5)(d) At facilities providing medical care and other services for persons with mobility impairments, parking spaces complying with 4.6 shall be provided in accordance with 4.1.2(5)(a) except as follows: (i) Outpatient units and facilities: 10 percent of the total number of parking spaces provided serving each such outpatient unit or facility;		IBC 1106.3 Hospital outpatient facilities. Ten percent of patient and visitor parking spaces provided to serve hospital outpatient facilities shall be accessible.	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
208.2.2 Rehabilitation Facilities and Outpatient Physical Therapy Facilities. Twenty percent of patient and visitor parking spaces provided to serve rehabilitation facilities specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility and outpatient physical therapy facilities shall comply with 502.	(ii) Units and facilities that specialize in treatment or services for persons with mobility impairments: 20 percent of the total number of parking spaces provided serving each such unit or facility.	IBC 1106.4 Rehabilitation facilities and outpatient physical therapy facilities. Twenty percent, but not less than one, of the portion of patient and visitor parking spaces serving rehabilitation facilities and outpatient physical therapy facilities shall be accessible.
208.2.3 Residential Facilities. Parking spaces provided to serve residential facilities shall comply with 208.2.3.		IBC 1106.2 Groups R-2 and R-3. Two percent, but not less than one, of each type of parking space provided for occupancies in Groups R-2 and R-3, which are required to have Accessible, Type A or Type B dwelling or sleeping units, shall be accessible. Where parking is provided within or beneath a building, accessible parking spaces shall also be provided within or beneath the building.
208.2.3.1 Parking for Residents. Where at least one parking space is provided for each residential dwelling unit, at least one parking space complying with 502 shall be provided for each residential dwelling unit required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 through 809.4.		
208.2.3.2 Additional Parking Spaces for Residents. Where the total number of parking spaces provided for each residential dwelling unit exceeds one parking space per residential dwelling unit, 2 percent, but no fewer than one space, of all the parking spaces not covered by 208.2.3.1 shall comply with 502.		
208.2.3.3 Parking for Guests, Employees,		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
and Other Non-Residents. Where parking spaces are provided for persons other than residents, parking shall be provided in accordance with Table 208.2.		
208.2.4 Van Parking Spaces. For every six or fraction of six parking spaces required by 208.2 to comply with 502, at least one shall be a van parking space complying with 502.	4.1.2(5)(b) One in every eight accessible spaces, but not less than one, shall be served by an access aisle 96 in (2440 mm) wide minimum and shall be designated "van accessible" as required by 4.6.4. The vertical clearance at such spaces shall comply with 4.6.5. All such spaces may be grouped on one level of a parking structure. EXCEPTION: Provision of all required parking spaces in conformance with "Universal Parking Design" (see appendix A4.6.3) is permitted.	IBC 1106.5 Van spaces. For every six or fraction of six accessible parking spaces, at least one shall be a van-accessible parking space.
208.3 Location. Parking facilities shall comply with 208.3		
208.3.1 General. Parking spaces complying with 502 that serve a particular building or facility shall be located on the shortest accessible route from parking to an entrance complying with 206.4. Where parking serves more than one accessible entrance, parking spaces complying with 502 shall be dispersed and located on the shortest accessible route to the accessible entrances. In parking facilities that do not serve a particular building or facility, parking spaces complying with 502 shall be located on the shortest accessible route to an accessible pedestrian entrance of the parking facility.	4.6.2 Location. Accessible parking spaces serving a particular building shall be located on the shortest accessible route of travel from adjacent parking to an accessible entrance. In parking facilities that do not serve a particular building, accessible parking shall be located on the shortest accessible route of travel to an accessible pedestrian entrance of the parking facility. In buildings with multiple accessible entrances with adjacent parking, accessible parking spaces shall be dispersed and located closest to the accessible entrances.	IBC 1106.6 Location. Accessible parking spaces shall be located on the shortest accessible route of travel from adjacent parking to an accessible building entrance. Accessible parking spaces shall be dispersed among the various types of parking facilities provided. In parking facilities that do not serve a particular building, accessible parking spaces shall be located on the shortest route to an accessible pedestrian entrance to the parking facility. Where buildings have multiple accessible entrances with adjacent parking, accessible parking spaces shall be dispersed and located near the accessible entrances.
EXCEPTIONS: 1. All van parking spaces shall be permitted to	4.1.2(5)(b) . . . All such spaces may be grouped on one level of a parking structure.	Exceptions: 1. In multilevel parking structures, van-

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
be grouped on one level within a multi-story parking facility.		accessible parking spaces are permitted on one level.
2. Parking spaces shall be permitted to be located in different parking facilities if substantially equivalent or greater accessibility is provided in terms of distance from an accessible entrance or entrances, parking fee, and user convenience.	4.1.2(5)(a) If parking spaces are provided for self-parking by employees or visitors, or both, then accessible spaces complying with 4.6 shall be provided in each such parking area in conformance with the table below. Spaces required by the table need not be provided in the particular lot. They may be provided in a different location if equivalent or greater accessibility, in terms of distance from an accessible entrance, cost and convenience is ensured.	2. Parking spaces shall be permitted to be located in different parking facilities if substantially equivalent or greater accessibility is provided in terms of distance from an accessible entrance or entrances, parking fee, and user convenience.
208.3.2 Residential Facilities. In residential facilities containing residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 through 809.4, parking spaces provided in accordance with 208.2.3.1 shall be located on the shortest accessible route to the residential dwelling unit entrance they serve. Spaces provided in accordance with 208.2.3.2 shall be dispersed throughout all types of parking provided for the residential dwelling units.		
EXCEPTION: Parking spaces provided in accordance with 208.2.3.2 shall not be required to be dispersed throughout all types of parking if substantially equivalent or greater accessibility is provided in terms of distance from an accessible entrance, parking fee, and user convenience.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>209 Passenger Loading Zones and Bus Stops 209.1 General. Passenger loading zones shall be provided in accordance with 209.</p>	<p>4.1.2(5)(c) If passenger loading zones are provided, then at least one passenger loading zone shall comply with 4.6.6.</p>	<p>IBC 1106.7 Passenger loading zones. Passenger loading zones shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ICC A117.1.</p>
<p>209.2 Type. Where provided, passenger loading zones shall comply with 209.2.</p>		
<p>209.2.1 Passenger Loading Zones. Passenger loading zones, except those required to comply with 209.2.2 and 209.2.3, shall provide at least one passenger loading zone complying with 503 in every continuous 100 linear feet (30 m) of loading zone space, or fraction thereof.</p>		<p>IBC 1106.7.1 Continuous loading zones. Where passenger loading zones are provided, one passenger loading zone in every continuous 100 linear feet (30.4 m) maximum of loading zone space shall be accessible.</p>
<p>209.2.2 Bus Loading Zones. In bus loading zones restricted to use by designated or specified public transportation vehicles, each bus bay, bus stop, or other area designated for lift or ramp deployment shall comply with 810.2.</p>		
<p>209.2.3 On-Street Bus Stops. On-street bus stops shall comply with 810.2 to the maximum extent practicable.</p>	<p>10.2.1 (1) Where new bus stop pads are constructed at bus stops, bays or other areas where a lift or ramp is to be deployed, they shall have a firm, stable surface; a minimum clear length of 96 inches (measured from the curb or vehicle roadway edge) and a minimum clear width of 60 inches (measured parallel to the vehicle roadway) to the maximum extent allowed by legal or site constraints; and shall be connected to streets, sidewalks or pedestrian paths by an accessible route complying with 4.3 and 4.4. The slope of the</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	pad parallel to the roadway shall, to the extent practicable, be the same as the roadway. For water drainage, a maximum slope of 1:50 (2%) perpendicular to the roadway is allowed.	
209.3 Medical Care and Long-Term Care Facilities. At least one passenger loading zone complying with 503 shall be provided at an accessible entrance to licensed medical care and licensed long-term care facilities where the period of stay exceeds twenty-four hours.	6.2 Entrances. At least one accessible entrance that complies with 4.14 shall be protected from the weather by canopy or roof overhang. Such entrances shall incorporate a passenger loading zone that complies with 4.6.6.	IBC 1106.7.2 Medical facilities. A passenger loading zone shall be provided at an accessible entrance to licensed medical and long-term care facilities where people receive physical or medical treatment or care and where the period of stay exceeds 24 hours.
209.4 Valet Parking. Parking facilities that provide valet parking services shall provide at least one passenger loading zone complying with 503.	4.1.2(5)(e) Valet parking: Valet parking facilities shall provide a passenger loading zone complying with 4.6.6 located on an accessible route to the entrance of the facility. Paragraphs 5(a), 5(b), and 5(d) of this section do not apply to valet parking facilities.	IBC 1106.7.3 Valet parking. A passenger loading zone shall be provided at valet parking services.
209.5 Mechanical Access Parking Garages. Mechanical access parking garages shall provide at least one passenger loading zone complying with 503 at vehicle drop-off and vehicle pick-up areas.		
210 Stairways		
210.1 General. Interior and exterior stairs that are part of a means of egress shall comply with 504.	4.1.3(4) Interior and exterior stairs connecting levels that are not connected by an elevator, ramp, or other accessible means of vertical access shall comply with 4.9.	See Section 1009 Stairways and Handrails and Section 1023 Exterior Ramps and Stairways
EXCEPTIONS: 1. In detention and correctional facilities, stairs that are not located in public use areas shall not be required to comply with 504.	See Appendix 12.1 EXCEPTION	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
2. In alterations, stairs between levels that are connected by an accessible route shall not be required to comply with 504, except that handrails complying with 505 shall be provided when the stairs are altered.		
3. In assembly areas, aisle stairs shall not be required to comply with 504.		
4. Stairs that connect play components shall not be required to comply with 504.	See Appendix 15.6.1 EXCEPTION 6	
211 Drinking Fountains	4.1.3(10) Drinking Fountains:	
<p>211.1 General. Where drinking fountains are provided on an exterior site, on a floor, or within a secured area they shall be provided in accordance with 211.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In detention or correctional facilities, drinking fountains only serving holding or housing cells not required to comply with 232 shall not be required to comply with 211.</p>	(a) Where only one drinking fountain is provided on a floor there shall be a drinking fountain which is accessible to individuals who use wheelchairs in accordance with 4.15 and one accessible to those who have difficulty bending or stooping. (This can be accommodated by the use of a "hi-lo" fountain; by providing one fountain accessible to those who use wheelchairs and one fountain at a standard height convenient for those who have difficulty bending; by providing a fountain accessible under 4.15 and a water cooler; or by such other means as would achieve the required accessibility for each group on each floor.)	<p>IBC 1109.5 Drinking fountains. Where drinking fountains are provided on an exterior site, on a floor, or within a secured area, the drinking fountains shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1109.5.1 and 1109.5.2.</p>
		<p>IBC E105.1 Water coolers. Where water coolers are provided, at least 50 percent, but not less than one, of such units provided on each floor shall comply with ICC A117.1.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>211.2 Minimum Number. No fewer than two drinking fountains shall be provided. One drinking fountain shall comply with 602.1 through 602.6 and one drinking fountain shall comply with 602.7.</p>	<p>(b) Where more than one drinking fountain or water cooler is provided on a floor, 50% of those provided shall comply with 4.15 and shall be on an accessible route.</p>	<p>IBC 1109.5.1 Minimum number. No fewer than two drinking fountains shall be provided. One drinking fountain shall comply with the requirements for people who use a wheelchair and one drinking fountain shall comply with the requirements for standing persons.</p>
<p>EXCEPTION: Where a single drinking fountain complies with 602.1 through 602.6 and 602.7, it shall be permitted to be substituted for two separate drinking fountains.</p>		<p>Exception: A single drinking fountain that complies with the requirements for people who use a wheelchair and standing persons shall be permitted to be substituted for two separate drinking fountains.</p>
<p>211.3 More Than Minimum Number. Where more than the minimum number of drinking fountains specified in 211.2 are provided, 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with 602.1 through 602.6, and 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with 602.7.</p>		<p>IBC 1109.5.2 More than the minimum number. Where more than the minimum number of drinking fountains specified in Section 1109.5.1 are provided, 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with the requirements for persons who use a wheelchair and 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with the requirements for standing persons.</p>
<p>EXCEPTION: Where 50 percent of the drinking fountains yields a fraction, 50 percent shall be permitted to be rounded up or down provided that the total number of drinking fountains complying with 211 equals 100 percent of drinking fountains.</p>		<p>Exception: Where 50 percent of the drinking fountains yields a fraction, 50 percent shall be permitted to be rounded up or down provided that the total number of drinking fountains complying with this section equals 100 percent of drinking fountains.</p>
212 Kitchens, Kitchenettes, and Sinks		
<p>212.1 General. Where provided, kitchens, kitchenettes, and sinks shall comply with 212.</p>		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
212.2 Kitchens and Kitchenettes. Kitchens and kitchenettes shall comply with 804.		IBC 1109.4 Kitchens and kitchenettes. Where kitchens and kitchenettes are provided in accessible spaces or rooms, they shall be accessible in accordance with ICC A117.1.
212.3 Sinks. Where sinks are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type provided in each accessible room or space shall comply with 606.		IBC 1109.3 Sinks. Where sinks are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, provided in accessible spaces shall comply with ICC A117.1.
EXCEPTION: Mop or service sinks shall not be required to comply with 212.3.		Exception: Mop or service sinks are not required to be accessible.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>213 Toilet Facilities and Bathing Facilities</p> <p>213.1 General. Where toilet facilities and bathing facilities are provided, they shall comply with 213. Where toilet facilities and bathing facilities are provided in facilities permitted by 206.2.3 Exceptions 1 and 2 not to connect stories by an accessible route, toilet facilities and bathing facilities shall be provided on a story connected by an accessible route to an accessible entrance.</p> <p>213.2 Toilet Rooms and Bathing Rooms. Where toilet rooms are provided, each toilet room shall comply with 603. Where bathing rooms are provided, each bathing room shall comply with 603.</p>	<p>4.1.2(6) If toilet facilities are provided on a site, then each such public or common use toilet facility shall comply with 4.22. If bathing facilities are provided on a site, then each such public or common use bathing facility shall comply with 4.23 Accessible units shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Portable toilet units at construction sites used exclusively by construction personnel are not required to comply with 4.1.2(6).</p> <p>4.1.3(11) Toilet Facilities: If toilet rooms are provided, then each public and common use toilet room shall comply with 4.22. Other toilet rooms provided for the use of occupants of specific spaces (i.e., a private toilet room for the occupant of a private office) shall be adaptable. If bathing rooms are provided, then each public and common use bathroom shall comply with 4.23. Accessible toilet rooms and bathing facilities shall be on an accessible route.</p>	<p>IBC 1109.2 Toilet and bathing facilities. Toilet rooms and bathing facilities shall be accessible. Where a floor level is not required to be connected by an accessible route, the only toilet rooms or bathing facilities provided within the facility shall not be located on the inaccessible floor. At least one of each type of fixture, element, control or dispenser in each accessible toilet room and bathing facility shall be accessible.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <p>1. In toilet rooms or bathing facilities accessed only through a private office, not for common or public use, and intended for use by a single occupant, any of the following alternatives are allowed:</p> <p>1.1 Doors are permitted to swing into the clear floor space provided the door swing can be reversed to meet the requirements in ICC A117.1,</p> <p>1.2 The height requirements for the water closet in ICC A117.1 are not applicable,</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>1.3. Grab bars are not required to be installed in a toilet room, provided that reinforcement has been installed in the walls and located so as to permit the installation of such grab bars, and</p> <p>1.4. The requirement for height, knee and toe clearance shall not apply to a lavatory.</p> <p>2. This section is not applicable to toilet and bathing facilities that serve dwelling units or sleeping units that are not required to be accessible by Section 1107.</p>
<p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. In alterations where it is technically infeasible to comply with 603, altering existing toilet or bathing rooms shall not be required where a single unisex toilet room or bathing room complying with 213.2.1 is provided and located in the same area and on the same floor as existing inaccessible toilet or bathing rooms.</p>	<p>4.1.6(3)(e) Toilet Rooms:</p> <p>(i) Where it is technically infeasible to comply with 4.22 or 4.23, the installation of at least one unisex toilet/bathroom per floor, located in the same area as existing toilet facilities, will be permitted in lieu of modifying existing toilet facilities to be accessible. Each unisex toilet room shall contain one water closet complying with 4.16 and one lavatory complying with 4.19, and the door shall have a privacy latch.</p>	<p>IBC 3409.7.9 Toilet rooms. Where it is technically infeasible to alter existing toilet and bathing facilities to be accessible, an accessible unisex toilet or bathing facility is permitted. The unisex facility shall be located on the same floor and in the same area as the existing facilities.</p>
	<p>(ii) Where it is technically infeasible to install a required standard stall (Fig. 30(a)), or where other codes prohibit reduction of the fixture count (i.e., removal of a water closet in order to create a double-wide stall), either alternate</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	stall (Fig.30(b)) may be provided in lieu of the standard stall.	
2. Where exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities are permitted by 202.5, no fewer than one toilet room for each sex complying with 603 or one unisex toilet room complying with 213.2.1 shall be provided.	4.1.7(3)(c) If toilets are provided, then at least one toilet facility complying with 4.22 and 4.1.6 shall be provided along an accessible route that complies with 4.3. Such toilet facility may be unisex in design.	IBC 3409.8.4 Toilet and bathing facilities. Where toilet rooms are provided, at least one accessible toilet room complying with Section 1109.2.1 shall be provided.
3. Where multiple single user portable toilet or bathing units are clustered at a single location, no more than 5 percent of the toilet units and bathing units at each cluster shall be required to comply with 603. Portable toilet units and bathing units complying with 603 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1.	4.1.2(6) If toilet facilities are provided on a site, then each such public or common use toilet facility shall comply with 4.22. If bathing facilities are provided on a site, then each such public or common use bathing facility shall comply with 4.23. For single user portable toilet or bathing units clustered at a single location, at least five percent but not less than one toilet unit or bathing unit complying with 4.22 or 4.23 shall be installed at each cluster whenever typical inaccessible units are provided. Accessible units shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility.	IBC E105.2 Portable toilets and bathing rooms. Where multiple single-user portable toilet or bathing units are clustered at a single location, at least 5 percent, but not less than one toilet unit or bathing unit at each cluster, shall comply with ICC A117.1. Signs containing the International Symbol of Accessibility and complying with ICC A117.1 shall identify accessible portable toilets and bathing units. Exception: Portable toilet units provided for use exclusively by construction personnel on a construction site.
4. Where multiple single user toilet rooms are clustered at a single location, no more than 50 percent of the single user toilet rooms for each use at each cluster shall be required to comply with 603.		IBC 1109.2, exception 3 Where multiple single-user toilet rooms or bathing facilities are clustered at a single location and contain fixtures in excess of the minimum required number of plumbing fixtures, at least 5 percent, but not less than one room for each use at each cluster, e, element, control or dispenser in each accessible toilet room and bathing facility shall be accessible.
		IBC 1109.2.1 Unisex toilet and bathing rooms. In assembly and mercantile occupancies, an accessible unisex toilet room

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>shall be provided where an aggregate of six or more male and female water closets are required. In buildings of mixed occupancy, only those water closets required for the assembly or mercantile occupancy shall be used to determine the unisex toilet room requirement. In recreational facilities where separate-sex bathing rooms are provided, an accessible unisex bathing room shall be provided. Fixtures located within unisex toilet and bathing rooms shall be included in determining the number of fixtures provided in an occupancy.</p> <p>Exception: Where each separate-sex bathing room has only one shower or bathtub fixture, a unisex bathing room is not required.</p>
		<p>IBC 1109.2.1.1 Standard. Unisex toilet and bathing rooms shall comply with Sections 1109.2.1.2 through 1109.2.1.7 and ICC A117.1.</p>
<p>213.2.1 Unisex (Single-Use or Family) Toilet and Unisex Bathing Rooms. Unisex toilet rooms shall contain not more than one lavatory, and two water closets without urinals or one water closet and one urinal. Unisex bathing rooms shall contain one shower or one shower and one bathtub, one lavatory, and one water closet. Doors to unisex toilet rooms and unisex bathing rooms shall have privacy latches.</p>		<p>IBC 1109.2.1.2 Unisex toilet rooms. Unisex toilet rooms shall include only one water closet and only one lavatory. A unisex bathing room in accordance with Section 1109.2.1.3 shall be considered a unisex toilet room.</p> <p>Exception: A urinal is permitted to be provided in addition to the water closet in a unisex toilet room.</p>
		<p>IBC 1109.2.1.3 Unisex bathing rooms.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		Unisex bathing rooms shall include only one shower or bathtub fixture. Unisex bathing rooms shall also include one water closet and one lavatory. Where storage facilities are provided for separate-sex bathing rooms, accessible storage facilities shall be provided for unisex bathing rooms.
		IBC 1109.2.1.4 Location. Unisex toilet and bathing rooms shall be located on an accessible route. Unisex toilet rooms shall be located not more than one story above or below separate-sex toilet rooms. The accessible route from any separate-sex toilet room to a unisex toilet room shall not exceed 500 feet (152 m).
		IBC 1109.2.1.5 Prohibited location. In passenger transportation facilities and airports, the accessible route from separate-sex toilet rooms to a unisex toilet room shall not pass through security checkpoints.
		IBC 1109.2.1.6 Clear floor space. Where doors swing into a unisex toilet or bathing room, a clear floor space not less than 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) shall be provided, within the room, beyond the area of the door swing.
		IBC 1109.2.1.7 Privacy. Doors to unisex toilet and bathing rooms shall be securable from within the room.
213.3 Plumbing Fixtures and Accessories. Plumbing fixtures and accessories provided in		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
a toilet room or bathing room required to comply with 213.2 shall comply with 213.3.		
<p>213.3.1 Toilet Compartments. Where toilet compartments are provided, at least one toilet compartment shall comply with 604.8.1. In addition to the compartment required to comply with 604.8.1, at least one compartment shall comply with 604.8.2 where six or more toilet compartments are provided, or where the combination of urinals and water closets totals six or more fixtures.</p> <p>213.3.2 Water Closets. Where water closets are provided, at least one shall comply with 604.</p>	<p>4.22.4 Water Closets. If toilet stalls are provided, then at least one shall be a standard toilet stall complying with 4.17; where 6 or more stalls are provided, in addition to the stall complying with 4.17.3, at least one stall 36 in (915 mm) wide with an outward swinging, self-closing door and parallel grab bars complying with Fig. 30(d) and 4.26 shall be provided. Water closets in such stalls shall comply with 4.16. If water closets are not in stalls, then at least one shall comply with 4.16.</p> <p>4.23.4 Water Closets. If toilet stalls are provided, then at least one shall be a standard toilet stall complying with 4.17; where 6 or more stalls are provided, in addition to the stall complying with 4.17.3, at least one stall 36 in (915 mm) wide with an outward swinging, self-closing door and parallel grab bars complying with Fig. 30(d) and 4.26 shall be provided. Water closets in such stalls shall comply with 4.16. If water closets are not in stalls, then at least one shall comply with 4.16.</p>	<p>IBC 1109.2.2 Water closet compartment. Where water closet compartments are provided in a toilet room or bathing facility, at least one wheelchair-accessible compartment shall be provided. Where the combined total water closet compartments and urinals provided in a toilet room or bathing facility is six or more, at least one ambulatory-accessible water closet compartment shall be provided in addition to the wheelchair-accessible compartment. Wheelchair-accessible and ambulatory-accessible compartments shall comply with ICC A117.1. See 1109.2</p>
<p>213.3.3 Urinals. Where more than one urinal is provided, at least one shall comply with 605.</p>	<p>4.22.5 Urinals. If urinals are provided, then at least one shall comply with 4.18.</p> <p>4.23.5 Urinals. If urinals are provided, then at least one shall comply with 4.18.</p>	<p>IBC 1109.2, exception 4. Where no more than one urinal is provided in a toilet room or bathing facility, the urinal is not required to be accessible.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>213.3.4 Lavatories. Where lavatories are provided, at least one shall comply with 606 and shall not be located in a toilet compartment.</p> <p>213.3.5 Mirrors. Where mirrors are provided, at least one shall comply with 603.3.</p>	<p>4.22.6 Lavatories and Mirrors. If lavatories and mirrors are provided, then at least one of each shall comply with 4.19.</p> <p>4.23.6 Lavatories and Mirrors. If lavatories and mirrors are provided, then at least one of each shall comply with 4.19.</p>	See 1109.2
213.3.6 Bathing Facilities. Where bathtubs or showers are provided, at least one bathtub complying with 607 or at least one shower complying with 608 shall be provided.	4.23.8 Bathing and Shower Facilities. If tubs or showers are provided, then at least one accessible tub that complies with 4.20 or at least one accessible shower that complies with 4.21 shall be provided.	See 1109.2
213.3.7 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in toilet rooms without toilet compartments, at least one of each type shall comply with 603.4. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in toilet compartments, at least one of each type complying with 604.8.3 shall be provided in toilet compartments required to comply with 213.3.1. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in bathing facilities, at least one of each type complying with 603.4 shall serve fixtures required to comply with 213.3.6.		See 1109.2
214 Washing Machines and Clothes Dryers		
214.1 General. Where provided, washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with 214.		IBC E105.3 Laundry equipment. Where provided in spaces required to be accessible, washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with this section.
214.2 Washing Machines. Where three or fewer washing machines are provided, at least one shall comply with 611. Where more than		IBC E105.3.1Washing machines. Where three or fewer washing machines are provided, at least one shall comply with ICC A117.1.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
three washing machines are provided, at least two shall comply with 611.		Where more than three washing machines are provided, at least two shall comply with ICC A117.1.
214.3 Clothes Dryers. Where three or fewer clothes dryers are provided, at least one shall comply with 611. Where more than three clothes dryers are provided, at least two shall comply with 611.		IBC E105.3.2 Clothes dryers. Where three or fewer clothes dryers are provided, at least one shall comply with ICC A117.1. Where more than three clothes dryers are provided, at least two shall comply with ICC A117.1.
215 Fire Alarm Systems	4.1.3(14) If emergency warning systems are provided, then they shall include both audible alarms and visual alarms complying with 4.28. Sleeping accommodations required to comply with 9.3 shall have an alarm system complying with 4.28. Emergency warning systems in medical care facilities may be modified to suit standard health care alarm design practice.	IBC 907.9 Alarm notification appliances. Alarm notification appliances shall be provided and shall be listed for their purpose.
215.1 General. Where fire alarm systems provide audible alarm coverage, alarms shall comply with 215.		IBC 907.9.1 Visible alarms. Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with Sections 907.9.1.1 through 907.9.1.3.
EXCEPTION: In existing facilities, visible alarms shall not be required except where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed.		Exceptions: 1. Visible alarm notification appliances are not required in alterations, except where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed.
		2. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in exits as defined in Section 1002.1.
215.2 Public and Common Use Areas. Alarms in public use areas and common use areas shall comply with 702.	4.28.1 General. Alarm systems required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.28. At a minimum, visual signal appliances shall be provided in buildings and facilities in each of the following areas: restrooms and any other general usage areas (e.g., meeting rooms),	IBC 907.9.1.1 Public and common areas. Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in public areas and common areas.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	hallways, lobbies, and any other area for common use.	
215.3 Employee Work Areas. Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the wiring system shall be designed so that visible alarms complying with 702 can be integrated into the alarm system.		IBC 907.9.1.2 Employee work areas. Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the wiring systems shall be designed so that visible alarm notification appliances can be integrated into the alarm system.
215.4 Transient Lodging. Guest rooms required to comply with 224.4 shall provide alarms complying with 702.	4.28.4 Auxiliary Alarms. Units and sleeping accommodations shall have a visual alarm connected to the building emergency alarm system or shall have a standard 110-volt electrical receptacle into which such an alarm can be connected and a means by which a signal from the building emergency alarm system can trigger such an auxiliary alarm. When visual alarms are in place the signal shall be visible in all areas of the unit or room. Instructions for use of the auxiliary alarm or receptacle shall be provided.	IBC 907.9.1.3 Groups I-1 and R-1. Group I-1 and R-1 sleeping units in accordance with Table 907.9.1.3 shall be provided with a visible alarm notification appliance, activated by both the in-room smoke alarm and the building fire alarm system.
215.5 Residential Facilities. Where provided in residential dwelling units required to comply with 809.5, alarms shall comply with 702.		IBC 907.9.1.4 Group R-2. In Group R-2 occupancies required by Section 907 to have a fire alarm system, all dwelling units and sleeping units shall be provided with the capability to support visible alarm notification appliances in accordance with ICC A117.1.
		IBC 907.9.2 Audible alarms. Audible alarm notification appliances shall be provided and shall sound a distinctive sound that is not to be used for any purpose other than that of a fire alarm. The audible alarm notification appliances shall provide a sound pressure

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>level of 15 decibels (dBA) above the average ambient sound level or 5 dBA above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds, whichever is greater, in every occupied space within the building. The minimum sound pressure levels shall be: 70 dBA in occupancies in Groups R and I-1; 90 dBA in mechanical equipment rooms and 60 dBA in other occupancies. The maximum sound pressure level for audible alarm notification appliances shall be 120 dBA at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance. Where the average ambient noise is greater than 105 dBA, visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 72 and audible alarm notification appliances shall not be required.</p> <p>Exception: Visible alarm notification appliances shall be allowed in lieu of audible alarm notification appliances in critical-care areas of Group I-2 occupancies.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	4.1.3(15) Detectable warnings shall be provided at locations as specified in 4.29.	
216 Signs 216.1 General. Signs shall be provided in accordance with 216 and shall comply with 703.	4.1.2(7) Building Signage. 4.1.3(16) Building Signage: Signs which designate permanent rooms and spaces shall comply with 4.30.1, 4.30.4, 4.30.5 and 4.30.6. Other signs which provide direction to, or information about, functional spaces of the building shall comply with 4.30.1, 4.30.2, 4.30.3, and 4.30.5. Elements and spaces of accessible facilities which shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility and which shall comply with 4.30.7 are:	IBC SECTION 1110 SIGNAGE IBC 1110.1 Signs. Required accessible elements shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility at the following locations:
EXCEPTIONS: 1. Building directories, menus, seat and row designations in assembly areas, occupant names, building addresses, and company names and logos shall not be required to comply with 216.	4.1.3(16)(b) EXCEPTION: Building directories, menus, and all other signs which are temporary are not required to comply.	IBC E107.2, exception 2. Building directories, menus, seat and row designations in assembly areas, occupant names, building addresses and company names and logos are not required to comply.
2. In parking facilities, signs shall not be required to comply with 216.2, 216.3, and 216.6 through 216.12.		IBC E107.2, exception 3. Signs in parking facilities are not required to comply.
3. Temporary, 7 days or less, signs shall not be required to comply with 216.	4.1.3(16)(b) EXCEPTION: Building directories, menus, and all other signs which are temporary are not required to comply.	IBC E107.2, exception 4. Temporary (seven days or less) signs are not required to comply.
4. In detention and correctional facilities, signs not located in public use areas shall not be required to comply with 216.	See Appendix 12.1 EXCEPTION	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>216.2 Designations. Interior and exterior signs identifying permanent rooms and spaces shall comply with 703.1, 703.2, and 703.5. Where pictograms are provided as designations of permanent interior rooms and spaces, the pictograms shall comply with 703.6 and shall have text descriptors complying with 703.2 and 703.5.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Exterior signs that are not located at the door to the space they serve shall not be required to comply with 703.2.</p>	<p>4.1.2(7) Building Signage. Signs which designate permanent rooms and spaces shall comply with 4.30.1, 4.30.4, 4.30.5 and 4.30.6. Other signs which provide direction to, or information about, functional spaces of the building shall comply with 4.30.1, 4.30.2, 4.30.3, and 4.30.5. Elements and spaces of accessible facilities which shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility and which shall comply with 4.30.7 are...</p> <p>4.1.3(16)(a) Signs which designate permanent rooms and spaces shall comply with 4.30.1, 4.30.4, 4.30.5 and 4.30.6.</p>	<p>IBC E107.2 Designations. Interior and exterior signs identifying permanent rooms and spaces shall be tactile. Where pictograms are provided as designations of interior rooms and spaces, the pictograms shall have tactile text descriptors. Signs required to provide tactile characters and pictograms shall comply with ICC A117.1.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <p>1. Exterior signs that are not located at the door to the space they serve are not required to comply.</p>
<p>216.3 Directional and Informational Signs. Signs that provide direction to or information about interior spaces and facilities of the site shall comply with 703.5.</p>	<p>4.1.3(16)(b) Other signs which provide direction to or information about functional spaces of the building shall comply with 4.30.1, 4.30.2, 4.30.3, and 4.30.5.</p>	<p>IBC E107.3 Directional and informational signs. Signs that provide direction to, or information about, permanent interior spaces of the site and facilities shall contain visual characters complying with ICC A117.1.</p> <p>Exception: Building directories, personnel names, company or occupant names and logos, menus and temporary (seven days or less) signs are not required to comply with ICC A117.1.</p>
<p>216.4 Means of Egress. Signs for means of egress shall comply with 216.4.</p>		<p>BC 1007.7 Signage. At exits and elevators serving a required accessible space but not providing an approved accessible means of egress, signage shall be installed indicating the location of accessible means of egress.</p>
<p>216.4.1 Exit Doors. Doors at exit passageways, exit discharge, and exit</p>		<p>IBC 1110.3 Other signs Signage indicating special accessibility provisions shall be</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
stairways shall be identified by tactile signs complying with 703.1, 703.2, and 703.5.		provided as shown: 2. At each door to an egress stairway, exit passageway and exit discharge, signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1011.3.
216.4.2 Areas of Refuge. Signs required by section 1003.2.13.5.4 of the International Building Code (2000 edition) or section 1007.6.4 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1) to provide instructions in areas of refuge shall comply with 703.5.	4.3.11.5 Identification. Each area of rescue assistance shall be identified by a sign which states "AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE" and displays the international symbol of accessibility. The sign shall be illuminated when exit sign illumination is required. Signage shall also be installed at all inaccessible exits and where otherwise necessary to clearly indicate the direction to areas of rescue assistance. In each area of rescue assistance, instructions on the use of the area under emergency conditions shall be posted adjoining the two-way communication system.	3. At areas of refuge, signage shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1007.6.3 through 1007.6.5.
		4. At areas for assisted rescue, signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1007.8.3.
216.4.3 Directional Signs. Signs required by section 1003.2.13.6 of the International Building Code (2000 edition) or section 1007.7 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1) to provide directions to accessible means of egress shall comply with 703.5.	4.3.11.5 Identification. Each area of rescue assistance shall be identified by a sign which states "AREA OF RESCUE ASSISTANCE" and displays the international symbol of accessibility. The sign shall be illuminated when exit sign illumination is required. Signage shall also be installed at all inaccessible exits and where otherwise necessary to clearly indicate the direction to areas of rescue assistance. In each area of rescue assistance, instructions on the use of the area under emergency conditions shall be posted	IBC 1110.2 Directional signage. Directional signage indicating the route to the nearest like accessible element shall be provided at the following locations. These directional signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility: ... At exits and elevators serving a required accessible space, but not providing an approved accessible means of egress, signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1007.7.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	adjoining the two-way communication system.	
216.5 Parking. Parking spaces complying with 502 shall be identified by signs complying with 502.6.	4.1.2(7)(a) Parking spaces designated as reserved for individuals with disabilities;	IBC 1110.1 1. Accessible parking spaces required by Section 1106.1 except where the total number of parking spaces provided is four or less.
EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where a total of four or fewer parking spaces, including accessible parking spaces, are provided on a site, identification of accessible parking spaces shall not be required.		
2. In residential facilities, where parking spaces are assigned to specific residential dwelling units, identification of accessible parking spaces shall not be required.		
	4.1.2(7)(b) Accessible passenger loading zones;	IBC 1110.1 2. Accessible passenger loading zones.
216.6 Entrances. Where not all entrances comply with 404, entrances complying with 404 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Directional signs complying with 703.5 that indicate the location of the nearest entrance complying with 404 shall be provided at entrances that do not comply with 404.	<p>4.1.2(7)(c) Accessible entrances when not all are accessible (inaccessible entrances shall have directional signage to indicate the route to the nearest accessible entrance);</p> <p>4.1.3(8)(d) Entrances which are not accessible shall have directional signage complying with 4.30.1, 4.30.2, 4.30.3, and 4.30.5, which indicates the location of the nearest accessible entrance.</p> <p>4.1.6(c) Accessible entrances when not all are accessible (inaccessible entrances shall have directional signage to indicate the route to the nearest accessible entrance);</p>	<p>IBC 1110.1</p> <p>5. Accessible entrances where not all entrances are accessible.</p> <p>IBC 1110.2 Directional signage. Directional signage indicating the route to the nearest like accessible element shall be provided at the following locations. These directional signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility: ...Inaccessible building entrances</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>216.7 Elevators. Where existing elevators do not comply with 407, elevators complying with 407 shall be clearly identified with the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1.</p>		<p>IBC 1110.2 Directional signage. Directional signage indicating the route to the nearest like accessible element shall be provided at the following locations. These directional signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility: ... Elevators not serving an accessible route.</p>
<p>216.8 Toilet Rooms and Bathing Rooms. Where existing toilet rooms or bathing rooms do not comply with 603, directional signs indicating the location of the nearest toilet room or bathing room complying with 603 within the facility shall be provided. Signs shall comply with 703.5 and shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Where existing toilet rooms or bathing rooms do not comply with 603, the toilet rooms or bathing rooms complying with 603 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Where clustered single user toilet rooms or bathing facilities are permitted to use exceptions to 213.2, toilet rooms or bathing facilities complying with 603 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1 unless all toilet rooms and bathing facilities comply with 603.</p>	<p>4.1.2(7)(d) Accessible toilet and bathing facilities when not all are accessible.</p> <p>4.1.6(3)(e)(iii) When existing toilet or bathing facilities are being altered and are not made accessible, signage complying with 4.30.1, 4.30.2, 4.30.3, 4.30.5 and 4.30.7 shall be provided indicating the location of the nearest accessible toilet or bathing facility within the facility.</p>	<p>IBC 1110.1 Signs. 4. Accessible rooms where multiple single-user toilet or bathing rooms are clustered at a single location.</p> <p>IBC E107.1 Signs. Required accessible portable toilets and bathing facilities shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility.</p> <p>IBC 1110.2 Directional signage. Directional signage indicating the route to the nearest like accessible element shall be provided at the following locations. These directional signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility: ... Inaccessible public toilets and bathing facilities.</p> <p>At each separate-sex toilet and bathing room indicating the location of the nearest unisex toilet or bathing room where provided in accordance with Section 1109.2.1.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>216.9 TTYs. Identification and directional signs for public TTYs shall be provided in accordance with 216.9.</p> <p>216.9.1 Identification Signs. Public TTYs shall be identified by the International Symbol of TTY complying with 703.7.2.2.</p> <p>216.9.2 Directional Signs. Directional signs indicating the location of the nearest public TTY shall be provided at all banks of public pay telephones not containing a public TTY. In addition, where signs provide direction to public pay telephones, they shall also provide direction to public TTYs. Directional signs shall comply with 703.5 and shall include the International Symbol of TTY complying with 703.7.2.2.</p>	<p>4.30.7(3) Text Telephones. Text telephones required by 4.1.3(17)(c) shall be identified by the international TDD symbol (Fig 43(c)). In addition, if a facility has a public text telephone, directional signage indicating the location of the nearest text telephone shall be placed adjacent to all banks of telephones which do not contain a text telephone. Such directional signage shall include the international TDD symbol. If a facility has no banks of telephones, the directional signage shall be provided at the entrance (e.g., in a building directory).</p>	<p>IBC E106.4.9 Signs. Public TTYs shall be identified by the International Symbol of TTY complying with ICC A117.1. Directional signs indicating the location of the nearest public TTY shall be provided at banks of public pay telephones not containing a public TTY. Additionally, where signs provide direction to public pay telephones, they shall also provide direction to public TTYs. Such signs shall comply with ICC A117.1 and shall include the International Symbol of TTY.</p>
<p>216.10 Assistive Listening Systems. Each assembly area required by 219 to provide assistive listening systems shall provide signs informing patrons of the availability of the assistive listening system. Assistive listening signs shall comply with 703.5 and shall include the International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss complying with 703.7.2.4.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where ticket offices or windows are provided, signs shall not be required at each assembly area provided that signs are displayed at each ticket office or window informing patrons of the availability of assistive listening systems.</p>	<p>4.30.7(4) Assistive Listening Systems. In assembly areas where permanently installed assistive listening systems are required by 4.1.3(19)(b) the availability of such systems shall be identified with signage that includes the international symbol of access for hearing loss (Fig 43(d)).</p>	<p>IBC 1110.3 Other signs Signage indicating special accessibility provisions shall be provided as shown:</p> <p>1. Each assembly area required to comply with Section 1108.2.7 shall provide a sign notifying patrons of the availability of assistive listening systems.</p> <p>Exception: Where ticket offices or windows are provided, signs are not required at each assembly area provided that signs are displayed at each ticket office or window informing patrons of the availability of assistive listening systems.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>216.11 Check-Out Aisles. Where more than one check-out aisle is provided, check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Where check-out aisles are identified by numbers, letters, or functions, signs identifying check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be located in the same location as the check-out aisle identification.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where all check-out aisles serving a single function comply with 904.3, signs complying with 703.7.2.1 shall not be required.</p>	<p>7.3(3) Signage identifying accessible check-out aisles shall comply with 4.30.7 and shall be mounted above the check-out aisle in the same location where the check-out number or type of check-out is displayed.</p>	<p>IBC 1110.1 Signs</p> <p>6. Accessible check-out aisles where not all aisles are accessible. The sign, where provided, shall be above the check-out aisle in the same location as the check-out aisle number or type of check-out identification.</p>
<p>216.12 Amusement Rides. Signs identifying the type of access provided on amusement rides shall be provided at entries to queues and waiting lines. In addition, where accessible unload areas also serve as accessible load areas, signs indicating the location of the accessible load and unload areas shall be provided at entries to queues and waiting lines.</p>	<p>See Appendix 15.1.6</p>	
<p>217 Telephones</p>	<p>4.1.3(17) Public telephones:</p>	<p>IBC SECTION E106 TELEPHONES</p>
<p>217.1 General. Where coin-operated public pay telephones, coinless public pay telephones, public closed-circuit telephones, public courtesy phones, or other types of public telephones are provided, public telephones shall be provided in accordance with 217 for each type of public telephone provided. For purposes of this section, a bank of telephones shall be considered to be two or</p>	<p>(a) If public pay telephones, public closed circuit telephones, or other public telephones are provided, then they shall comply with 4.31.2 through 4.31.8 to the extent required by the following table:</p>	<p>IBC E106.1 General. Where coin-operated public pay telephones, coinless public pay telephones, public closed-circuit telephones, courtesy phones or other types of public telephones are provided, accessible public telephones shall be provided in accordance with Sections E106.2 through E106.5 for each type of public telephone provided. For purposes of this section, a bank of telephones</p>

New ADAAG ¹		DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²		International Building Code ³	
more adjacent telephones.				shall be considered two or more adjacent telephones.	
217.2 Wheelchair Accessible Telephones. Where public telephones are provided, wheelchair accessible telephones complying with 704.2 shall be provided in accordance with Table 217.2.				IBC E106.2 Wheelchair-accessible telephones. Where public telephones are provided, wheelchair-accessible telephones complying with ICC A117.1 shall be provided in accordance with Table E106.2.	
EXCEPTION: Drive-up only public telephones shall not be required to comply with 217.2.					
Table 217.2 Wheelchair Accessible Telephones				IBC Table E106.2 Wheelchair Accessible Telephones	
Number of Telephones Provided on a Floor, Level or Exterior Site	Minimum Number of Required Wheelchair Accessible Telephones	Number of each type of telephone provided on each floor	Number of telephones required to comply with 4.31.2 through 4.31.8 ¹	Number of Telephones Provided on a Floor, Level or Exterior Site	Minimum Required Number of Wheelchair Accessible Telephones
1 or more single units	1 per floor, level and exterior site	1 or more single unit	1 per floor	1 or more single unit	1 per floor, level and exterior site
1 bank	1 per floor, level and exterior site	1 bank ²	1 per floor	1 bank	1 per floor, level and exterior site
2 or more banks	1 per bank	2 or more banks ²	1 per bank. Accessible unit may be installed as a single unit in proximity (either visible or with signage) to the bank. At least one public telephone per floor shall meet the requirements for a forward reach telephone ³	2 or more banks	1 per bank

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>¹ Additional public telephones may be installed at any height. Unless otherwise specified, accessible telephones may be either forward or side reach telephones.</p> <p>² A bank consists of two or more adjacent public telephones, often installed as a unit.</p> <p>³ EXCEPTION: For exterior installations only, if dial tone first service is available, then a side reach telephone may be installed instead of the required forward reach telephone.</p>	
217.3 Volume Controls. All public telephones shall have volume controls complying with 704.3.	(b) All telephones required to be accessible and complying with 4.31.2 through 4.31.8 shall be equipped with a volume control. In addition, 25 percent, but never less than one, of all other public telephones provided shall be equipped with a volume control and shall be dispersed among all types of public telephones, including closed circuit telephones, throughout the building or facility. Signage complying with applicable provisions of 4.30.7 shall be provided.	IBC E106.3 Volume controls. All public telephones provided shall have volume control complying with ICC A117.1.
217.4 TTYs. TTYs complying with 704.4 shall be provided in accordance with 217.4.	<p>(c) The following shall be provided in accordance with 4.31.9:</p> <p>(i) If a total of four or more public pay telephones (including both interior and exterior telephones) is provided at a site, and at least one is in an interior location, then at least one interior public text telephone shall be provided</p>	IBC E106.4 TTYs. TTYs complying with ICC A117.1 shall be provided in accordance with Sections E106.4.1 through E106.4.9.
217.4.1 Bank Requirement. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided at a bank of telephones, at least one public TTY complying with 704.4 shall be		IBC E106.4.1 Bank requirement. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided at a bank of telephones, at least one public TTY shall be provided at that bank.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
provided at that bank.		
EXCEPTION: TTYs shall not be required at banks of telephones located within 200 feet (61 m) of, and on the same floor as, a bank containing a public TTY.		Exception: TTYs are not required at banks of telephones located within 200 feet (60 960 mm) of, and on the same floor as, a bank containing a public TTY.
217.4.2 Floor Requirement. TTYs in public buildings shall be provided in accordance with 217.4.2.1. TTYs in private buildings shall be provided in accordance with 217.4.2.2.		IBC E106.4.2 Floor requirement. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on a floor of a privately owned building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided on a floor of a publicly owned building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor.
217.4.2.1 Public Buildings. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided on a floor of a public building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor.	See Appendix 4.1.3(17)(c)(i)	
217.4.2.2 Private Buildings. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on a floor of a private building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor.		
217.4.3 Building Requirement. TTYs in public buildings shall be provided in accordance with 217.4.3.1. TTYs in private buildings shall be provided in accordance with 217.4.3.2.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>217.4.3.1 Public Buildings. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided in a public building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided in a public use area of a public building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the public building in a public use area.</p>	<p>(ii) If an interior public pay telephone is provided in a stadium or arena, in a convention center, in a hotel with a convention center, or in a covered mall, at least one interior public text telephone shall be provided in the facility</p>	<p>IBC E106.4.3 Building requirement. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided in a privately owned building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided in a publicly owned building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building.</p>
<p>217.4.3.2 Private Buildings. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided in a private building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building.</p>		<p>See E106.4.3</p>
<p>217.4.4 Exterior Site Requirement. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on an exterior site, at least one public TTY shall be provided on the site.</p>		<p>IBC E106.4.4 Site requirement. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on a site, at least one public TTY shall be provided on the site.</p>
<p>217.4.5 Rest Stops, Emergency Roadside Stops, and Service Plazas. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided at a public rest stop, emergency roadside stop, or service plaza, at least one public TTY shall be provided.</p>		<p>IBC E106.4.5 Rest stops, emergency road stops, and service plazas. Where a public pay telephone is provided at a public rest stop, emergency road stop or service plaza, at least one public TTY shall be provided.</p>
<p>217.4.6 Hospitals. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided serving a hospital emergency room, hospital recovery room, or hospital waiting room, at least one public TTY shall be provided at each location.</p>	<p>(iii) If a public pay telephone is located in or adjacent to a hospital emergency room, hospital recovery room, or hospital waiting room, one public text telephone shall be provided at each such location.</p>	<p>IBC E106.4.6 Hospitals. Where a public pay telephone is provided in or adjacent to a hospital emergency room, hospital recovery room or hospital waiting room, at least one public TTY shall be provided at each such location.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>217.4.7 Transportation Facilities. In transportation facilities, in addition to the requirements of 217.4.1 through 217.4.4, where at least one public pay telephone serves a particular entrance to a bus or rail facility, at least one public TTY shall be provided to serve that entrance. In airports, in addition to the requirements of 217.4.1 through 217.4.4, where four or more public pay telephones are located in a terminal outside the security areas, a concourse within the security areas, or a baggage claim area in a terminal, at least one public TTY shall be provided in each location.</p>	<p>10.3.1(12) Text Telephones: The following shall be provided in accordance with 4.31.9:</p> <p>(a) If an interior public pay telephone is provided in a transit facility (as defined by the Department of Transportation) at least one interior public text telephone shall be provided in the station.</p> <p>(b) Where four or more public pay telephones serve a particular entrance to a rail station and at least one is in an interior location, at least one interior public text telephone shall be provided to serve that entrance. Compliance with this section constitutes compliance with section 4.1.3(17)(c).</p>	<p>IBC E106.4.7 Transportation facilities. Transportation facilities shall be provided with TTYs in accordance with Sections E109.2.5 and E110.2 in addition to the TTYs required by Sections E106.4.1 through E106.4.4.</p>
	<p>10.4.1(4) Where public pay telephones are provided, and at least one is at an interior location, a public text telephone shall be provided in compliance with 4.31.9. Additionally, if four or more public pay telephones are located in any of the following locations, at least one public text telephone shall also be provided in that location:</p> <p>(a) a main terminal outside the security areas;</p> <p>(b) a concourse within the security areas; or</p> <p>(c) a baggage claim area in a terminal.</p> <p>Compliance with this section constitutes compliance with section 4.1.3(17)(c).</p>	<p>IBC E109.2.5 TTYs. Where a public pay telephone is provided in a transit facility (as defined by the Department of Transportation) at least one public TTY complying with ICC A117.1, Section 704.4, shall be provided in the station. In addition, where one or more public pay telephones serve a particular entrance to a transportation facility, at least one TTY telephone complying with ICC A117.1, Section 704.4, shall be provided to serve that entrance.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		IBC E110.2 TTYs. Where public pay telephones are provided, at least one TTY shall be provided in compliance with ICC A117.1, Section 704.4. Additionally, if four or more public pay telephones are located in a main terminal outside the security areas, a concourse within the security areas or a baggage claim area in a terminal, at least one public TTY complying with ICC A117.1, Section 704.4, shall also be provided in each such location.
217.4.8 Detention and Correctional Facilities. In detention and correctional facilities, where at least one pay telephone is provided in a secured area used only by detainees or inmates and security personnel, at least one TTY shall be provided in at least one secured area.	See Appendix 4.1.3(17)(c)(iv)	IBC E106.4.8 Detention and correctional facilities. In detention and correctional facilities, where a public pay telephone is provided in a secured area used only by detainees or inmates and security personnel, then at least one TTY shall be provided in at least one secured area.
217.5 Shelves for Portable TTYs. Where a bank of telephones in the interior of a building consists of three or more public pay telephones, at least one public pay telephone at the bank shall be provided with a shelf and an electrical outlet in accordance with 704.5.	4.1.3(17)(d) Where a bank of telephones in the interior of a building consists of three or more public pay telephones, at least one public pay telephone in each such bank shall be equipped with a shelf and outlet in compliance with 4.31.9(2).	IBC E106.5 Shelves for portable TTYs. Where a bank of telephones in the interior of a building consists of three or more public pay telephones, at least one public pay telephone at the bank shall be provided with a shelf and an electrical outlet in accordance with ICC A117.1.
EXCEPTIONS: 1. Secured areas of detention and correctional facilities where shelves and outlets are prohibited for purposes of security or safety shall not be required to comply with 217.5.	See Appendix 4.1.3(17)(d) Exception	Exceptions: 1. In secured areas of detention and correctional facilities, if shelves and outlets are prohibited for purposes of security or safety shelves and outlets for TTYs are not required to be provided.
2. The shelf and electrical outlet shall not be		2. The shelf and electrical outlet shall not be

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
required at a bank of telephones with a TTY.		required at a bank of telephones with a TTY.
218 Transportation Facilities	10. TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES.	IBC SECTION E109 TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES AND STATIONS
218.1 General. Transportation facilities shall comply with 218.	See 10.1	IBC E109.1 General. Fixed transportation facilities and stations shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections E109.2 and E109.3.
218.2 New and Altered Fixed Guideway Stations. New and altered stations in rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, intercity rail, high speed rail, and other fixed guideway systems shall comply with 810.5 through 810.10.	10.3.1 New Construction. New stations in rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, intercity bus, intercity rail, high speed rail, and other fixed guideway systems (e.g., automated guideway transit, monorails, etc.) shall comply with the following provisions, as applicable....	IBC E109.2 New construction. New stations in rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, intercity rail, high speed rail and other fixed guideway systems shall comply with Sections E109.2.1 through E109.2.8.
	10.3.3 Existing Facilities: Alterations. (1) For the purpose of complying with 4.1.6(2) (Alterations to an Area Containing a Primary Function), an area of primary function shall be as defined by applicable provisions of 49 C.F.R. 37.43(c); (Department of Transportation's ADA Rule) or 28 C.F.R. 36.403 (Department of Justice's ADA Rule).	
218.3 Key Stations and Existing Intercity Rail Stations. Key stations and existing intercity rail stations shall comply with 810.5 through 810.10.	10.3.2 Existing Facilities: Key Stations. (1) Rapid, light and commuter rail key stations, as defined under criteria established by the Department of Transportation in subpart C of 49 C.F.R. part 37 and existing intercity rail stations shall provide at least one accessible route from an accessible entrance to those areas necessary for use of the transportation	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>system.</p> <p>(2) The accessible route required by 10.3.2(1) shall include the features specified in 10.3.1(1), (4)-(9), (11)-(15), and (17)-(19).</p> <p>(3) Where technical infeasibility in existing stations requires the accessible route to lead from the public way to a paid area of the transit system, an accessible fare collection system, complying with 10.3.1(7), shall be provided along such accessible route.</p> <p>(4) In light rail, rapid rail and commuter rail key stations, the platform or a portion thereof and the vehicle floor shall be coordinated so that the vertical difference, measured when the vehicle is at rest, is within plus or minus 1-1/2 inches under all normal passenger load conditions, and the horizontal gap, measured when the vehicle is at rest, is no greater than 3 inches for at least one door of each vehicle or car required to be accessible by 49 C.F.R. part 37.</p> <p>EXCEPTION 1: Existing vehicles retrofitted to meet the requirements of 49 C.F.R. 37.93 (one-car-per-train rule) shall be coordinated with the platform such that, for at least one door, the vertical difference between the vehicle floor and the platform, measured when the vehicle is at rest with 50% normal passenger capacity, is within plus or minus 2 inches and the horizontal gap is no greater than 4 inches.</p> <p>EXCEPTION 2: Where it is not structurally or operationally feasible to meet the horizontal</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>gap or vertical difference requirements, mini-high platforms, car-borne or platform mounted lifts, ramps or bridge plates, or similar manually deployed devices, meeting the applicable requirements of 36 C.F.R. part 1192, or 49 C.F.R. part 38, shall suffice.</p> <p>(5) New direct connections to commercial, retail, or residential facilities shall, to the maximum extent feasible, have an accessible route complying with 4.3 from the point of connection to boarding platforms and all transportation system elements used by the public. Any elements provided to facilitate future direct connections shall be on an accessible route connecting boarding platforms and all transportation system elements used by the public.</p>	
218.4 Bus Shelters. Where provided, bus shelters shall comply with 810.3.	See 10.2.1(2)	IBC E108.1 General. Bus stops shall comply with Sections E108.2 through E108.5.
	10.4. Airports.	IBC SECTION E110 AIRPORTS
		IBC E110.1 New construction. New construction of airports shall comply with Sections E110.2 through E110.4.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>218.5 Other Transportation Facilities. In other transportation facilities, public address systems shall comply with 810.7 and clocks shall comply with 810.8.</p>	<p>10.4.1(6) Terminal information systems which broadcast information to the general public through a public address system shall provide a means to provide the same or equivalent information to persons with a hearing loss or who are deaf. Such methods may include, but are not limited to, visual paging systems using video monitors and computer technology. For persons with certain types of hearing loss such methods may include, but are not limited to, an assistive listening system complying with 4.33.7.</p> <p>10.4.1(7) Where clocks are provided for use by the general public the clock face shall be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals, and/or digits shall contrast with their background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are mounted overhead, numerals and/or digits shall comply with 4.30.3. Clocks shall be placed in uniform locations throughout the facility to the maximum extent practicable.</p>	<p>IBC E110.3 Terminal information systems. Where terminal information systems convey audible information to the public, the same or equivalent information shall be provided in a visual format.</p> <p>IBC E110.4 Clocks. Where clocks are provided for use by the general public, the clock face shall be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals and digits shall contrast with their background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are mounted overhead, numerals and digits shall comply with ICC A117.1, Section 703.4.</p>
		<p>IBC E107.4 Other signs. Signage indicating special accessibility provisions shall be provided as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. At bus stops and terminals, signage must be provided in accordance with Section E108.4. 2. At fixed facilities and stations, signage must be provided in accordance with Sections E109.2.2 through E109.2.2.3. 3. At airports, terminal information systems

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		must be provided in accordance with Section E110.3.
219 Assistive Listening Systems	4.1.3(19) Assembly Areas:	
219.1 General. Assistive listening systems shall be provided in accordance with 219 and shall comply with 706.		
219.2 Required Systems. In each assembly area where audible communication is integral to the use of the space, an assistive listening system shall be provided.	(b) This paragraph applies to assembly areas where audible communications are integral to the use of the space (e.g., concert and lecture halls, playhouses and movie theaters, meeting rooms, etc.). Such assembly areas, if (1) they accommodate at least 50 persons, or if they have audio-amplification systems, and (2) they have fixed seating, shall have a permanently installed assistive listening system complying with 4.33. For other assembly areas, a permanently installed assistive listening system, or an adequate number of electrical outlets or other supplementary wiring necessary to support a portable assistive listening system shall be provided. The minimum number of receivers to be provided shall be equal to 4 percent of the total number of seats, but in no case less than two. Signage	IBC 1108.2.5 Assistive listening systems. Each assembly area where audible communications are integral to the use of the space shall have an assistive listening system.
EXCEPTION: Other than in courtrooms, assistive listening systems shall not be required where audio amplification is not provided.		Exception: Other than in courtrooms, an assistive listening system is not required where there is no audio amplification systems.
219.3 Receivers. Receivers complying with 706.2 shall be provided for assistive listening systems in each assembly area in accordance with Table 219.3. Twenty-five percent minimum of receivers provided, but no fewer than two, shall be hearing-aid compatible in accordance with 706.3.		IBC 1108.2.5.1 Receivers. Receivers shall be provided for assistive listening systems in accordance with Table 1108.2.7.1.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. Where a building contains more than one assembly area and the assembly areas required to provide assistive listening systems are under one management, the total number of required receivers shall be permitted to be calculated according to the total number of seats in the assembly areas in the building provided that all receivers are usable with all systems.</p>	<p>complying with applicable provisions of 4.30 shall be installed to notify patrons of the availability of a listening system.</p>	<p>Exception: Where a building contains more than one assembly area, the total number of required receivers shall be permitted to be calculated according to the total number of seats in the assembly areas in the building provided that all receivers are usable with all systems, and if assembly areas required to provide assistive listening are under one management.</p>
<p>2. Where all seats in an assembly area are served by an induction loop assistive listening system, the minimum number of receivers required by Table 219.3 to be hearing-aid compatible shall not be required to be provided.</p>		

New ADAAG ¹			DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³		
Table 219.3 Receivers for Assistive Listening Systems				IBC Table 1108.2.7.1 Receivers for Assistive Listening Systems		
Capacity of Seating in Assembly Area	Minimum Number of Required Receivers	Minimum Number of Required Receivers Required to be Hearing-aid Compatible		Capacity of Seating in Assembly Areas	Minimum Required Number of Receivers	Minimum Number of Receivers to be Hearing-aid Compatible
50 or less	2	2		50 or less	2	2
51 to 200	2, plus 1 per 25 seats over 50 seats ¹	2		51 to 200	2, plus 1 per 25 seats over 50 seats*	2
201 to 500	2, plus 1 per 25 seats over 50 seats ¹	1 per 4 receivers ¹		201 to 500	2, plus 1 per 25 seats over 50 seats*	1 per 4 receivers*
501 to 1000	20, plus 1 per 33 seats over 500 seats ¹	1 per 4 receivers ¹		501 to 1000	20, plus 1 per 33 seats over 500 seats*	1 per 4 receivers*
1001 to 2000	35, plus 1 per 50 seats over 1000 seats ¹	1 per 4 receivers ¹		1001 to 2000	35, plus 1 per 50 seats over 1000 seats*	1 per 4 receivers*
2001 and over	55, plus 1 per 100 seats over 2000 seats ¹	1 per 4 receivers ¹		2001 and over	55, plus 1 per 100 seats over 2000 seats*	1 per 4 receivers*
¹ or fraction thereof				* or fraction thereof		
220 Automatic Teller Machines and Fare Machines						

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>220.1 General. Where automatic teller machines or self-service fare vending, collection, or adjustment machines are provided, at least one of each type provided at each location shall comply with 707. Where bins are provided for envelopes, waste paper, or other purposes, at least one of each type shall comply with 811.</p>	<p>4.1.3(20) Where automated teller machines (ATMs) are provided, each ATM shall comply with the requirements of 4.34 except where two or more are provided at a location, then only one must comply. EXCEPTION: Drive-up-only automated teller machines are not required to comply with 4.27.2, 4.27.3 and 4.34.3.</p>	<p>IBC E105.6 Automatic teller machines and fare machines. Where automatic teller machines or self-service fare vending, collection or adjustment machines are provided, at least one machine of each type at each location where such machines are provided shall be accessible. Where bins are provided for envelopes, wastepaper or other purposes, at least one of each type shall be accessible.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>10.3.1(7) Automatic fare vending, collection and adjustment (e.g., add-fare) systems shall comply with 4.34.2, 4.34.3, 4.34.4, and 4.34.5. At each accessible entrance such devices shall be located on an accessible route. If self-service fare collection devices are provided for the use of the general public, at least one accessible device for entering, and at least one for exiting, unless one device serves both functions, shall be provided at each accessible point of entry or exit. Accessible fare collection devices shall have a minimum clear opening width of 32 inches; shall permit passage of a wheelchair; and, where provided, coin or card slots and controls necessary for operation shall comply with 4.27. Gates which must be pushed open by wheelchair or mobility aid users shall have a smooth continuous surface extending from 2 inches above the floor to 27 inches above the floor and shall comply with 4.13. Where the circulation path does not coincide with that used by the general public, accessible fare collection systems shall be located at or adjacent to the accessible point of entry or exit.</p>	<p>IBC E109.2.3 Fare machines. Self-service fare vending, collection and adjustment machines shall comply with ICC A117.1, Section 707. Where self-service fare vending, collection or adjustment machines are provided for the use of the general public, at least one accessible machine of each type provided shall be provided at each accessible point of entry and exit.</p>
		<p>IBC 1108.1 General. In addition to the other requirements of this chapter, the requirements of Sections 1108.2 through 1108.4 shall apply to specific occupancies.</p>
		<p>IBC 1108.2 Assembly area seating. Assembly areas with fixed seating shall comply with Sections 1108.2.1 through 1108.2.8. Dining areas shall comply with Section 1108.2.9.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		IBC 1108.2.1 Services. Services and facilities provided in areas not required to be accessible shall be provided on an accessible level and shall be accessible.
221 Assembly Areas	4.1.3(19) Assembly Areas:	
<p>221.1 General. Assembly areas shall provide wheelchair spaces, companion seats, and designated aisle seats complying with 221 and 802. In addition, lawn seating shall comply with 221.5.</p> <p>221.2 Wheelchair Spaces. Wheelchair spaces complying with 221.2 shall be provided in assembly areas with fixed seating.</p> <p>221.2.1 Number and Location. Wheelchair spaces shall be provided complying with 221.2.1.</p> <p>221.2.1.1 General Seating. Wheelchair spaces complying with 802.1 shall be provided in accordance with Table 221.2.1.1.</p>	<p>(a) In places of assembly with fixed seating accessible wheelchair locations shall comply with 4.33.2, 4.33.3, and 4.33.4 and shall be provided consistent with the following table:</p>	<p>IBC 1108.2.2 Wheelchair spaces. In theaters, bleachers, grandstands, stadiums, arenas and other fixed seating assembly areas, accessible wheelchair spaces complying with ICC A117.1 shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1108.2.21 through 1108.2.2.3.</p> <p>IBC 1108.2.2.1 General seating. Wheelchair spaces shall be provided in accordance with Table 1108.2.2.1</p>

New ADAAG ¹		DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²		International Building Code ³	
Table 221.2.1.1 Number of Wheelchair Spaces in Assembly Areas				IBC Table 1108.2.2.1 Accessible Wheelchair Spaces	
Number of Seats	Minimum Number or Required Wheelchair Spaces	Capacity of Seating in Assembly Area	Number of Required Wheelchair Locations	Capacity of Seating in Assembly Areas	Minimum Required Number or Wheelchair Spaces
4 to 25	1	4 to 25	1	4 to 25	1
26 to 50	2	26 to 50	2	26 to 50	2
51 to 150	4	51 to 300	4	51 to 150	4
151 to 300	5			151 to 300	5
301 to 500	6	301 to 500	6	301 to 500	6
501 to 5000	6, plus 1 for each 150, or fraction thereof, between 501 through 5000	over 500	6 plus 1 additional space for each total seating capacity increase of 100	501 to 5000	6, plus 1 for each 150, or fraction thereof, between 501 through 5000
5001 and over	36, plus 1 for each 200, or fraction thereof, over 5000			5001 and over	36, plus 1 for each 200, or fraction thereof, over 5000
221.2.1.2 Luxury Boxes, Club Boxes, and Suites in Arenas, Stadiums, and Grandstands. In each luxury box, club box, and suite within arenas, stadiums, and grandstands, wheelchair spaces complying with 802.1 shall be provided in accordance with Table 221.2.1.1.				IBC 1108.2.2.2 Luxury boxes, club boxes and suites. In each luxury box, club box, and suite within arenas, stadiums, and grandstands, wheelchair spaces shall be provided in accordance with Table 1108.2.2.1.	
				ANSI 802.10.3 Dispersion by Type. Where there are seating areas, each having distinct services or amenities, wheelchair space locations shall be provided within each seating area.	
221.2.1.3 Other Boxes. In boxes other than those required to comply with 221.2.1.2, the total number of wheelchair spaces required shall be determined in accordance with Table 221.2.1.1. Wheelchair spaces shall be located in not less than 20 percent of all boxes				IBC 1108.2.2.3 Other boxes. In boxes other than those required to comply with Section 1108.2.2.2, the total number of wheelchair spaces provided shall be determined in accordance with Table 1108.2.2.1. Wheelchair spaces shall be located in not less than 20	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
provided. Wheelchair spaces shall comply with 802.1.		percent of all boxes provided.
		<p>IBC 1108.2.3 Dispersion of wheelchair spaces in multilevel assembly seating areas. In multilevel assembly seating areas, wheelchair spaces shall be provided on the main floor level and on one of each two additional floor or mezzanine levels. Wheelchair spaces shall be provided in each luxury box, club box and suite within assembly facilities.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <p>1. In multilevel assembly spaces utilized for worship services, where the second floor or mezzanine level contains 25 percent or less of the total seating capacity, wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to all be located on the main level.</p> <p>2. In multilevel assembly seating where the second floor or mezzanine level provides 25 percent or less of the total seating capacity and 300 or fewer seats, wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to all be located on the main level.</p>
<p>221.2.1.4 Team or Player Seating. At least one wheelchair space complying with 802.1 shall be provided in team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Wheelchair spaces shall not be required in team or player seating areas serving bowling lanes not required to comply with 206.2.11.</p>	See Appendix 4.1.3(19)	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³										
<p>221.2.2 Integration. Wheelchair spaces shall be an integral part of the seating plan.</p> <p>221.2.3 Lines of Sight and Dispersion. Wheelchair spaces shall provide lines of sight complying with 802.2 and shall comply with 221.2.3. In providing lines of sight, wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed. Wheelchair spaces shall provide spectators with choices of seating locations and viewing angles that are substantially equivalent to, or better than, the choices of seating locations and viewing angles available to all other spectators. When the number of wheelchair spaces required by 221.2.1 has been met, further dispersion shall not be required.</p>	<p>4.33.3 Placement of Wheelchair Locations. Wheelchair areas shall be an integral part of any fixed seating plan and shall be provided so as to provide people with physical disabilities a choice of admission prices and lines of sight comparable to those for members of the general public. They shall adjoin an accessible route that also serves as a means of egress in case of emergency. At least one companion fixed seat shall be provided next to each wheelchair seating area. When the seating capacity exceeds 300, wheelchair spaces shall be provided in more than one location. Readily removable seats may be installed in wheelchair spaces when the spaces are not required to accommodate wheelchair users.</p> <p>4.1.6(3)(f) Assembly Areas: (i) Where it is technically infeasible to disperse accessible seating throughout an altered assembly area, accessible seating areas may be clustered. Each accessible seating area shall have provisions for companion seating and shall be located on an accessible route that also serves as a means of emergency egress</p>	<p>ANSI 802.6 Integration of Wheelchair Space</p> <p>Locations. Wheelchair space locations shall be an integral part of any seating area.</p> <p>ANSI 802.10 Wheelchair Space Dispersion. Wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed to the minimum number of locations in accordance with Table 802.10. Wheelchair space locations shall be dispersed in accordance with Sections 802.10.1, 802.10.2 and 802.10.3. In addition, in spaces utilized primarily for viewing motion picture projection, wheelchair space locations shall be dispersed in accordance with Section 802.10.4. Once the required number of wheelchair space locations has been met, further dispersion is not required.</p>										
		<p>ANSI Table 802.10 Wheelchair Space Dispersion</p> <table><tr><th>Total seating in Assembly Areas</th><th>Minimum required number of wheelchair spaces</th></tr><tr><td>Up to 150</td><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>151 to 500</td><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>501 to 1000</td><td>3</td></tr><tr><td>1001 to 5,000</td><td>3, plus 1 additional space for each 1,000 seats or portions thereof above 1,000</td></tr></table>	Total seating in Assembly Areas	Minimum required number of wheelchair spaces	Up to 150	1	151 to 500	2	501 to 1000	3	1001 to 5,000	3, plus 1 additional space for each 1,000 seats or portions thereof above 1,000
Total seating in Assembly Areas	Minimum required number of wheelchair spaces											
Up to 150	1											
151 to 500	2											
501 to 1000	3											
1001 to 5,000	3, plus 1 additional space for each 1,000 seats or portions thereof above 1,000											

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³	
		5,001 and over	7, plus 1 additional space for each 2,000 seats or portions thereof above 5,000
EXCEPTION: Wheelchair spaces in team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with 221.2.3.	See Appendix 4.1.3(19)(c)		
<p>221.2.3.1 Horizontal Dispersion. Wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed horizontally.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. Horizontal dispersion shall not be required in assembly areas with 300 or fewer seats if the companion seats required by 221.3 and wheelchair spaces are located within the 2nd or 3rd quartile of the total row length. Intermediate aisles shall be included in determining the total row length. If the row length in the 2nd and 3rd quartile of a row is insufficient to accommodate the required number of companion seats and wheelchair spaces, the additional companion seats and wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be located in the 1st and 4th quartile of the row.</p> <p>2. In row seating, two wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be located side-by-side.</p>		<p>ANSI 802.10.1 Horizontal Dispersion. Wheelchair space locations shall be dispersed horizontally to provide viewing options. Locations shall be separated by a minimum of 10 intervening seats. Two wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be located side-by-side.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In venues where wheelchair space locations are provided on only one side or on two opposite sides of the performance area or playing field, horizontal dispersion is not required where the locations are within the 2nd or 3rd quartile of the total row length. The wheelchair space locations and companion seats shall be permitted to overlap into the 1st and 4th quartile of the total row length if the 2nd and 3rd quartile of the row length does not provide the required length for the wheelchair space locations and companion seats. All intermediate aisles shall be included in determining the total row length.</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>221.2.3.2 Vertical Dispersion. Wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed vertically at varying distances from the screen, performance area, or playing field. In addition, wheelchair spaces shall be located in each balcony or mezzanine that is located on an accessible route.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Vertical dispersion shall not be required in assembly areas with 300 or fewer seats if the wheelchair spaces provide viewing angles that are equivalent to, or better than, the average viewing angle provided in the facility. 2. In bleachers, wheelchair spaces shall not be required to be provided in rows other than rows at points of entry to bleacher seating. 	<p>4.33.3 Placement of Wheelchair Locations.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Accessible viewing positions may be clustered for bleachers, balconies, and other areas having sight lines that require slopes of greater than 5 percent. Equivalent accessible viewing positions may be located on levels having accessible egress.</p>	<p>ANSI 802.10.2 Dispersion for Variety of Distances from the Event. Wheelchair space locations shall be dispersed at a variety of distances from the event to provide viewing options. Locations shall be separated by a minimum of five intervening rows.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In bleachers, wheelchair space locations shall not be required to be provided in rows other than rows at points of entry to bleacher seating. 2. In spaces utilized for viewing motion picture projections, assembly spaces with 300 seats or less shall not be required to comply with Section 802.10.2. 3. In spaces other than those utilized for viewing motion picture projections, assembly spaces with 300 seats or less shall not be required to comply with Section 802.10.2 if the wheelchair space locations are within the front 50 percent of the total rows. <p>ANSI 802.10.4 Spaces Utilized Primarily for Viewing Motion Picture Projections. In spaces utilized primarily for viewing motion picture projections, wheelchair space locations shall comply with Section 802.10.4.</p> <p>ANSI 802.10.4.1 Spaces with Seating on Risers. Where tiered seating is provided, wheelchair space locations shall be integrated into the tiered seating area.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		ANSI 802.10.4.2 Distance from the Screen. Wheelchair space locations shall be located within the rear 70 percent of the seats provided.
221.3 Companion Seats. At least one companion seat complying with 802.3 shall be provided for each wheelchair space required by 221.2.1.	4.33.3 Placement of Wheelchair Locations. Wheelchair areas shall be an integral part of any fixed seating plan and shall be provided so as to provide people with physical disabilities a choice of admission prices and lines of sight comparable to those for members of the general public. They shall adjoin an accessible route that also serves as a means of egress in case of emergency. At least one companion fixed seat shall be provided next to each wheelchair seating area. When the seating capacity exceeds 300, wheelchair spaces shall be provided in more than one location. Readily removable seats may be installed in wheelchair spaces when the spaces are not required to accommodate wheelchair users.	
221.4 Designated Aisle Seats. At least 5 percent of the total number of aisle seats provided shall comply with 802.4 and shall be the aisle seats located closest to accessible routes.	4.1.3(19)(a) In addition, one percent, but not less than one, of all fixed seats shall be aisle seats with no armrests on the aisle side, or removable or folding armrests on the aisle side. Each such seat shall be identified by a sign or marker. Signage notifying patrons of the availability of such seats shall be posted at the ticket office. Aisle seats are not required to comply with 4.33.4.	IBC 1108.2.4 Designated aisle seats. At least five percent, but not less than one, of the total number of aisle seats provided shall be designated aisle seats.
EXCEPTION: Team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with 221.4.	See Appendix 4.1.3(5) Exception 4(f)	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
221.5 Lawn Seating. Lawn seating areas and exterior overflow seating areas, where fixed seats are not provided, shall connect to an accessible route.		
		IBC 1108.2.7.2 Public address systems. Where stadiums, arenas and grandstands provide audible public announcements, they shall also provide equivalent text information regarding events and facilities in compliance with Sections 1108.2.7.2.1 and 1108.2.7.2.2.
		IBC 1108.2.7.2.1 Pre-recorded text messages. Where electronic signs are provided and have the capability to display prerecorded text messages containing information that is the same, or substantially equivalent, to information that is provided audibly, signs shall display text that is equivalent to audible announcements. Exception: Announcements that cannot be prerecorded in advance of the event shall not be required to be displayed.
		IBC 1108.2.7.2.2 Real-time messages. Where electronic signs are provided and have the capability to display real-time messages containing information that is the same, or substantially equivalent, to information that is provided audibly, signs shall display text that is equivalent to audible announcements.
		IBC 1109.12 Service facilities. Service facilities shall provide for accessible features in

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		accordance with Sections 1109.12.1 through 1109.12.5.
222 Dressing, Fitting, and Locker Rooms 222.1 General. Where dressing rooms, fitting rooms, or locker rooms are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type of use in each cluster provided shall comply with 803.	4.1.3(21) Where dressing and fitting rooms are provided for use by the general public, patients, customers or employees, 5 percent, but never less than one, of dressing rooms for each type of use in each cluster of dressing rooms shall be accessible and shall comply with 4.35. See also Appendix 4.1.3(21)	IBC 1109.12.1 Dressing, fitting and locker rooms. Where dressing rooms, fitting rooms or locker rooms are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of each type of use in each cluster provided shall be accessible.
EXCEPTION: In alterations, where it is technically infeasible to provide rooms in accordance with 222.1, one room for each sex on each level shall comply with 803. Where only unisex rooms are provided, unisex rooms shall be permitted.	4.1.6(3)(h) Dressing Rooms: In alterations where technical infeasibility can be demonstrated, one dressing room for each sex on each level shall be made accessible. Where only unisex dressing rooms are provided, accessible unisex dressing rooms may be used to fulfill this requirement.	IBC 3409.7.10 Dressing, fitting and locker rooms. Where it is technically infeasible to provide accessible dressing, fitting or locker rooms at the same location as similar types of rooms, one accessible room on the same level shall be provided. Where separate-sex facilities are provided, accessible rooms for each sex shall be provided. Separate-sex facilities are not required where only unisex rooms are provided.
222.2 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in dressing, fitting or locker rooms without individual compartments, at least one of each type shall comply with 803.5. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in individual compartments at least one of each type complying with 803.5 shall be provided in		IBC 1109.8.3 Coat hooks and folding shelves. Where coat hooks and shelves are provided in toilet rooms, toilet compartments, or in dressing, fitting or locker rooms, at least one of each type shall be accessible and shall be provided in accessible toilet rooms without toilet compartments, accessible toilet compartments, and accessible dressing, fitting

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
individual compartments in dressing, fitting, or locker rooms required to comply with 222.1.		and locker rooms.
		IBC 1107.1 General. In addition to the other requirements of this chapter, occupancies having dwelling units or sleeping units shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with this section.
		IBC 1107.2 Design. Dwelling units and sleeping units which are required to be Accessible units shall comply with this code and the applicable portions of Chapters 1 through 9 of ICC A117.1. Type A and Type B units shall comply with the applicable portions of Chapter 10 of ICC A117.1. Units required to be Type A units are permitted to be designed and constructed as Accessible units. Units required to be Type B units are permitted to be designed and constructed as Accessible units or as Type A units.
		IBC 1107.3 Accessible spaces. Rooms and spaces available to the general public or available for use by residents and serving Accessible units, Type A units or Type B units shall be accessible. Accessible spaces shall include toilet and bathing rooms, kitchen, living and dining areas and any exterior spaces, including patios, terraces and balconies. Exception: Recreational facilities in accordance with Section 1109.14.
		IBC 1107.4 Accessible route. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>building or facility entrances with the primary entrance of each Accessible unit, Type A unit and Type B unit within the building or facility and with those exterior and interior spaces and facilities that serve the units.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <p>1. If the slope of the finished ground level between accessible facilities and buildings exceeds one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1:12), or where physical barriers prevent the installation of an accessible route, a vehicular route with parking that complies with Section 1106 at each public or common use facility or building is permitted in place of the accessible route.</p> <p>2. Exterior decks, patios or balconies that are part of Type B units and have impervious surfaces, and that are not more than 4 inches (102 mm) below the finished floor level of the adjacent interior space of the unit.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.5 Group I. Occupancies in Group I shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.5.1 through 1107.5.5.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.5.1 Group I-1. Group I-1 occupancies shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.5.1.1 and 1107.5.1.2.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.5.1.1 Accessible units. At least 4 percent, but not less than one, of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be Accessible</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		units.
		<p>IBC 1107.5.1.2 Type B units. In structures with four or more dwelling or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.</p> <p>Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.</p>
223 Medical Care and Long-Term Care Facilities	6. MEDICAL CARE FACILITIES	
<p>223.1 General. In licensed medical care facilities and licensed long-term care facilities where the period of stay exceeds twenty-four hours, patient or resident sleeping rooms shall be provided in accordance with 223.</p>	<p>6.1 General. Medical care facilities included in this section are those in which people receive physical or medical treatment or care and where persons may need assistance in responding to an emergency and where the period of stay may exceed 24 hours. In addition to the requirements of 4.1 through 4.35, medical care facilities and buildings shall comply with 6.</p>	
<p>EXCEPTION: Toilet rooms that are part of critical or intensive care patient sleeping rooms shall not be required to comply with 603.</p>		<p>IBC 1109.2, exception 5. Toilet rooms that are a part of critical care or intensive care sleeping rooms are not required to be accessible.</p>
<p>223.1.1 Alterations. Where sleeping rooms are altered or added, the requirements of 223 shall apply only to the sleeping rooms being altered or added until the number of sleeping rooms complies with the minimum number required for new construction.</p>	<p>6.1(4) Alterations to patient bedrooms.</p> <p>(a) When patient bedrooms are being added or altered as part of a planned renovation of an entire wing, a department, or other discrete area of an existing medical facility, a</p>	<p>IBC 3409.7.7 Dwelling or sleeping units. Where I-1, I-2, I-3, R-1, R-2 or R-4 dwelling or sleeping units are being altered or added, the requirements of Section 1107 for accessible or Type A units and Chapter 9 for accessible alarms apply only to the quantity of spaces</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>percentage of the patient bedrooms that are being added or altered shall comply with 6.3. The percentage of accessible rooms provided shall be consistent with the percentage of rooms required to be accessible by the applicable requirements of 6.1(1), 6.1(2), or 6.1(3), until the number of accessible patient bedrooms in the facility equals the overall number that would be required if the facility were newly constructed. (For example, if 20 patient bedrooms are being altered in the obstetrics department of a hospital, 2 of the altered rooms must be made accessible. If, within the same hospital, 20 patient bedrooms are being altered in a unit that specializes in treating mobility impairments, all of the altered rooms must be made accessible.) Where toilet/bathrooms are part of patient bedrooms which are added or altered and required to be accessible, each such patient toilet/bathroom shall comply with 6.4.</p> <p>(b) When patient bedrooms are being added or altered individually, and not as part of an alteration of the entire area, the altered patient bedrooms shall comply with 6.3, unless either: a) the number of accessible rooms provided in the department or area containing the altered patient bedroom equals the number of accessible patient bedrooms that would be required if the percentage requirements of 6.1(1), 6.1(2), or 6.1(3) were applied to that department or area; or b) the number of accessible patient bedrooms in the facility equals the overall number that would be required if the facility were newly constructed.</p>	<p>being altered or added.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	Where toilet/bathrooms are part of patient bedrooms which are added or altered and required to be accessible, each such toilet/bathroom shall comply with 6.4.	
223.2 Hospitals, Rehabilitation Facilities, Psychiatric Facilities and Detoxification Facilities. Hospitals, rehabilitation facilities, psychiatric facilities and detoxification facilities shall comply with 223.2.		IBC 1107.5.3 Group I-2 Hospitals. In general-purpose hospitals, psychiatric facilities, detoxification facilities and residential care/assisted living facilities of Group I-2 shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.5.3.1 and 1107.5.3.2.
223.2.1 Facilities Not Specializing in Treating Conditions That Affect Mobility. In facilities not specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility, at least 10 percent, but no fewer than one, of the patient sleeping rooms shall provide mobility features complying with 805.	6.1(1) Hospitals - general purpose hospitals, psychiatric facilities, detoxification facilities - At least 10 percent of patient bedrooms and toilets, and all public use and common use areas are required to be designed and constructed to be accessible.	IBC 1107.5.3.1 Accessible units. At least 10 percent, but not less than one, of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be Accessible units.
		IBC 1107.5.3.2 Type B units. In structures with four or more dwelling or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit. Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.
223.2.2 Facilities Specializing in Treating Conditions That Affect Mobility. In facilities specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility, 100 percent of the patient sleeping	6.1(2) Hospitals and rehabilitation facilities that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility, or units within either that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility - All	IBC 1107.5.4 Group I-2 Rehabilitation facilities. In hospitals and rehabilitation facilities of Group I-2 which specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility, or units

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
rooms shall provide mobility features complying with 805.	patient bedrooms and toilets, and all public use and common use areas are required to be designed and constructed to be accessible.	within either which specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility, 100 percent of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be Accessible units.
223.3 Long-Term Care Facilities. In licensed long-term care facilities, at least 50 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type of resident sleeping room shall provide mobility features complying with 805.	6.1(3) Long term care facilities, nursing homes - At least 50 percent of patient bedrooms and toilets, and all public use and common use areas are required to be designed and constructed to be accessible.	IBC 1107.5.2 Group I-2 Nursing homes. Nursing homes of Group I-2 shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.5.2.1 and 1107.5.2.2.
		IBC 1107.5.2.1 Accessible units. At least 50 percent, but not less than one, of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be Accessible units.
		IBC 1107.5.2.2 Type B units. In structures with four or more dwelling or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit. Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.
		IBC 1107.6 Group R. Occupancies in Group R shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.6.1 through 1107.6.4.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
224 Transient Lodging Guest Rooms	<p>9. ACCESSIBLE TRANSIENT LODGING.</p> <p>(1) Except as specified in the special technical provisions of this section, accessible transient lodging shall comply with the applicable requirements of section 4. Transient lodging includes facilities or portions thereof used for sleeping accommodations, when not classed as a medical care facility.</p>	
224.1 General. Transient lodging facilities shall provide guest rooms in accordance with 224.	<p>9.1 Hotels, Motels, Inns, Boarding Houses, Dormitories, Resorts and Other Similar Places of Transient Lodging.</p>	IBC 1107.6.1 Group R-1. Group R-1 occupancies shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.6.1.1 and 1107.6.1.2.
	<p>9.1.1 General. All public use and common use areas are required to be designed and constructed to comply with section 4 (Accessible Elements and Spaces: Scope and Technical Requirements).</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Sections 9.1 through 9.4 do not apply to an establishment located within a building that contains not more than five rooms for rent or hire and that is actually occupied by the proprietor of such establishment as the residence of such proprietor.</p>	
	<p>9.5 Transient Lodging in Homeless Shelters, Halfway Houses, Transient Group Homes, and Other Social Service Establishments.</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>9.5.1 New Construction. In new construction all public use and common use areas are required to be designed and constructed to comply with section 4. At least one of each type of amenity (such as washers, dryers and similar equipment installed for the use of occupants) in each common area shall be accessible and shall be located on an accessible route to any accessible unit or sleeping accommodation.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where elevators are not provided as allowed in 4.1.3(5), accessible amenities are not required on inaccessible floors as long as one of each type is provided in common areas on accessible floors.</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>224.1.1 Alterations. Where guest rooms are altered or added, the requirements of 224 shall apply only to the guest rooms being altered or added until the number of guest rooms complies with the minimum number required for new construction.</p>	<p>9.1.5. Alterations to Accessible Units, Sleeping Rooms, and Suites. When sleeping rooms are being altered in an existing facility, or portion thereof, subject to the requirements of this section, at least one sleeping room or suite that complies with the requirements of 9.2 (Requirements for Accessible Units, Sleeping Rooms, and Suites) shall be provided for each 25 sleeping rooms, or fraction thereof, of rooms being altered until the number of such rooms provided equals the number required to be accessible with 9.1.2. In addition, at least one sleeping room or suite that complies with the requirements of 9.3 (Visual Alarms, Notification Devices, and Telephones) shall be provided for each 25 sleeping rooms, or fraction thereof, of rooms being altered until the number of such rooms equals the number required to be accessible by 9.1.3.</p>	<p>See 3409.7.7</p>
	<p>9.5.2 Alterations.</p> <p>(1) Social service establishments which are not homeless shelters:</p> <p>(a) The provisions of 9.5.3 and 9.1.5 shall apply to sleeping rooms and beds.</p> <p>(b) Alteration of other areas shall be consistent with the new construction provisions of 9.5.1.</p>	
	<p>(2) Homeless shelters. If the following elements are altered, the following requirements apply:</p> <p>(a) at least one public entrance shall allow a</p>	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>person with mobility impairments to approach, enter and exit including a minimum clear door width of 32 in (815 mm).</p> <p>(b) sleeping space for homeless persons as provided in the scoping provisions of 9.1.2 shall include doors to the sleeping area with a minimum clear width of 32 in (815 mm) and maneuvering space around the beds for persons with mobility impairments complying with 9.2.2(1).</p> <p>(c) at least one toilet room for each gender or one unisex toilet room shall have a minimum clear door width of 32 in (815 mm), minimum turning space complying with 4.2.3, one water closet complying with 4.16, one lavatory complying with 4.19 and the door shall have a privacy latch; and, if provided, at least one tub or shower shall comply with 4.20 or 4.21, respectively.</p> <p>(d) at least one common area which a person with mobility impairments can approach, enter and exit including a minimum clear door width of 32 in (815 mm).</p> <p>(e) at least one route connecting elements (a), (b), (c) and (d) which a person with mobility impairments can use including minimum clear width of 36 in (915 mm), passing space complying with 4.3.4, turning space complying with 4.2.3 and changes in levels complying with 4.3.8.</p> <p>(f) homeless shelters can comply with the provisions of (a)- (e) by providing the above elements on one accessible floor</p>	
<p>224.1.2 Guest Room Doors and Doorways. Entrances, doors, and doorways providing user passage into and within guest rooms that</p>	<p>9.4 Other Sleeping Rooms and Suites. Doors and doorways designed to allow passage into and within all sleeping units or</p>	<p>1008.1.1 Size of doors. The minimum width of each door opening shall be sufficient for the occupant load thereof and shall provide a clear</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
are not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall comply with 404.2.3.	other covered units shall comply with 4.13.5.	opening width of not less than 32 inches (813 mm). . . .
EXCEPTION: Shower and sauna doors in guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall not be required to comply with 404.2.3.		
224.2 Guest Rooms with Mobility Features. In transient lodging facilities, guest rooms with mobility features complying with 806.2 shall be provided in accordance with Table 224.2.	9.1.2 Accessible Units, Sleeping Rooms, and Suites. Accessible sleeping rooms or suites that comply with the requirements of 9.2 (Requirements for Accessible Units, Sleeping Rooms, and Suites) shall be provided in conformance with the table below. In addition, in hotels, of 50 or more sleeping rooms or suites, additional accessible sleeping rooms or suites that include a roll-in shower shall also be provided in conformance with the table below. Such accommodations shall comply with the requirements of 9.2, 4.21, and Figure 57(a) or (b).	IBC 1107.6.1.1 Accessible units. In occupancies in Group R-1, Accessible dwelling units and sleeping units shall be provided in accordance with Table 1107.6.1.1. All facilities on a site shall be considered to determine the total number of Accessible units. Accessible units shall be dispersed among the various classes of units. Roll-in showers provided in Accessible units shall include a permanently mounted folding shower seat.

New ADAAG ¹				DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²			International Building Code ³		
Table 224.2 Guest Rooms with Mobility Features							IBC Table 1107.6.1.1 Accessible Dwelling and Sleeping Units		
Total Number of Guest Rooms Provided	Minimum Number of Required Rooms Without Roll-in Showers	Minimum Number of Required Rooms With Roll-in Showers	Total Number of Required Rooms	Number of Rooms	Accessible Rooms	Rooms with Roll-in Showers	Total Number of Units Provided	Minimum Required Number of Accessible Units Associated with Roll-in Showers	Total Number of Required Accessible Units
1 to 25	1	0	1	1 to 25	1		1 to 25	0	1
26 to 50	2	0	2	26 to 50	2		26 to 50	0	2
51 to 75	3	1	4	51 to 75	3	1	51 to 75	1	4
76 to 100	4	1	5	76 to 100	4	1	76 to 100	1	5
101 to 150	5	2	7	101 to 150	5	2	101 to 150	2	7
151 to 200	6	2	8	151 to 200	6	2	151 to 200	2	8
201 to 300	7	3	10	201 to 300	7	3	201 to 300	3	10
301 to 400	8	4	12	301 to 400	8	4	301 to 400	4	12
401 to 500	9	4	13	401 to 500	9	4 plus 1 for each additional 100 over 400	401 to 500	4	13
501 to 1000	2 percent of total	1 percent of total	3 percent of total	501 to 1000	2% of total		501 to 1000	1% of total	3% of total
1001 and over	20, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000	10, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000	30, plus 2 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000	1001 and over	20 plus 1 for each 100 over 1000		Over 1,000	10, plus 1 for each 100 over 1000	30, plus 2 for each 100 over 1000

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>IBC E104.1 General. Transient lodging facilities shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections E104.2 and E104.3. Group I-3 occupancies shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections E104.3 and E104.4.</p>
<p>224.3 Beds. In guest rooms having more than 25 beds, 5 percent minimum of the beds shall have clear floor space complying with 806.2.3.</p>	<p>9.5.3. Accessible Sleeping Accommodations in New Construction. Accessible sleeping rooms shall be provided in conformance with the table in 9.1.2 and shall comply with 9.2 Accessible Units, Sleeping Rooms and Suites (where the items are provided). Additional sleeping rooms that comply with 9.3 Sleeping Accommodations for Persons with Hearing Impairments shall be provided in conformance with the table provided in 9.1.3.</p> <p>In facilities with multi-bed rooms or spaces, a percentage of the beds equal to the table provided in 9.1.2 shall comply with 9.2.2(1).</p>	<p>IBC E104.2 Accessible beds. In rooms or spaces having more than 25 beds, five percent of the beds shall have a clear floor space complying with ICC A117.1.</p> <p>IBC E104.2.1 Sleeping areas. A clear floor space complying with ICC A117.1 shall be provided on both sides of the accessible bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed. Exception: This requirement shall not apply where a single clear floor space complying with ICC A117.1 positioned for parallel approach is provided between two beds.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>224.4 Guest Rooms with Communication Features. In transient lodging facilities, guest rooms with communication features complying with 806.3 shall be provided in accordance with Table 224.4.</p>	<p>9.2.2(8) Sleeping room accommodations for persons with hearing impairments required by 9.1 and complying with 9.3 shall be provided in the accessible sleeping room or suite.</p> <p>9.1.3 Sleeping Accommodations for Persons with Hearing Impairments. In addition to those accessible sleeping rooms and suites required by 9.1.2, sleeping rooms and suites that comply with 9.3 (Visual Alarms, Notification Devices, and Telephones) shall be provided in conformance with the following table:</p>	<p>See 907.9.1.3</p>

New ADAAG ¹		DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²		International Building Code ³	
Table 224.4 Guest Rooms with Communication Features				Table 907.9.1.3 Visible and Audible Alarms	
Total Number of Guest Rooms Provided	Minimum Number of Required Guest Rooms with Communication Features	Number of Elements	Accessible Elements	Number of Sleeping Accommodations	Sleeping Accommodations with Visible and Audible Alarms
6 to 25	2	1 to 25	1	6 to 25	2
26 to 50	4	26 to 50	2	26 to 50	4
51 to 75	7	51 to 75	3	51 to 75	7
76 to 100	9	76 to 100	4	76 to 100	9
101 to 150	12	101 to 150	5	101 to 150	12
151 to 200	14	151 to 200	6	151 to 200	14
201 to 300	17	201 to 300	7	201 to 300	17
301 to 400	20	301 to 400	8	301 to 400	20
401 to 500	22	401 to 500	9	401 to 500	22
501 to 1000	5 percent of total	501 to 1000	2% of total	501 to 1000	5% of total
1001 and over	50, plus 3 for each 100 over 1000	1001 and over	20 plus 1 for each 100 over 1000	1001 and over	50 plus 3 for each 100 over 1000
				IBC E104.3 Communication features. Communication features complying with ICC A117.1 shall be provided in accordance with Sections E104.3.1 through E104.3.4.	
				IBC E104.3.1 Transient lodging. In transient lodging facilities, sleeping units with accessible communication features shall be provided in accordance with Table E104.3.1. Units required to comply with Table E104.3.1 shall be dispersed among the various classes of units.	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³	
		Table E104.3.1 Dwelling or Sleeping Units with Accessible Communication Features	
		Total Number of Dwelling or Sleeping Units Provided	Minimum Required Number of Dwelling or Sleeping Units with Accessible Communication Features
		1	1
		2 to 25	2
		26 to 50	4
		51 to 75	7
		76 to 100	9
		101 to 150	12
		151 to 200	14
		201 to 300	17
		301 to 400	20
		401 to 500	22
		501 to 1000	5% of total
		1001 and over	50 plus 3 for each 100 over 1000
		IBC E104.3.3 Dwelling units and sleeping units. Where dwelling units and sleeping units are altered or added, the requirements of Section E104.3 shall apply only to the units being altered or added until the number of units with accessible communication features complies with the minimum number required for new construction.	
		IBC E104.3.4 Notification devices. Visual notification devices shall be provided to alert room occupants of incoming telephone calls and a door knock or bell. Notification devices shall not be connected to visual alarm signal	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		appliances. Permanently installed telephones shall have volume controls and an electrical outlet complying with ICC A117.1 located within 48 inches (1219 mm) of the telephone to facilitate the use of a TTY.
<p>224.5 Dispersion. Guest rooms required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 and guest rooms required to provide communication features complying with 806.3 shall be dispersed among the various classes of guest rooms, and shall provide choices of types of guest rooms, number of beds, and other amenities comparable to the choices provided to other guests. Where the minimum number of guest rooms required to comply with 806 is not sufficient to allow for complete dispersion, guest rooms shall be dispersed in the following priority: guest room type, number of beds, and amenities. At least one guest room required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall also provide communication features complying with 806.3. Not more than 10 percent of guest rooms required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall be used to satisfy the minimum number of guest rooms required to provide communication features complying with 806.3.</p>	<p>9.1.4 Classes of Sleeping Accommodations.</p> <p>(1) In order to provide persons with disabilities a range of options equivalent to those available to other persons served by the facility, sleeping rooms and suites required to be accessible by 9.1.2 shall be dispersed among the various classes of sleeping accommodations available to patrons of the place of transient lodging. Factors to be considered include room size, cost, amenities provided, and the number of beds provided.</p> <p>(2) Equivalent Facilitation. For purposes of this section, it shall be deemed equivalent facilitation if the operator of a facility elects to limit construction of accessible rooms to those intended for multiple occupancy, provided that such rooms are made available at the cost of a single occupancy room to an individual with disabilities who requests a single-occupancy room.</p>	
		<p>IBC 1107.6.1.2 Type B units. In structures with four or more dwelling or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.
225 Storage		
225.1 General. Storage facilities shall comply with 225.		
225.2 Storage. Where storage is provided in accessible spaces, at least one of each type shall comply with 811.	4.1.3(12) Storage, Shelving and Display Units: (a) If fixed or built-in storage facilities such as cabinets, shelves, closets, and drawers are provided in accessible spaces, at least one of each type provided shall contain storage space complying with 4.25. Additional storage may be provided outside of the dimensions required by 4.25.	IBC 1109.8 Storage. Where fixed or built-in storage elements such as cabinets, shelves, medicine cabinets, closets and drawers are provided in required accessible spaces, at least one of each type shall contain storage space complying with ICC A117.1.
225.2.1 Lockers. Where lockers are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one of each type, shall comply with 811.	See Appendix 4.1.3(12)	IBC 1109.8.1 Lockers. Where lockers are provided in accessible spaces, at least five percent, but not less than one, of each type shall be accessible.

New ADAAG ¹		DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³	
225.2.2 Self-Service Shelving. Self-service shelves shall be located on an accessible route complying with 402. Self-service shelving shall not be required to comply with 308.		<p>4.1.3(12)(b) Shelves or display units allowing self-service by customers in mercantile occupancies shall be located on an accessible route complying with 4.3. Requirements for accessible reach range do not apply.</p> <p>8.5 Stacks. Minimum clear aisle width between stacks shall comply with 4.3, with a minimum clear aisle width of 42 in (1065 mm) preferred where possible. Shelf height in stack areas is unrestricted (see Fig. 56).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 56 indicates the minimum width between fixed stacks is 36 inches (915 mm).</p>	IBC 1109.8.2 Shelving and display units. Self-service shelves and display units shall be located on an accessible route. Such shelving and display units shall not be required to comply with reach-range provisions.	
225.3 Self-Service Storage Facilities. Self-service storage facilities shall provide individual self-service storage spaces complying with these requirements in accordance with Table 225.3.			IBC 1108.3 Self-service storage facilities. Self-service storage facilities shall provide accessible individual self-storage spaces in accordance with Table 1108.3.	
Table 225.3 Self-Service Storage Facilities			IBC Table 1108.3 Accessible Self-Service Storage Facilities	
Total Spaces in Facility	Minimum Number of Spaces Required to be Accessible		Total Spaces in Facility	Minimum Number of Required Accessible Spaces
1 to 200	5 percent		1 to 200	5% but not less than 1
201 and over	10, plus 2 percent of total number of units over 200		Over 200	10, plus 2% of total number of units over 200
225.3.1 Dispersion. Individual self-service storage spaces shall be dispersed throughout the various classes of spaces provided. Where more classes of spaces are provided than the			IBC 1108.3.1 Dispersion. Accessible individual self-service storage spaces shall be dispersed throughout the various classes of spaces provided. Where more classes of	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
number required to be accessible, the number of spaces shall not be required to exceed that required by Table 225.3. Self-service storage spaces complying with Table 225.3 shall not be required to be dispersed among buildings in a multi-building facility.		spaces are provided than the number of required accessible spaces, the number of accessible spaces shall not be required to exceed that required by Table 1108.3. Accessible spaces are permitted to be dispersed in a single building of a multibuilding facility.
226 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces		
		IBC 1109.10 Assembly area seating. Assembly areas with fixed seating shall comply with Section 1108.2 for accessible seating and assistive listening devices.
226.1 General. Where dining surfaces are provided for the consumption of food or drink, at least 5 percent of the seating spaces and standing spaces at the dining surfaces shall comply with 902. In addition, where work surfaces are provided for use by other than employees, at least 5 percent shall comply with 902.	4.1.3(18) If fixed or built-in seating or tables (including, but not limited to, study carrels and student laboratory stations), are provided in accessible public or common use areas, at least five percent (5%), but not less than one, of the fixed or built-in seating areas or tables shall comply with 4.32. An accessible route shall lead to and through such fixed or built-in seating areas, or tables.	IBC 1108.2.7.1 Dining surfaces. Where dining surfaces for the consumption of food or drink are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of the seating and standing spaces at the dining surfaces shall be accessible and be distributed throughout the facility.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>5.1 General. Except as specified or modified in this section, restaurants and cafeterias shall comply with the requirements of 4.1 to 4.35. Where fixed tables (or dining counters where food is consumed but there is no service) are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of the fixed tables (or a portion of the dining counter) shall be accessible and shall comply with 4.32 as required in 4.1.3(18). In establishments where separate areas are designated for smoking and non-smoking patrons, the required number of accessible fixed tables (or counters) shall be proportionally distributed between the smoking and non-smoking areas. In new construction, and where practicable in alterations, accessible fixed tables (or counters) shall be distributed throughout the space or facility.</p>	
	<p>8.2 Reading and Study Areas. At least 5 percent or a minimum of one of each element of fixed seating, tables, or study carrels shall comply with 4.2 and 4.32. Clearances between fixed accessible tables and between study carrels shall comply with 4.3.</p>	
		<p>IBC 1109.11 Seating at tables, counters and work surfaces. Where seating or standing space at fixed or built-in tables, counters or work surfaces is provided in accessible spaces, at least 5 percent of the seating and standing spaces, but not less than one, shall be accessible. . .</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
EXCEPTIONS: 1. Sales counters and service counters shall not be required to comply with 902.		
2. Check writing surfaces provided at check-out aisles not required to comply with 904.3 shall not be required to comply with 902.		Exceptions: 1. Check-writing surfaces at check-out aisles not required to comply with Section 1109.12.2 are not required to be accessible.
226.2 Dispersion. Dining surfaces and work surfaces required to comply with 902 shall be dispersed throughout the space or facility containing dining surfaces and work surfaces.		IBC 1109.11.1 Dispersion. Accessible fixed or built-in seating at tables, counters or work surfaces shall be distributed throughout the space or facility containing such elements.
227 Sales and Service	7. BUSINESS AND MERCANTILE.	
	7.1 General. In addition to the requirements of 4.1 to 4.35, the design of all areas used for business transactions with the public shall comply with 7.	
	7.2 Sales and Service Counters, Teller Windows, Information Counters.	
227.1 General. Where provided, check-out aisles, sales counters, service counters, food service lines, queues, and waiting lines shall comply with 227 and 904.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>227.2 Check-Out Aisles. Where check-out aisles are provided, check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be provided in accordance with Table 227.2. Where check-out aisles serve different functions, check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be provided in accordance with Table 227.2 for each function. Where check-out aisles are dispersed throughout the building or facility, check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be dispersed.</p>	<p>7.3 Check-out Aisles.</p> <p>(1) In new construction, accessible check-out aisles shall be provided in conformance with the table below:</p>	<p>IBC 1109.12.2 Check-out aisles. Where check-out aisles are provided, accessible check-out aisles shall be provided in accordance with Table 1109.12.2. Where check-out aisles serve different functions, at least one accessible check-out aisle shall be provided for each function. Where checkout aisles serve different functions, accessible check-out aisles shall be provided in accordance with Table 1109.12.2 for each function. Where check-out aisles are dispersed throughout the building or facility, accessible check-out aisles shall also be dispersed. Traffic control devices, security devices and turnstiles located in accessible check-out aisles or lanes shall be accessible.</p>
<p>EXCEPTION: Where the selling space is under 5000 square feet (465 m²) no more than one check-out aisle complying with 904.3 shall be required.</p>	<p>7.3 EXCEPTION: In new construction, where the selling space is under 5000 square feet, only one check-out aisle is required to be accessible.</p>	

New ADAAG ¹		DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²		International Building Code ³	
Table 227.2 Check-Out Aisles				IBC Table 1109.12.2 Accessible Check-Out Aisles	
Number of Check-Out Aisles of Each Function	Minimum Number of Check-Out Aisles of Each Function Required to Comply with 904.3	Total Check-out Aisles of Each Design	Minimum Number of Accessible Check-out Aisles (of each design)	Total Check-Out Aisles of Each Function	Minimum Number of Accessible Check-Out Aisles of Each Function
1 to 4	1	1 - 4	1	1 to 4	1
5 to 8	2	5 - 8	2	5 to 8	2
9 to 15	3	9 - 15	3	9 to 15	3
16 and over	3, plus 20 percent of additional aisles	over 15	3, plus 20% of additional aisles	Over 15	3, plus 20% of additional aisles
227.2.1 Altered Check-Out Aisles. Where check-out aisles are altered, at least one of each check-out aisle serving each function shall comply with 904.3 until the number of check-out aisles complies with 227.2.		EXCEPTION: In alterations, at least one check-out aisle shall be accessible in facilities under 5000 square feet of selling space. In facilities of 5000 or more square feet of selling space, at least one of each design of check-out aisle shall be made accessible when altered until the number of accessible check-out aisles of each design equals the number required in new construction.		IBC 3409.7.11 Check-out aisles. Where check-out aisles are altered, at least one of each check-out aisle serving each function shall be made accessible until the number of accessible check-out aisles complies with Section 1109.12.2.	
		Examples of check-out aisles of different "design" include those which are specifically designed to serve different functions. Different "design" includes but is not limited to the following features - length of belt or no belt; or permanent signage designating the aisle as an express lane.			
227.3 Counters. Where provided, at least one of each type of sales counter and service counter shall comply with 904.4. Where counters are dispersed throughout the building or facility, counters complying with 904.4 also		10.3.1(18) Where provided, ticketing areas shall permit persons with disabilities to obtain a ticket and check baggage and shall comply with 7.2.		IBC 1109.12.3 Point of sales and service counters. Where counters are provided for sales or distribution of goods or services, at least one of each type provided shall be accessible. Where such counters are	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
shall be dispersed.	10.4.1(3) Ticketing areas shall permit persons with disabilities to obtain a ticket and check baggage and shall comply with 7.2.	dispersed throughout the building or facility, the accessible counters shall also be dispersed.
227.4 Food Service Lines. Food service lines shall comply with 904.5. Where self-service shelves are provided, at least 50 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type provided shall comply with 308.	<p>5.5 Food Service Lines. Food service lines shall have a minimum clear width of 36 in (915 mm), with a preferred clear width of 42 in (1065 mm) to allow passage around a person using a wheelchair. Tray slides shall be mounted no higher than 34 in (865 mm) above the floor (see Fig. 53). If self-service shelves are provided, at least 50 percent of each type must be within reach ranges specified in 4.2.5 and 4.2.6.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 53 indicates the clear width of the food service line shall be measured from the leading edge of the tray slide. At least 36 inches (915 mm) wide is required at the food service line. Tray slides shall be no higher than 34 inches (865 mm) above the floor.</p>	IBC 1109.12.4 Food service lines. Food service lines shall be accessible. Where self-service shelves are provided, at least 50 percent, but not less than one, of each type provided shall be accessible.
227.5 Queues and Waiting Lines. Queues and waiting lines servicing counters or check-out aisles required to comply with 904.3 or 904.4 shall comply with 403.		IBC 1109.12.5 Queue and waiting lines. Queue and waiting lines servicing accessible counters or check-out aisles shall be accessible.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
	<p>10.3.1(19) Where provided, baggage check-in and retrieval systems shall be on an accessible route complying with 4.3, and shall have space immediately adjacent complying with 4.2. If unattended security barriers are provided, at least one gate shall comply with 4.13. Gates which must be pushed open by wheelchair or mobility aid users shall have a smooth continuous surface extending from 2 inches above the floor to 27 inches above the floor.</p> <p>10.4.1(5) Baggage check-in and retrieval systems shall be on an accessible route complying with 4.3, and shall have space immediately adjacent complying with 4.2.4. If unattended security barriers are provided, at least one gate shall comply with 4.13. Gates which must be pushed open by wheelchair or mobility aid users shall have a smooth continuous surface extending from 2 inches above the floor to 27 inches above the floor.</p>	
228 Depositories, Vending Machines, Change Machines, Mail Boxes, and Fuel Dispensers		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>228.1 General. Where provided, at least one of each type of depository, vending machine, change machine, and fuel dispenser shall comply with 309.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Drive-up only depositories shall not be required to comply with 309.</p>	<p>4.1.3(13) Controls and operating mechanisms in accessible spaces, along accessible routes, or as parts of accessible elements (for example, light switches and dispenser controls) shall comply with 4.27.</p> <p>5.8 Vending Machines and Other Equipment. Spaces for vending machines and other equipment shall comply with 4.2 and shall be located on an accessible route.</p>	<p>IBC E105.4 Depositories, vending machines, change machines and similar equipment. Where provided, at least one of each type of depository, vending machine, change machine and similar equipment shall comply with ICC A117.1.</p> <p>Exception: Drive-up-only depositories are not required to comply with this section.</p>
<p>228.2 Mail Boxes. Where mail boxes are provided in an interior location, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type shall comply with 309. In residential facilities, where mail boxes are provided for each residential dwelling unit, mail boxes complying with 309 shall be provided for each residential dwelling unit required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 through 809.4.</p>	<p>4.1.3(13) Controls and operating mechanisms in accessible spaces, along accessible routes, or as parts of accessible elements (for example, light switches and dispenser controls) shall comply with 4.27.</p>	<p>IBC E105.5 Mailboxes. Where mailboxes are provided in an interior location, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of each type shall comply with ICC A117.1. In residential and institutional facilities, where mailboxes are provided for each dwelling unit or sleeping unit, mailboxes complying with ICC A117.1 shall be provided for each unit required to be an Accessible unit.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>229 Windows</p> <p>229.1 General. Where glazed openings are provided in accessible rooms or spaces for operation by occupants, at least one opening shall comply with 309. Each glazed opening required by an administrative authority to be operable shall comply with 309.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. Glazed openings in residential dwelling units required to comply with 809 shall not be required to comply with 229.</p> <p>2. Glazed openings in guest rooms required to provide communication features and in guest rooms required to comply with 206.5.3 shall not be required to comply with 229.</p>	<p>4.1.3(6) Windows: (Reserved).</p>	<p>IBC 1109.13.1 Operable windows. Where operable windows are provided in rooms that are required to be accessible in accordance with Sections 1107.5.1.1, 1107.5.2.1, 1107.5.3.1, 1107.5.4, 1107.6.1.1, 1107.6.2.2.1 and 1107.6.4.1, at least one window in each room shall be accessible and each required operable window shall be accessible.</p> <p>Exception: Accessible windows are not required in bathrooms or kitchens.</p>
<p>230 Two-Way Communication Systems</p>		
<p>230.1 General. Where a two-way communication system is provided to gain admittance to a building or facility or to restricted areas within a building or facility, the system shall comply with 708.</p>		<p>IBC E105.7 Two-way communication systems. Where two-way communication systems are provided to gain admittance to a building or facility or to restricted areas within a building or facility, the system shall comply with ICC A117.1.</p>
<p>231 Judicial Facilities</p>		
<p>231.1 General. Judicial facilities shall comply with 231.</p>		<p>IBC 1108.4 Judicial facilities. Judicial facilities shall comply with Sections 1108.4.1 through 1108.4.3.</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
231.2 Courtrooms. Each courtroom shall comply with 808.	See Appendix 11.1	IBC 1108.4.1 Courtrooms. Each courtroom shall be accessible.
See 808.3		IBC 3409.7.8 Jury boxes and witness stands. In alterations, accessible wheelchair spaces are not required to be located within the defined area of raised jury boxes or witness stands and shall be permitted to be located outside these spaces where the ramp or lift access restricts or projects into the means of egress.
231.3 Holding Cells. Where provided, central holding cells and court-floor holding cells shall comply with 231.3.	See Appendix 11.2.3	IBC 1108.4.2 Holding cells. Central holding cells and court-floor holding cells shall comply with Sections 1108.4.2.1 and 1108.4.2.2.
231.3.1 Central Holding Cells. Where separate central holding cells are provided for adult male, juvenile male, adult female, or juvenile female, one of each type shall comply with 807.2. Where central holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or sex, at least one cell complying with 807.2 shall be provided.		IBC 1108.4.2.1 Central holding cells. Where separate central holding cells are provided for adult males, juvenile males, adult females or juvenile females, one of each type shall be accessible. Where central-holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or sex, at least one accessible cell shall be provided.
231.3.2 Court-Floor Holding Cells. Where separate court-floor holding cells are provided for adult male, juvenile male, adult female, or juvenile female, each courtroom shall be served by one cell of each type complying with 807.2. Where court-floor holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or sex, courtrooms shall be served by at least one cell complying with 807.2. Cells may serve more than one courtroom.		IBC 1108.4.2.2 Court-floor holding cells. Where separate court-floor holding cells are provided for adult males, juvenile males, adult females or juvenile females, each courtroom shall be served by one accessible cell of each type. Where court-floor holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or sex, courtrooms shall be served by at least one accessible cell. Accessible cells shall be permitted to serve more than one courtroom.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
231.4 Visiting Areas. Visiting areas shall comply with 231.4.		IBC 1108.4.3 Visiting areas. Visiting areas shall comply with Sections 1108.4.3.1 and 1108.4.3.2.
231.4.1 Cubicles and Counters. At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of cubicles shall comply with 902 on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, at least one shall comply with 904.4.2 on both the visitor and detainee sides.		IBC 1108.4.3.1 Cubicles and counters. At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of cubicles shall be accessible on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, at least one shall be accessible on both the visitor and detainee sides.
EXCEPTION: The detainee side of cubicles or counters at non-contact visiting areas not serving holding cells required to comply with 231 shall not be required to comply with 902 or 904.4.2.		Exception: This requirement shall not apply to the detainee side of cubicles or counters at noncontact visiting areas not serving Accessible holding cells.
231.4.2 Partitions. Where solid partitions or security glazing separate visitors from detainees at least one of each type of cubicle or counter partition shall comply with 904.6.		IBC 1108.4.3.2 Partitions. Where solid partitions or security glazing separate visitors from detainees, at least one of each type of cubicle or counter partition shall be accessible.
232 Detention Facilities and Correctional Facilities		
232.1 General. Buildings, facilities, or portions thereof, in which people are detained for penal or correction purposes, or in which the liberty of the inmates is restricted for security reasons shall comply with 232.	See Appendix 12.1	IBC 1107.5.5 Group I-3. Buildings, facilities or portions thereof with Group I-3 occupancies shall comply with Sections 1107.5.5.1 through 1107.5.5.3.
232.2 General Holding Cells and General Housing Cells. General holding cells and general housing cells shall be provided in accordance with 232.2.		
EXCEPTION: Alterations to cells shall not be		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
required to comply except to the extent determined by the Attorney General.		
232.2.1 Cells with Mobility Features. At least 2 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of cells in a facility shall provide mobility features complying with 807.2.	See Appendix 12.4	IBC 1107.5.5.1 Group I-3 sleeping units. In occupancies in Group I-3, at least 2 percent, but not less than one, of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be Accessible units.
232.2.1.1 Beds. In cells having more than 25 beds, at least 5 percent of the beds shall have clear floor space complying with 807.2.3.		See E104.2.1
232.2.2 Cells with Communication Features. At least 2 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of general holding cells and general housing cells equipped with audible emergency alarm systems and permanently installed telephones within the cell shall provide communication features complying with 807.3.	See Appendix 12.4.3	IBC E104.3.2 Group I-3. In Group I-3 occupancies at least 2 percent, but no fewer than one of the total number of general holding cells and general housing cells equipped with audible emergency alarm systems and permanently installed telephones within the cell, shall comply with Section E104.3.3.
232.3 Special Holding Cells and Special Housing Cells. Where special holding cells or special housing cells are provided, at least one cell serving each purpose shall provide mobility features complying with 807.2. Cells subject to this requirement include, but are not limited to, those used for purposes of orientation, protective custody, administrative or disciplinary detention or segregation, detoxification, and medical isolation.	See Appendix 12.4.2	<p>IBC 1107.5.5.2 Special holding cells and special housing cells or rooms. In addition to the units required to be Accessible by Section 1107.5.5.1, where special holding cells or special housing cells or rooms are provided, at least one serving each purpose shall be Accessible. Cells or room subject to this requirement include, but are not limited to, those used for purposes of orientation, protective custody, administrative or disciplinary detention or segregation, detoxification and medical isolation.</p> <p>Exception: Cells or rooms specially designed without</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		protrusions and that are used solely for purposes of suicide prevention shall not be required to include grab bars.
EXCEPTION: Alterations to cells shall not be required to comply except to the extent determined by the Attorney General.		
232.4 Medical Care Facilities. Patient bedrooms or cells required to comply with 223 shall be provided in addition to any medical isolation cells required to comply with 232.3.	See Appendix 12.4.4	IBC 1107.5.5.3 Medical care facilities. Patient sleeping units or cells required to be Accessible in medical care facilities shall be provided in addition to any medical isolation cells required to comply with Section 1107.5.5.2.
232.5 Visiting Areas. Visiting areas shall comply with 232.5.	See Appendix 12.3	
232.5.1 Cubicles and Counters. At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of cubicles shall comply with 902 on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, at least one shall comply with 904.4.2 on both the visitor and detainee or inmate sides.		IBC 1109.11 Seating at tables, counters, and work surfaces.In Group I-3 occupancy visiting areas at least 5 percent, but not less than one, cubicle or counter shall be accessible on both the visitor and detainee sides.
EXCEPTION: The inmate or detainee side of cubicles or counters at non-contact visiting areas not serving holding cells or housing cells required to comply with 232 shall not be required to comply with 902 or 904.4.2.		Exception 2. In Group I-3 occupancies, the counter or cubical on the detainees side is not required to be accessible at noncontact visiting areas or in areas not serving access holding cells or sleeping units.

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>232.5.2 Partitions. Where solid partitions or security glazing separate visitors from detainees or inmates at least one of each type of cubicle or counter partition shall comply with 904.6.</p>		<p>IBC E104.4Partitions. Solid partitions or security glazing that separates visitors from detainees in Group I-3 occupancies shall provide a method to facilitate voice communication. Such methods are permitted to include, but are not limited to, grilles, slats, talk-through baffles, intercoms or telephone handset devices. The method of communication shall be accessible to individuals who use wheelchairs and individuals who have difficulty bending or stooping. Hand-operable communication devices, if provided, shall comply with Section E106.3.</p>
<p>233 Residential Facilities</p>		
<p>233.1 General. Facilities with residential dwelling units shall comply with 233.</p>		
<p>233.2 Residential Dwelling Units Provided by Entities Subject to HUD Section 504 Regulations. Where facilities with residential dwelling units are provided by entities subject to regulations issued by the Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) under Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, such entities shall provide residential dwelling units with mobility features complying with 809.2 through 809.4 in a number required by the applicable HUD regulations. Residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 through 809.4 shall be on an accessible route as required by 206. In addition, such entities shall provide residential dwelling units</p>		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
with communication features complying with 809.5 in a number required by the applicable HUD regulations. Entities subject to 233.2 shall not be required to comply with 233.3.		
233.3 Residential Dwelling Units Provided by Entities Not Subject to HUD Section 504 Regulations. Facilities with residential dwelling units provided by entities not subject to regulations issued by the Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) under Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, shall comply with 233.3.		
233.3.1 Minimum Number: New Construction. Newly constructed facilities with residential dwelling units shall comply with 233.3.1.		
EXCEPTION: Where facilities contain 15 or fewer residential dwelling units, the requirements of 233.3.1.1 and 233.3.1.2 shall apply to the total number of residential dwelling units that are constructed under a single contract, or are developed as a whole, whether or not located on a common site.		
233.3.1.1 Residential Dwelling Units with Mobility Features. In facilities with residential dwelling units, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one unit, of the total number of residential dwelling units shall provide mobility features complying with 809.2 through 809.4 and shall be on an accessible route as required by 206.		
233.3.1.2 Residential Dwelling Units with		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
Communication Features. In facilities with residential dwelling units, at least 2 percent, but no fewer than one unit, of the total number of residential dwelling units shall provide communication features complying with 809.5.		
233.3.2 Residential Dwelling Units for Sale. Residential dwelling units offered for sale shall provide accessible features to the extent required by regulations issued by Federal agencies under the Americans with Disabilities Act or Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended.		
233.3.3 Additions. Where an addition to an existing building results in an increase in the number of residential dwelling units, the requirements of 233.3.1 shall apply only to the residential dwelling units that are added until the total number of residential dwelling units complies with the minimum number required by 233.3.1. Residential dwelling units required to comply with 233.3.1.1 shall be on an accessible route as required by 206.		
233.3.4 Alterations. Alterations shall comply with 233.3.4.		
EXCEPTION: Where compliance with 809.2, 809.3, or 809.4 is technically infeasible, or where it is technically infeasible to provide an accessible route to a residential dwelling unit, the entity shall be permitted to alter or construct a comparable residential dwelling unit to comply with 809.2 through 809.4 provided that the minimum number of		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
residential dwelling units required by 233.3.1.1 and 233.3.1.2, as applicable, is satisfied.		
233.3.4.1 Alterations to Vacated Buildings. Where a building is vacated for the purposes of alteration, and the altered building contains more than 15 residential dwelling units, at least 5 percent of the residential dwelling units shall comply with 809.2 through 809.4 and shall be on an accessible route as required by 206. In addition, at least 2 percent of the residential dwelling units shall comply with 809.5.		
233.3.4.2 Alterations to Individual Residential Dwelling Units. In individual residential dwelling units, where a bathroom or a kitchen is substantially altered, and at least one other room is altered, the requirements of 233.3.1 shall apply to the altered residential dwelling units until the total number of residential dwelling units complies with the minimum number required by 233.3.1.1 and 233.3.1.2. Residential dwelling units required to comply with 233.3.1.1 shall be on an accessible route as required by 206.		
EXCEPTION: Where facilities contain 15 or fewer residential dwelling units, the requirements of 233.3.1.1 and 233.3.1.2 shall apply to the total number of residential dwelling units that are altered under a single contract, or are developed as a whole, whether or not located on a common site.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>233.3.5 Dispersion. Residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 through 809.4 and residential dwelling units required to provide communication features complying with 809.5 shall be dispersed among the various types of residential dwelling units in the facility and shall provide choices of residential dwelling units comparable to, and integrated with, those available to other residents.</p>		
<p>EXCEPTION: Where multi-story residential dwelling units are one of the types of residential dwelling units provided, one-story residential dwelling units shall be permitted as a substitute for multi-story residential dwelling units where equivalent spaces and amenities are provided in the one-story residential dwelling unit.</p>		
		<p>IBC 1107.6.2 Group R-2. Accessible units, Type A units and Type B units shall be provided in occupancies in Group R-2 in accordance with Sections 1107.6.2.1 and 1107.6.2.2.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.6.2.1 Apartment houses, monasteries and convents. Type A and Type B units shall be provided in apartment house, monasteries and convents in accordance with Sections 1107.6.2.1.1 and 1107.6.2.1.2.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.6.2.1.1 Type A units. In occupancies in Group R-2 containing more than 20 dwelling units or sleeping units, at least 2 percent, but not less than one, of the</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>units shall be a Type A unit. All units on a site shall be considered to determine the total number of units and the required number of Type A units. Type A units shall be dispersed among the various classes of units.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The number of Type A units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7. 2. Existing structures on a site shall not contribute to the total number of units on a site.
		<p>IBC 1107.6.2.1.2 Type B units. Where there are four or more dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence in a single structure, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.</p> <p>Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.6.2.2 Boarding houses, dormitories, fraternity houses and sorority houses. Accessible units and Type B dwelling units shall be provided in boarding houses, dormitories, fraternity houses and sorority houses in accordance with Sections 1107.6.2.2.1 and 1107.6.2.2.2.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.6.2.2.1 Accessible units. Accessible dwelling units and sleeping units shall be provided in accordance with Table</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		1107.6.1.1.
		<p>IBC 1107.6.2.2.2 Type B units. Where there are four or more dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence in a single structure, every dwelling unit and every sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.</p> <p>Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.6.3 Group R-3. In occupancies in Group R-3 where there are four or more dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence in a single structure, every dwelling and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.</p> <p>Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.</p>
		IBC 1107.6.4 Group R-4. Group R-4 occupancies shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1107.6.4.1 and 1107.6.4.2.
		IBC 1107.6.4.1 Accessible units. At least one of the dwelling or sleeping units shall be an Accessible unit.
		IBC 1107.6.4.2 Type B units. In structures with four or more dwelling or sleeping units

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.</p> <p>Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.7 General exceptions. Where specifically permitted by Section 1107.5 or 1107.6, the required number of Type A and Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Sections 1107.7.1 through 1107.7.5.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.7.1 Buildings without elevator service. Where no elevator service is provided in a building, only the dwelling and sleeping units that are located on stories indicated in Sections 1107.7.1.1 through 1107.7.1.4 are required to be Type A and Type B units. The number of Type A units shall be determined in accordance with Section 1107.6.2.1.1.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.7.1.1 One story with Type B units required. At least one story containing dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence shall be provided with an accessible entrance from the exterior of the building and all units intended to be occupied as a residence on that story shall be Type B units.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.7.1.2 Additional stories with Type B units. On all other stories that have a</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>building entrance in proximity to arrival points intended to serve units on that story, as indicated in Items 1 and 2, all dwelling units and sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence served by that entrance on that story shall be Type B units.</p> <p>1. Where the slopes of the undisturbed site measured between the planned entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet of the planned entrance are 10 percent or less, and</p> <p>2. Where the slopes of the planned finished grade measured between the entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet of the planned entrance are 10 percent or less.</p> <p>Where no such arrival points are within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the entrance, the closest arrival point shall be used unless that arrival point serves the story required by Section 1107.7.1.1.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.7.1.3 Additional stories with entrances through fire walls. Where an entrance is provided to a story of a building from an accessible story of an adjacent building by an opening in a fire wall, all dwelling units and sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence on that story shall be Type B units, provided that the planned finished floor elevation within 5 feet (1524 mm) of each side of the door does not include a change in level in excess of 12 inches (305 mm).</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>IBC 1107.7.1.4 Additional stories with entrances from bridges or elevated walkways. Where an entrance is provided to a story of a building from an accessible story of an adjacent building by a bridge or elevated walkway, all dwelling units and sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence on that story shall be Type B units, provided the slope between the planned finished floor elevation at the building entrance and the planned finish floor elevation at the bridge or elevated walkway connection to the adjacent building is 10 percent or less.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.7.2 Multistory units. A multistory dwelling or sleeping unit which is not provided with elevator service is not required to be a Type B unit. Where a multistory unit is provided with external elevator service to only one floor, the floor provided with elevator service shall be the primary entry to the unit, shall comply with the requirements for a Type B unit and a toilet facility shall be provided on that floor.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.7.3 Elevator service to the lowest story with units. Where elevator service in the building provides an accessible route only to the lowest story containing dwelling or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, only the units on that story which are intended to be occupied as a residence are required to be Type B units.</p>
		<p>IBC 1107.7.4 Site impracticality. On a site with multiple nonelevator buildings, , the number of units required by Section 1107.7.1</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>to be Type B units is permitted to be reduced to a percentage which is equal to the percentage of the entire site having grades, prior to development, which are less than 10 percent, provided that all of the following conditions are met:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Not less than 20 percent of the units required by Section 1107.7.1 on the site are Type B units. 2. Units required by Section 1107.7.1, where the slope between the building entrance serving the units on that story and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival point is no greater than 8.33 percent, are Type B units. 3. Units required by Section 1107.7.1, where an elevated walkway is planned between a building entrance serving the units on that story and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival point and the slope between them is 10 percent or less are Type B units, and 4. Units served by an elevator in accordance with Section 1107.7.3 are Type B units.
		<p>IBC 1107.7.5 Design flood elevation. The required number of Type A and Type B units shall not apply to a site where the lowest floor or the lowest structural building members of nonelevator buildings are required to be at or above the design flood elevation resulting in:</p> <p>A difference in elevation between the minimum required floor elevation at the primary</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		<p>entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) exceeding 30 inches (762 mm), and</p> <p>A slope exceeding 10 percent between the minimum required floor elevation at the primary entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm).</p> <p>Where no such arrival points are within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the primary entrances, the closest arrival point shall be used.</p>
		<p>IBC 1109.14 Recreational facilities. Recreational facilities shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1109.14.1 through 1109.14.3.</p>
		<p>IBC 1109.14.1 Facilities serving a single building. In Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies where recreational facilities are provided serving a single building containing Type A or Type B units, 25 percent, but not less than one, of each type of recreational facility shall be accessible. Every recreational facility of each type on a site shall be considered to determine the total number of each type that is required to be accessible.</p>
		<p>IBC 1109.14.2 Facilities serving multiple buildings. In Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies on a single site where multiple buildings containing Type A or Type B units are served by recreational facilities, 25 percent, but not less than one, of each type of recreational</p>

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
		facility serving each building shall be accessible. The total number of each type of recreational facility that is required to be accessible shall be determined by considering every recreational facility of each type serving each building on the site.
		IBC 1109.14.3 Other occupancies. All recreational facilities not falling within the purview of Section 1109.14.1 or 1109.14.2 shall be accessible.
234 Amusement Rides	See Appendix 15.1	
234.1 General. Amusement rides shall comply with 234.		
EXCEPTION: Mobile or portable amusement rides shall not be required to comply with 234.		
234.2 Load and Unload Areas. Load and unload areas serving amusement rides shall comply with 1002.3.		
234.3 Minimum Number. Amusement rides shall provide at least one wheelchair space complying with 1002.4, or at least one amusement ride seat designed for transfer complying with 1002.5, or at least one transfer device complying with 1002.6.		
EXCEPTIONS: 1. Amusement rides that are controlled or operated by the rider shall not be required to comply with 234.3.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
2. Amusement rides designed primarily for children, where children are assisted on and off the ride by an adult, shall not be required to comply with 234.3.		
3. Amusement rides that do not provide amusement ride seats shall not be required to comply with 234.3.		
234.4 Existing Amusement Rides. Where existing amusement rides are altered, the alteration shall comply with 234.4.	See Appendix 15.1.2	
234.4.1 Load and Unload Areas. Where load and unload areas serving existing amusement rides are newly designed and constructed, the load and unload areas shall comply with 1002.3.		
234.4.2 Minimum Number. Where the structural or operational characteristics of an amusement ride are altered to the extent that the amusement ride's performance differs from that specified by the manufacturer or the original design, the amusement ride shall comply with 234.3.		
235 Recreational Boating Facilities	See Appendix 15.2	
235.1 General. Recreational boating facilities shall comply with 235.		
235.2 Boat Slips. Boat slips complying with 1003.3.1 shall be provided in accordance with Table 235.2. Where the number of boat slips is not identified, each 40 feet (12 m) of boat slip	See Appendix 15.2.3	

New ADAAG ¹		DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
edge provided along the perimeter of the pier shall be counted as one boat slip for the purpose of this section.			
Table 235.2 Boat Slips		See Appendix Table 15.2.3	
Total Number of Boating Slips Provided in Facility	Minimum Number of Required Accessible Boating Slips		
1 to 25	1		
26 to 50	2		
51 to 100	3		
101 to 150	4		
151 to 300	5		
301 to 400	6		
401 to 500	7		
501 to 600	8		
601 to 700	9		
701 to 800	10		
801 to 900	11		
901 to 1000	12		
1001 and over	12, plus 1 for every 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000		
235.2.1 Dispersion. Boat slips complying with 1003.3.1 shall be dispersed throughout the various types of boat slips provided. Where the minimum number of boat slips required to comply with 1003.3.1 has been met, no further dispersion shall be required.			
235.3 Boarding Piers at Boat Launch Ramps. Where boarding piers are provided at boat launch ramps, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of the boarding piers shall		See Appendix 15.2.4	

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
comply with 1003.3.2.		
236 Exercise Machines and Equipment	See Appendix 15.7	
236.1 General. At least one of each type of exercise machine and equipment shall comply with 1004.		
237 Fishing Piers and Platforms	See Appendix 15.3	
237.1 General. Fishing piers and platforms shall comply with 1005.		
238 Golf Facilities	See Appendix 15.4	
238.1 General. Golf facilities shall comply with 238.		
238.2 Golf Courses. Golf courses shall comply with 238.2.		
238.2.1 Teeing Grounds. Where one teeing ground is provided for a hole, the teeing ground shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the teeing ground. Where two teeing grounds are provided for a hole, the forward teeing ground shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the teeing ground. Where three or more teeing grounds are provided for a hole, at least two teeing grounds, including the forward teeing ground, shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit each teeing ground.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
EXCEPTION: In existing golf courses, the forward teeing ground shall not be required to be one of the teeing grounds on a hole designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the teeing ground where compliance is not feasible due to terrain.		
238.2.2 Putting Greens. Putting greens shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the putting green.		
238.2.3 Weather Shelters. Where provided, weather shelters shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the weather shelter and shall comply with 1006.4.		
238.3 Practice Putting Greens, Practice Teeing Grounds, and Teeing Stations at Driving Ranges. At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of practice putting greens, practice teeing grounds, and teeing stations at driving ranges shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the practice putting greens, practice teeing grounds, and teeing stations at driving ranges.		
239 Miniature Golf Facilities	See Appendix 15.5	
239.1 General. Miniature golf facilities shall comply with 239.		
239.2 Minimum Number. At least 50 percent of holes on miniature golf courses shall comply with 1007.3.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
239.3 Miniature Golf Course Configuration. Miniature golf courses shall be configured so that the holes complying with 1007.3 are consecutive. Miniature golf courses shall provide an accessible route from the last hole complying with 1007.3 to the course entrance or exit without requiring travel through any other holes on the course.		
EXCEPTION: One break in the sequence of consecutive holes shall be permitted provided that the last hole on the miniature golf course is the last hole in the sequence.		
240 Play Areas	See Appendix 15.6	
240.1 General. Play areas for children ages 2 and over shall comply with 240. Where separate play areas are provided within a site for specific age groups, each play area shall comply with 240.		
EXCEPTIONS: 1. Play areas located in family child care facilities where the proprietor actually resides shall not be required to comply with 240.		
2. In existing play areas, where play components are relocated for the purposes of creating safe use zones and the ground surface is not altered or extended for more than one use zone, the play area shall not be required to comply with 240.		
3. Amusement attractions shall not be required to comply with 240.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
4. Where play components are altered and the ground surface is not altered, the ground surface shall not be required to comply with 1008.2.6 unless required by 202.4.		
240.1.1 Additions. Where play areas are designed and constructed in phases, the requirements of 240 shall apply to each successive addition so that when the addition is completed, the entire play area complies with all the applicable requirements of 240.		
240.2 Play Components. Where provided, play components shall comply with 240.2.		
240.2.1 Ground Level Play Components. Ground level play components shall be provided in the number and types required by 240.2.1. Ground level play components that are provided to comply with 240.2.1.1 shall be permitted to satisfy the additional number required by 240.2.1.2 if the minimum required types of play components are satisfied. Where two or more required ground level play components are provided, they shall be dispersed throughout the play area and integrated with other play components.		
240.2.1.1 Minimum Number and Types. Where ground level play components are provided, at least one of each type shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with 1008.4.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
<p>240.2.1.2 Additional Number and Types. Where elevated play components are provided, ground level play components shall be provided in accordance with Table 240.2.1.2 and shall comply with 1008.4.</p>		
<p>EXCEPTION: If at least 50 percent of the elevated play components are connected by a ramp and at least 3 of the elevated play components connected by the ramp are different types of play components, the play area shall not be required to comply with 240.2.1.2.</p>		

New ADAAG ¹			DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
Table 240.2.1.2 Number and Types of Ground Level Play Components Required to be on Accessible Routes			See Appendix Table 15.6.2.2	
Number of Elevated Play Components Provided	Minimum Number of Ground Level Play Components Required to be on an Accessible Route	Minimum Number of Different Types of Ground Level Play Components Required to be on an Accessible Route		
1	Not applicable	Not applicable		
2 to 4	1	1		
5 to 7	2	2		
8 to 10	3	3		
11 to 13	4	3		
14 to 16	5	3		
17 to 19	6	3		
22 to 22	7	4		
23 to 25	8	4		
26 and over	8, plus 1 for each additional 3, or fraction thereof, over 25	5		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
240.2.2 Elevated Play Components. Where elevated play components are provided, at least 50 percent shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with 1008.4.		
241 Saunas and Steam Rooms	See Appendix 4.1.3(22)	
241 General. Where provided, saunas and steam rooms shall comply with 612.		
EXCEPTION: Where saunas or steam rooms are clustered at a single location, no more than 5 percent of the saunas and steam rooms, but no fewer than one, of each type in each cluster shall be required to comply with 612.		
242 Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, and Spas	See Appendix 15.8	
242.1 General. Swimming pools, wading pools, and spas shall comply with 242.		
242.2 Swimming Pools. At least two accessible means of entry shall be provided for swimming pools. Accessible means of entry shall be swimming pool lifts complying with 1009.2; sloped entries complying with 1009.3; transfer walls complying with 1009.4; transfer systems complying with 1009.5; and pool stairs complying with 1009.6. At least one accessible means of entry provided shall comply with 1009.2 or 1009.3.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where a swimming pool has less than 300 linear feet (91 m) of swimming pool wall, no more than one accessible means of entry shall be required provided that the accessible means of entry is a swimming pool lift complying with 1009.2 or sloped entry complying with 1009.3.		
2. Wave action pools, leisure rivers, sand bottom pools, and other pools where user access is limited to one area shall not be required to provide more than one accessible means of entry provided that the accessible means of entry is a swimming pool lift complying with 1009.2, a sloped entry complying with 1009.3, or a transfer system complying with 1009.5.		
3. Catch pools shall not be required to provide an accessible means of entry provided that the catch pool edge is on an accessible route.		
242.3 Wading Pools. At least one accessible means of entry shall be provided for wading pools. Accessible means of entry shall comply with sloped entries complying with 1009.3.		
242.4 Spas. At least one accessible means of entry shall be provided for spas. Accessible means of entry shall comply with swimming pool lifts complying with 1009.2; transfer walls complying with 1009.4; or transfer systems complying with 1009.5.		

New ADAAG ¹	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design ²	International Building Code ³
EXCEPTION: Where spas are provided in a cluster, no more than 5 percent, but no fewer than one, spa in each cluster shall be required to comply with 242.4.		
243 Shooting Facilities with Firing Positions	See Appendix 15.7.4	
243.1 General. Where shooting facilities with firing positions are designed and constructed at a site, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type of firing position shall comply with 1010.		

TECHNICAL

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
CHAPTER 3: BUILDING BLOCKS		ANSI Chapter 3. Building Blocks
301 General		ANSI 301 General
301.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 3 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.		ANSI 301.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 3 shall apply where required by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority or by Chapters 4 through 10.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
302 Floor or Ground Surfaces	4.5 Ground and Floor Surfaces.	ANSI 302 Floor Surfaces
<p>302.1 General. Floor and ground surfaces shall be stable, firm, and slip resistant and shall comply with 302.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Within animal containment areas, floor and ground surfaces shall not be required to be stable, firm, and slip resistant. 2. Areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with 302. 	<p>4.5.1 General. Ground and floor surfaces along accessible routes and in accessible rooms and spaces including floors, walks, ramps, stairs, and curb ramps, shall be stable, firm, slip-resistant, and shall comply with 4.5.</p> <p>See also Appendix 4.1.3(3)</p>	<p>ANSI 302.1 General. Floor surfaces shall be stable, firm, and slip resistant, and shall comply with Section 302. Changes in level in floor surfaces shall comply with Section 303.</p>
<p>302.2 Carpet. Carpet or carpet tile shall be securely attached and shall have a firm cushion, pad, or backing or no cushion or pad. Carpet or carpet tile shall have a level loop, textured loop, level cut pile, or level cut/uncut pile texture. Pile height shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum. Exposed edges of carpet shall be fastened to floor surfaces and shall have trim on the entire length of the exposed edge. Carpet edge trim shall comply with 303.</p>	<p>4.5.3 Carpet. If carpet or carpet tile is used on a ground or floor surface, then it shall be securely attached; have a firm cushion, pad, or backing, or no cushion or pad; and have a level loop, textured loop, level cut pile, or level cut/uncut pile texture. The maximum pile thickness shall be 1/2 in (13 mm) (see Fig. 8(f)). Exposed edges of carpet shall be fastened to floor surfaces and have trim along the entire length of the exposed edge. Carpet edge trim shall comply with 4.5.2.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 8(f) shows an elevation of carpet with padding with the pile limited to 1/2 inch maximum.</p>	<p>ANSI 302.2 Carpet. Carpet or carpet tile shall be securely attached and shall have a firm cushion, pad, or backing or no cushion or pad. Carpet or carpet tile shall have a level loop, textured loop, level cut pile, or level cut/uncut pile texture. The pile shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum in height. Exposed edges of carpet shall be fastened to the floor and shall have trim along the entire length of the exposed edge. Carpet edge trim shall comply with Section 303.</p>
<p>302.3 Openings. Openings in floor or ground surfaces shall not allow passage of a sphere more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) diameter except as allowed in 407.4.3, 409.4.3, 410.4, 810.5.3 and 810.10. Elongated openings shall be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the dominant direction of travel.</p>	<p>4.5.4 Gratings. If gratings are located in walking surfaces, then they shall have spaces no greater than 1/2 in (13 mm) wide in one direction (see Fig. 8(g)). If gratings have elongated openings, then they shall be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the dominant direction of travel (see Fig. 8(h)).</p>	<p>ANSI 302.3 Openings. Openings in floor surfaces shall be of a size that does not permit the passage of a 1/2 inch (13 mm) diameter sphere, except as allowed in Sections 407.4.3, 408.4.3, 409.4.3, 410.4, and 805.10. Elongated openings shall be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the dominant direction of travel.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>NOTE: In Figure 8(g) the gratings are shown with one dimension 1/2 inch maximum measured parallel to the predominant direction of travel.</p> <p>In Figure 8(h), gratings are shown with the long dimension perpendicular to route of travel.</p>	
<p>303 Changes in Level</p> <p>303.1 General. Where changes in level are permitted in floor or ground surfaces, they shall comply with 303.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Animal containment areas shall not be required to comply with 303. 2. Areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with 303. <p>303.2 Vertical. Changes in level of 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) high maximum shall be permitted to be vertical.</p> <p>303.3 Beveled. Changes in level between 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) high minimum and 1/2 inch (13 mm) high maximum shall be beveled with a slope not steeper than 1:2.</p> <p>303.4 Ramps. Changes in level greater than 1/2 inch (13 mm) high shall be ramped, and shall comply with 405 or 406.</p>	<p>4.3.8 Changes in Levels. Changes in levels along an accessible route shall comply with 4.5.2. If an accessible route has changes in level greater than 1/2 in (13 mm), then a curb ramp, ramp, elevator, or platform lift (as permitted in 4.1.3 and 4.1.6) shall be provided that complies with 4.7, 4.8, 4.10, or 4.11, respectively. An accessible route does not include stairs, steps, or escalators. See definition of "egress, means of" in 3.5.</p> <p>4.5.2 Changes in Level. Changes in level up to 1/4 in (6 mm) may be vertical and without edge treatment (see Fig. 7(c)). Changes in level between 1/4 in and 1/2 in (6 mm and 13 mm) shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2 (see Fig. 7(d)). Changes in level greater than 1/2 in (13 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp that complies with 4.7 or 4.8.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 7(c) is a cross section drawing showing a maximum 1/4 inch vertical change in level.</p> <p>Figure 7(d) is a cross section drawing showing a change in level 1/4 to 1/2 inch high with a 1:2 slope.</p>	<p>ANSI 303 Changes in Level</p> <p>ANSI 303.1 General. Changes in level in floor surfaces shall comply with Section 303.</p> <p>ANSI 303.2 Vertical. Changes in level of 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) maximum in height shall be permitted to be vertical.</p> <p>ANSI 303.3 Beveled. Changes in level greater than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in height and not more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum in height shall be beveled with a slope not steeper than 1:2.</p> <p>ANSI 303.4 Ramped. Changes in level greater than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in height shall be ramped and shall comply with Section 405 or 406.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	4.2 Space Allowance and Reach Ranges.	
304 Turning Space	4.2.3 Wheelchair Turning Space. The space required for a wheelchair to make a 180-degree turn is a clear space of 60 in (1525 mm) diameter (see Fig. 3(a)) or a T-shaped space (see Fig. 3(b)). NOTE: Figure 3(a) illustrates a 60 inch (1525 mm) diameter turning circle. Figure 3(b) indicates the T-shape space is 36 inches (915 mm) wide at the top and stem within a 60 inch by 60 inch (1525 mm by 1525 mm) square.	ANSI 304 Turning Space
304.1 General. Turning space shall comply with 304.		ANSI 304.1 General. A turning space shall comply with Section 304.
304.2 Floor or Ground Surfaces. Floor or ground surfaces of a turning space shall comply with 302. Changes in level are not permitted. EXCEPTION: Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.		ANSI 304.2 Floor Surface. Floor surfaces of a turning space shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48 and shall comply with Section 302.
304.3 Size. Turning space shall comply with 304.3.1 or 304.3.2.		ANSI 304.3 Size. Turning spaces shall comply with Section 304.3.1 or 304.3.2.
304.3.1 Circular Space. The turning space shall be a space of 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter minimum. The space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with 306.		ANSI 304.3.1 Circular Space. The turning space shall be a circular space with a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum diameter. The turning space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
304.3.2 T-Shaped Space. The turning space shall be a T-shaped space within a 60 inch (1525 mm) square minimum with arms and base 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum. Each arm of the T shall be clear of obstructions 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in each direction and the base shall be clear of obstructions 24 inches (610 mm) minimum. The space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with 306 only at the end of either the base or one arm.		ANSI 304.3.2 T-Shaped Space. The turning space shall be a T-shaped space within a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum square, with arms and base 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width. Each arm of the T shall be clear of obstructions 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in each direction, and the base shall be clear of obstructions 24 inches (610 mm) minimum. The turning space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 only at the end of either the base or one arm.
304.4 Door Swing. Doors shall be permitted to swing into turning spaces.		ANSI 304.4 Door Swing. Unless otherwise specified, doors shall be permitted to swing into turning spaces.
305 Clear Floor or Ground Space	4.2.4 Clear Floor or Ground Space for Wheelchairs.	ANSI 305 Clear Floor Space
305.1 General. Clear floor or ground space shall comply with 305.	4.2.4.3 Surfaces for Wheelchair Spaces. Clear floor or ground spaces for wheelchairs shall comply with 4.5.	ANSI 305.1 General. A clear floor space shall comply with Section 305.
305.2 Floor or Ground Surfaces. Floor or ground surfaces of a clear floor or ground space shall comply with 302. Changes in level are not permitted. EXCEPTION: Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.	4.13.6 Maneuvering Clearances at Doors. . . . The floor or ground area within the required clearances shall be level and clear.	ANSI 305.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces of a clear floor space shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48 and shall comply with Section 302.
305.3 Size. The clear floor or ground space shall be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.	4.2.4.1 Size and Approach. The minimum clear floor or ground space required to accommodate a single, stationary wheelchair and occupant is 30 in by 48 in (760 mm by	ANSI 305.3 Size. The clear floor space shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>305.4 Knee and Toe Clearance. Unless otherwise specified, clear floor or ground space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with 306.</p>	<p>1220 mm) (see Fig. 4(a)). The minimum clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs may be positioned for forward or parallel approach to an object (see Fig. 4(b) and (c)). Clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs may be part of the knee space required under some objects.</p>	<p>ANSI 305.4 Knee and Toe Clearance. Unless otherwise specified, clear floor space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306.</p>
<p>305.5 Position. Unless otherwise specified, clear floor or ground space shall be positioned for either forward or parallel approach to an element.</p>	<p>NOTE: In Figure 4(a), the Clear floor space shown to be 30 by 48 inches minimum.</p> <p>Figure 4(b) illustrates a forward approach with a clear floor space of 30 inches minimum by 48 inches minimum, the narrow side facing an element on a wall.</p> <p>Figure 4(c) illustrates a parallel approach with a clear floor space of 30 inches minimum by 48 inches minimum, with the long side facing an element on a wall.</p>	<p>ANSI 305.5 Position. Unless otherwise specified, the clear floor space shall be positioned for either forward or parallel approach to an element.</p>
<p>305.6 Approach. One full unobstructed side of the clear floor or ground space shall adjoin an accessible route or adjoin another clear floor or ground space.</p>	<p>4.2.4.2 Relationship of Maneuvering Clearance to Wheelchair Spaces. One full unobstructed side of the clear floor or ground space for a wheelchair shall adjoin or overlap an accessible route or adjoin another wheelchair clear floor space. If a clear floor space is located in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearances shall be provided as shown in Fig. 4(d) and (e).</p>	<p>ANSI 305.6 Approach. One full, unobstructed side of the clear floor space shall adjoin or overlap an accessible route or adjoin another clear floor space.</p>
<p>305.7 Maneuvering Clearance. Where a clear floor or ground space is located in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearance shall be provided in accordance with 305.7.1 and 305.7.2.</p>	<p>NOTE: Figure 4(d) indicates the following:</p>	<p>ANSI 305.7 Alcoves. If a clear floor space is in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearances complying with Sections 305.7.1 and 305.7.2 shall be provided, as applicable.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
305.7.1 Forward Approach. Alcoves shall be 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum where the depth exceeds 24 inches (610 mm).	For a front approach, where the depth of the alcove is equal to or less than 24 inches (610 mm), the required clear floor space is 30 inches by 48 inches (760 mm by 1220 mm). For a side approach, where the depth of the alcove is equal to or less than 15 inches (380 mm), the required clear floor space is 30 inches by 48 inches (760 mm by 1220 mm).	ANSI 305.7.2 Forward Approach. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a forward approach, the alcove shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width where the depth exceeds 24 inches (610 mm).
305.7.2 Parallel Approach. Alcoves shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum where the depth exceeds 15 inches (380 mm).	Figure 4(e) indicates the following: For a front approach, if the depth of the alcove is greater than 24 inches (610 mm), then in addition to the 30 inch (760 mm) width, a maneuvering clearance of 6 inches (150 mm) in width is required. For a side approach, where the depth of the alcove is greater than 15 inches (380 mm), then in addition to the 48 inch (1220 mm) length, an additional maneuvering clearance of 12 inches in length (305 mm) is required.	ANSI 305.7.1 Parallel Approach. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the alcove shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width where the depth exceeds 15 inches (380 mm).
306 Knee and Toe Clearance		ANSI 306 Knee and Toe Clearance
306.1 General. Where space beneath an element is included as part of clear floor or ground space or turning space, the space shall comply with 306. Additional space shall not be prohibited beneath an element but shall not be considered as part of the clear floor or ground space or turning space.		ANSI 306.1 General. Where space beneath an element is included as part of clear floor space at an element, clearance at an element, or a turning space, the space shall comply with Section 306. Additional space beyond knee and toe clearance shall be permitted beneath elements.
306.2 Toe Clearance.		ANSI 306.2 Toe Clearance.
306.2.1 General. Space under an element between the finish floor or ground and 9 inches		ANSI 306.2.1 General. Space beneath an element between the floor and 9 inches (230

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
(230 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall be considered toe clearance and shall comply with 306.2.		mm) above the floor shall be considered toe clearance and shall comply with Section 306.2.
306.2.2 Maximum Depth. Toe clearance shall extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element.		ANSI 306.2.2 Maximum Depth. Toe clearance shall be permitted to extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element.
306.2.3 Minimum Required Depth. Where toe clearance is required at an element as part of a clear floor space, the toe clearance shall extend 17 inches (430 mm) minimum under the element.		ANSI 306.2.3 Minimum Depth. Where toe clearance is required at an element as part of a clear floor space, the toe clearance shall extend 17 inches (430 mm) minimum beneath the element.
306.2.4 Additional Clearance. Space extending greater than 6 inches (150 mm) beyond the available knee clearance at 9 inches (230 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall not be considered toe clearance.		ANSI 306.2.4 Additional Clearance. Space extending greater than 6 inches (150 mm) beyond the available knee clearance at 9 inches (230 mm) above the floor shall not be considered toe clearance.
306.2.5 Width. Toe clearance shall be 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum.		ANSI 306.2.5 Width. Toe clearance shall be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width.
306.3 Knee Clearance.		ANSI 306.3 Knee Clearance.
306.3.1 General. Space under an element between 9 inches (230 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall be considered knee clearance and shall comply with 306.3.		ANSI 306.3.1 General. Space beneath an element between 9 inches (230 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor shall be considered knee clearance and shall comply with Section 306.3.
306.3.2 Maximum Depth. Knee clearance shall extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element at 9 inches (230 mm) above the finish floor or ground.		ANSI 306.3.2 Maximum Depth. Knee clearance shall be permitted to extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element at 9 inches (230 mm) above the floor.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
306.3.3 Minimum Required Depth. Where knee clearance is required under an element as part of a clear floor space, the knee clearance shall be 11 inches (280 mm) deep minimum at 9 inches (230 mm) above the finish floor or ground, and 8 inches (205 mm) deep minimum at 27 inches (685 mm) above the finish floor or ground.		ANSI 306.3.3 Minimum Depth. Where knee clearance is required beneath an element as part of a clear floor space, the knee clearance shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum in depth at 9 inches (230 mm) above the floor, and 8 inches (205 mm) minimum in depth at 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor.
306.3.4 Clearance Reduction. Between 9 inches (230 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) above the finish floor or ground, the knee clearance shall be permitted to reduce at a rate of 1 inch (25 mm) in depth for each 6 inches (150 mm) in height.		ANSI 306.3.4 Clearance Reduction. Between 9 inches (230 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor, the knee clearance shall be permitted to be reduced at a rate of 1 inch (25 mm) for each 6 inches (150 mm) in height.
306.3.5 Width. Knee clearance shall be 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum.		ANSI 306.3.5 Width. Knee clearance shall be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
307 Protruding Objects	4.4 Protruding Objects.	IBC 1003.3 Protruding objects. Protruding objects shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1003.3.1 through 1003.3.4.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>307.1 General. Protruding objects shall comply with 307.</p>	<p>4.4.1 General. Objects projecting from walls (for example, telephones) with their leading edges between 27 in and 80 in (685 mm and 2030 mm) above the finished floor shall protrude no more than 4 in (100 mm) into walks, halls, corridors, passageways, or aisles (see Fig. 8(a)). Objects mounted with their leading edges at or below 27 in (685 mm) above the finished floor may protrude any amount (see Fig. 8(a) and (b)). Free-standing objects mounted on posts or pylons may overhang 12 in (305 mm) maximum from 27 in to 80 in (685 mm to 2030 mm) above the ground or finished floor (see Fig. 8(c) and (d)). Protruding objects shall not reduce the clear width of an accessible route or maneuvering space (see Fig. 8(e)).</p>	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>NOTE: In Figure 8(a) two figures show the depth that objects are permitted to protrude from walls based on their heights from the floor. In one figure the object is installed below 27 inches and is permitted to intrude into the “any amount” provided that “clear width” is preserved. In the other figure, the object is installed higher than 27 inches and cannot protrude more than 4 inches from the wall. Both figures show a person using a white cane avoiding the object by making cane contact with sufficient stopping time.</p> <p>In Figure 8(b) a person using a white cane walks perpendicular to an object with its leading edge at 27 inches above the floor and detects the object with sufficient stopping time.</p> <p>In Figure 8(c) free-standing objects are shown with their leading edges protruding no more than 12 inches from the floor.</p> <p>In Figure 8(c-1), the diagram illustrates (as an example) a stair whose underside descends across a pathway. Where the headroom is less than 80 inches, protection is offered by a railing (2030 mm) which can be no higher than 27 inches (685 mm) to ensure detectability.</p> <p>In Figure 8(d), the diagram illustrates an area where an overhang can be greater than 12 inches (305 mm) because the object cannot be approached in the direction of the overhang.</p> <p>In Figure 8(e), the minimum clear width for continuous passage is 36 inches. Thirty two (32) inches is the minimum clear width for a</p>	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>307.2 Protrusion Limits. Objects with leading edges more than 27 inches (685 mm) and not more than 80 inches (2030 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall protrude 4 inches (100 mm) maximum horizontally into the circulation path.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Handrails shall be permitted to protrude 4 1/2 inches (115 mm) maximum.</p>		<p>IBC 1003.3.3 Horizontal projections. Structural elements, fixtures or furnishings shall not project horizontally from either side more than 4 inches (102 mm) over any walking surface between the heights of 27 inches (686 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) above the walking surface.</p> <p>Exception: Handrails serving stairs and ramps are permitted to protrude 4.5 inches (114 mm) from the wall.</p>
<p>307.3 Post-Mounted Objects. Free-standing objects mounted on posts or pylons shall overhang circulation paths 12 inches (305 mm) maximum when located 27 inches (685 mm) minimum and 80 inches (2030 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Where a sign or other obstruction is mounted between posts or pylons and the clear distance between the posts or pylons is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), the lowest edge of such sign or obstruction shall be 27 inches (685 mm) maximum or 80 inches (2030 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: The sloping portions of handrails serving stairs and ramps shall not be required to comply with 307.3.</p>		<p>IBC 1003.3.2 Free-standing objects. A free-standing object mounted on a post or pylon shall not overhang that post or pylon more than 12 inches (305 mm) where the lowest point of the leading edge is more than 27 inches (686mm) and less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the walking surface.</p> <p>Where a sign or other obstruction is mounted between posts or pylons and the clear distance between the posts or pylons is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), the lowest edge of such sign or obstruction shall be 27 inches (685 mm) maximum or 80 inches (2030 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.</p> <p>Exception: This requirement shall not apply to sloping portions of handrails serving stairs and ramps.</p>
<p>307.4 Vertical Clearance. Vertical clearance shall be 80 inches (2030 mm) high minimum. Guardrails or other barriers shall be provided where the vertical clearance is less than 80 inches (2030 mm) high. The leading edge of such guardrail or barrier shall be located 27</p>	<p>4.4.2 Head Room. Walks, halls, corridors, passageways, aisles, or other circulation spaces shall have 80 in (2030 mm) minimum clear head room (see Fig. 8(a)). If vertical clearance of an area adjoining an accessible route is reduced to less than 80 in (nominal</p>	<p>IBC 1003.3.1 Headroom. Protruding objects are permitted to extend below the minimum ceiling height required by Section 1003.2 provided a minimum headroom of 80 inches (2032 mm) shall be provided for any walking surface, including walks, corridors, aisles and</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>inches (685 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.</p>	<p>dimension), a barrier to warn blind or visually-impaired persons shall be provided (see Fig. 8(c-1)).</p> <p>NOTE: In Figure 8(a) two figures show the depth that objects are permitted to protrude from walls based on their heights from the floor. In one figure the object is installed below 27 inches and is permitted to intrude into the “any amount” provided that “clear width” is preserved. In the other figure, the object is installed higher than 27 inches and cannot protrude more than 4 inches from the wall. Both figures show a person using a white cane avoiding the object by making cane contact with sufficient stopping time.</p> <p>In Figure 8(c-1), the diagram illustrates (as an example) a stair whose underside descends across a pathway. Where the headroom is less than 80 inches, protection is offered by a railing (2030 mm) which can be no higher than 27 inches (685 mm) to ensure detectability</p>	<p>passageways. Not more than 50 percent of the ceiling area of a means of egress shall be reduced in height by protruding objects.</p> <p>Exception: Door closers and stops shall not reduce headroom to less than 78 inches (1981 mm).</p> <p>A barrier shall be provided where the vertical clearance is less than 80 inches (2032 mm) high. The leading edge of such a barrier shall be located 27 inches (686 mm) maximum above the floor.</p>
<p>307.5 Required Clear Width. Protruding objects shall not reduce the clear width required for accessible routes.</p>	<p>4.4.1 General. . . . Protruding objects shall not reduce the clear width of an accessible route or maneuvering space (see Fig. 8(e)).</p> <p>NOTE: In Figure 8(e) the minimum clear width for continuous passage is 36 inches. Thirty two (32) inches is the minimum clear width for a maximum distance of 24 inches (610 mm). The maximum distance an object can protrude beyond a wing wall is 4 inches (100 mm).</p>	<p>IBC 1003.3.4 Clear width. Protruding objects shall not reduce the minimum clear width of accessible routes as required in Section 1104.</p>
<p>308 Reach Ranges</p>		<p>ANSI 308 Reach Ranges</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
308.1 General. Reach ranges shall comply with 308.		ANSI 308.1 General. Reach ranges shall comply with Section 308.
308.2 Forward Reach.	4.2.5 Forward Reach. If the clear floor space only allows forward approach to an object, the maximum high forward reach allowed shall be 48 in (1220 mm) (see Fig. 5(a)). The minimum low forward reach is 15 in (380 mm). If the high forward reach is over an obstruction, reach and clearances shall be as shown in Fig. 5(b).	ANSI 308.2 Forward Reach.
308.2.1 Unobstructed. Where a forward reach is unobstructed, the high forward reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum and the low forward reach shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.		ANSI 308.2.1 Unobstructed. Where a forward reach is unobstructed, the high forward reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum and the low forward reach shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum above the floor.
308.2.2 Obstructed High Reach. Where a high forward reach is over an obstruction, the clear floor space shall extend beneath the element for a distance not less than the required reach depth over the obstruction. The high forward reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum where the reach depth is 20 inches (510 mm) maximum. Where the reach depth exceeds 20 inches (510 mm), the high forward reach shall be 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum and the reach depth shall be 25 inches (635 mm) maximum.	<p>NOTE: In Figure 5(a), the forward reach range shown in profile and plan view to be 48 inches maximum and 15 inches minimum.</p> <p>In Figure 5(b), the maximum level forward reach over an obstruction with knee space below is 25 inches (635 mm). When the obstruction is less than 20 inches (510 mm) deep, the maximum high forward reach is 48 inches (1220 mm). When the obstruction projects 20 to 25 inches (510 mm to 635 mm), the maximum high forward reach is 44 inches (1120 mm). (4.2.5, 4.25.3).</p>	ANSI 308.2.2 Obstructed High Reach. Where a high forward reach is over an obstruction, the clear floor space shall extend beneath the element for a distance not less than the required reach depth over the obstruction. The high forward reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum where the reach depth is 20 inches (510 mm) maximum. Where the reach depth exceeds 20 inches (510 mm), the high forward reach shall be 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum, and the reach depth shall be 25 inches (635 mm) maximum.
308.3 Side Reach.	4.2.6 Side Reach. If the clear floor space allows parallel approach by a person in a	ANSI 308.3 Side Reach.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>308.3.1 Unobstructed. Where a clear floor or ground space allows a parallel approach to an element and the side reach is unobstructed, the high side reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum and the low side reach shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. An obstruction shall be permitted between the clear floor or ground space and the element where the depth of the obstruction is 10 inches (255 mm) maximum. 2. Operable parts of fuel dispensers shall be permitted to be 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum measured from the surface of the vehicular way where fuel dispensers are installed on existing curbs. 	<p>wheelchair, the maximum high side reach allowed shall be 54 in (1370 mm) and the low side reach shall be no less than 9 in (230 mm) above the floor (Fig. 6(a) and (b)). If the side reach is over an obstruction, the reach and clearances shall be as shown in Fig 6(c).</p> <p>NOTE: In Figure 6(a), the 30 by 48 inch clear floor space is located a maximum 10 inches (255 mm) from the wall.</p> <p>In Figure 6(b), the 30 by 48 inch wheelchair clear floor space is located a maximum 10 inches (255 mm) from the wall.</p> <p>Figure 6(c) indicates that if the depth of the obstruction is 24 inches (610 mm) and the maximum height of the obstruction is 34 inches (865 mm), the maximum high side reach over the obstruction is 46 inches (1170).</p>	<p>ANSI 308.3.1 Unobstructed. Where a clear floor space allows a parallel approach to an element and the side reach is unobstructed, the high side reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum and the low side reach shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum above the floor.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Existing elements shall be permitted at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor.</p> <p>308.3.2 Obstructed High Reach. Where a clear floor space allows a parallel approach to an object and the high side reach is over an obstruction, the height of the obstruction shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum and the depth of the obstruction shall be 24 inches (610 mm) maximum. The high side reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum for a reach depth of 10 inches (255 mm) maximum. Where the reach depth exceeds 10 inches (255 mm), the high side reach shall be 46 inches (1170 mm) maximum for a reach depth of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>308.3.2 Obstructed High Reach. Where a clear floor or ground space allows a parallel approach to an element and the high side reach is over an obstruction, the height of the obstruction shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum and the depth of the obstruction shall be 24 inches (610 mm) maximum. The high side reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum for a reach depth of 10 inches (255 mm) maximum. Where the reach depth exceeds 10 inches (255 mm), the high side reach shall be 46 inches (1170 mm) maximum for a reach depth of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The top of washing machines and clothes dryers shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor. 2. Operable parts of fuel dispensers shall be permitted to be 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum measured from the surface of the vehicular way where fuel dispensers are installed on existing curbs. 		
309 Operable Parts	4.27 Controls and Operating Mechanisms.	ANSI 309 Operable Parts
309.1 General. Operable parts shall comply with 309.	4.27.1 General. Controls and operating mechanisms required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.27.	ANSI 309.1 General. Operable parts required to be accessible shall comply with Section 309.
309.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided.	4.27.2 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space complying with 4.2.4 that allows a forward or a parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at controls, dispensers, receptacles, and other operable equipment.	ANSI 309.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 shall be provided.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
309.3 Height. Operable parts shall be placed within one or more of the reach ranges specified in 308.	4.27.3 Height. The highest operable part of controls, dispensers, receptacles, and other operable equipment shall be placed within at least one of the reach ranges specified in 4.2.5 and 4.2.6. Electrical and communications system receptacles on walls shall be mounted no less than 15 in (380 mm) above the floor. EXCEPTION: These requirements do not apply where the use of special equipment dictates otherwise or where electrical and communications systems receptacles are not normally intended for use by building occupants.	ANSI 309.3 Height. Operable parts shall be placed within one or more of the reach ranges specified in Section 308.
309.4 Operation. Operable parts shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate operable parts shall be 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum. EXCEPTION: Gas pump nozzles shall not be required to provide operable parts that have an activating force of 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.	4.27.4 Operation. Controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N).	ANSI 309.4 Operation. Operable parts shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate operable parts shall be 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum. EXCEPTION: Gas pump nozzles shall not be required to provide operable parts that have an activating force of 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.
CHAPTER 4: ACCESSIBLE ROUTES		ANSI Chapter 4. Accessible Routes
401 General		ANSI 401 General
401.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 4 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.		ANSI 401.1 Scope. Accessible routes required by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 4.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
402 Accessible Routes	4.3 Accessible Route.	ANSI 402 Accessible Routes
402.1 General. Accessible routes shall comply with 402.	4.3.1 General. All walks, halls, corridors, aisles, skywalks, tunnels, and other spaces that are part of an accessible route shall comply with 4.3.	ANSI 402.1 General. Accessible routes shall comply with Section 402.
402.2 Components. Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following components: walking surfaces with a running slope not steeper than 1:20, doorways, ramps, curb ramps excluding the flared sides, elevators, and platform lifts. All components of an accessible route shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 4.		ANSI 402.2 Components. Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following components: Walking surfaces with a slope not steeper than 1:20, doors and doorways, ramps, curb ramps excluding the flared sides, elevators, and platform lifts. All components of an accessible route shall comply with the applicable portions of this standard.
403 Walking Surfaces		ANSI 403 Walking Surfaces
403.1 General. Walking surfaces that are a part of an accessible route shall comply with 403.		ANSI 403.1 General. Walking surfaces that are a part of an accessible route shall comply with Section 403.
403.2 Floor or Ground Surface. Floor or ground surfaces shall comply with 302.	4.1.2(4) Ground surfaces along accessible routes and in accessible spaces shall comply with 4.5.	ANSI 403.2 Floor Surface. Floor surfaces shall comply with Section 302.
	4.1.3(3) Ground and floor surfaces along accessible routes and in accessible rooms and spaces shall comply with 4.5.	
	4.3.6 Surface Textures. The surface of an accessible route shall comply with 4.5.	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
403.3 Slope. The running slope of walking surfaces shall not be steeper than 1:20. The cross slope of walking surfaces shall not be steeper than 1:48.	4.3.7 Slope. An accessible route with a running slope greater than 1:20 is a ramp and shall comply with 4.8. Nowhere shall the cross slope of an accessible route exceed 1:50.	ANSI 403.3 Slope. The running slope of walking surfaces shall not be steeper than 1:20. The cross slope of a walking surface shall not be steeper than 1:48.
403.4 Changes in Level. Changes in level shall comply with 303.	4.3.8 Changes in Levels. Changes in levels along an accessible route shall comply with 4.5.2. If an accessible route has changes in level greater than 1/2 in (13 mm), then a curb ramp, ramp, elevator, or platform lift (as permitted in 4.1.3 and 4.1.6) shall be provided that complies with 4.7, 4.8, 4.10, or 4.11, respectively. An accessible route does not include stairs, steps, or escalators. See definition of "egress, means of" in 3.5.	ANSI 403.4 Changes in Level. Changes in level shall comply with Section 303.
403.5 Clearances. Walking surfaces shall provide clearances complying with 403.5. EXCEPTION: Within employee work areas, clearances on common use circulation paths shall be permitted to be decreased by work area equipment provided that the decrease is essential to the function of the work being performed.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>403.5.1 Clear Width. Except as provided in 403.5.2 and 403.5.3, the clear width of walking surfaces shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: The clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided that reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum.</p>	<p>4.2.1 Wheelchair Passage Width. The minimum clear width for single wheelchair passage shall be 32 in (815 mm) at a point and 36 in (915 mm) continuously (see Fig. 1 and 24(e)).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 1 indicates the minimum clear passage width for a single wheelchair shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum along an accessible route, but may be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum at a point for a maximum depth of 24 inches (610 mm), such as at a doorway.</p>	<p>ANSI 403.5 Clear Width. Clear width of an accessible route shall comply with Table 403.5.</p>
	<p>4.3.3 Width. The minimum clear width of an accessible route shall be 36 in (915 mm) except at doors (see 4.13.5 and 4.13.6). If a person in a wheelchair must make a turn around an obstruction, the minimum clear width of the accessible route shall be as shown in Fig. 7(a) and (b).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 7(a) indicates a 90 degree turn can be made from a 36 inch (915 mm) wide passage into another 36 inch (915 mm) passage if the depth of each leg is a minimum of 48 inches (1220 mm) on the inside dimensions of the turn.</p> <p>Figure 7(b) indicates that a U-turn around an obstruction less than 48 inches (1220 mm) wide may be made if the passage width is a minimum of 42 inches (1065 mm) and the base of the U-turn space is a minimum of 48 inches (1220 mm) wide.</p>	

ANSI Table 403.5—Clear Width of an Accessible Route

Segment Length	Minimum Segment Width
≤ 24 inches (610 mm)	32 inches (815 mm) ¹
> 24 inches (610 mm)	36 inches (915 mm)

¹Consecutive segments of 32 inches (815 mm) in width must be separated by a route segment 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>403.5.2 Clear Width at Turn. Where the accessible route makes a 180 degree turn around an element which is less than 48 inches (1220 mm) wide, clear width shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum approaching the turn, 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum at the turn and 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum leaving the turn.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where the clear width at the turn is 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum compliance with 403.5.2 shall not be required.</p>	<p>See 4.33 Width</p>	<p>403.5.1 Clear Width at Turn. Where an accessible route makes a 180 degree turn around an object that is less than 48 inches (1220 mm) in width, clear widths shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum approaching the turn, 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum during the turn, and 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum leaving the turn.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Section 403.5.1 shall not apply where the clear width at the turn is 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.</p>
<p>403.5.3 Passing Spaces. An accessible route with a clear width less than 60 inches (1525 mm) shall provide passing spaces at intervals of 200 feet (61 m) maximum. Passing spaces shall be either: a space 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum; or, an intersection of two walking surfaces providing a T-shaped space complying with</p>	<p>4.2.2 Width for Wheelchair Passing. The minimum width for two wheelchairs to pass is 60 in (1525 mm) (see Fig. 2).</p> <p>NOTE: In Figure 2, the minimum clear width for passage of two wheelchairs is shown to be 60 inches minimum.</p>	<p>ANSI 403.5.2 Passing Space. An accessible route with a clear width less than 60 inches (1525 mm) shall provide passing spaces at intervals of 200 feet (61 m) maximum. Passing spaces shall be either a 60 inch (1525 mm) minimum by 60 inch (1525 mm) minimum space, or an intersection of two walking surfaces that provide a T-shaped turning</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
304.3.2 where the base and arms of the T-shaped space extend 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum beyond the intersection.	4.3.4 Passing Space. If an accessible route has less than 60 in (1525 mm) clear width, then passing spaces at least 60 in by 60 in (1525 mm by 1525 mm) shall be located at reasonable intervals not to exceed 200 ft (61 m). A T-intersection of two corridors or walks is an acceptable passing place.	space complying with Section 304.3.2, provided the base and arms of the T-shaped space extend 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum beyond the intersection.
403.6 Handrails. Where handrails are provided along walking surfaces with running slopes not steeper than 1:20 they shall comply with 505.		ANSI 403.6 Handrails. Where handrails are required at the side of a corridor they shall comply with Sections 505.4 through 505.9.
404 Doors, Doorways, and Gates	4.13 Doors.	ANSI 404 Doors and Doorways
404.1 General. Doors, doorways, and gates that are part of an accessible route shall comply with 404. EXCEPTION: Doors, doorways, and gates designed to be operated only by security personnel shall not be required to comply with 404.2.7, 404.2.8, 404.2.9, 404.3.2 and 404.3.4 through 404.3.7	4.13.1 General. Doors required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with the requirements of 4.13. 4.3.9 Doors. Doors along an accessible route shall comply with 4.13. 4.13.3 Gates. Gates, including ticket gates, shall meet all applicable specifications of 4.13. See also Appendix 11.1.1 EXCEPTION and 12.5.2(1) EXCEPTION	ANSI 404.1 General. Doors and doorways that are part of an accessible route shall comply with Section 404.
404.2 Manual Doors, Doorways, and Manual Gates. Manual doors and doorways and manual gates intended for user passage shall comply with 404.2.		ANSI 404.2 Manual Doors. Manual doors and doorways, and manual gates, including ticket gates, shall comply with the requirements of Section 404.2. EXCEPTION: Doors, doorways, and gates designed to be operated only by security

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		personnel shall not be required to comply with Sections 404.2.6, 404.2.7, and 404.2.8.
404.2.1 Revolving Doors, Gates, and Turnstiles. Revolving doors, revolving gates, and turnstiles shall not be part of an accessible route.	4.13.2 Revolving Doors and Turnstiles. Revolving doors or turnstiles shall not be the only means of passage at an accessible entrance or along an accessible route. An accessible gate or door shall be provided adjacent to the turnstile or revolving door and shall be so designed as to facilitate the same use pattern.	ANSI 402.3 Revolving Doors, Revolving Gates, and Turnstiles. Revolving doors, revolving gates, and turnstiles shall not be part of an accessible route.
404.2.2 Double-Leaf Doors and Gates. At least one of the active leaves of doorways with two leaves shall comply with 404.2.3 and 404.2.4.	4.13.4 Double-Leaf Doorways. If doorways have two independently operated door leaves, then at least one leaf shall meet the specifications in 4.13.5 and 4.13.6. That leaf shall be an active leaf.	ANSI 404.2.1 Double-Leaf Doors and Gates. At least one of the active leaves of doorways with two leaves shall comply with Sections 404.2.2 and 404.2.3.
404.2.3 Clear Width. Door openings shall provide a clear width of 32 inches (815 mm) minimum. Clear openings of doorways with swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees. Openings more than 24 inches (610 mm) deep shall provide a clear opening of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. There shall be no projections into the required clear opening width lower than 34 inches (865 mm) above the finish floor or ground. Projections into the clear opening width between 34 inches (865 mm) and 80 inches (2030 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall not exceed 4 inches (100 mm). EXCEPTIONS:	4.13.5 Clear Width. Doorways shall have a minimum clear opening of 32 in (815 mm) with the door open 90 degrees, measured between the face of the door and the opposite stop (see Fig. 24(a), (b), (c), and (d)). Openings more than 24 in (610 mm) in depth shall comply with 4.2.1 and 4.3.3 (see Fig. 24(e)). EXCEPTION: Doors not requiring full user passage, such as shallow closets, may have the clear opening reduced to 20 in (510 mm) minimum. NOTE: Figures 24(a) and 24(b) illustrate a 32 inch minimum opening on a hinged door, with Figure 24(a) demonstrating that the measurement is taken from the face of the door to the opposite stop.	ANSI 404.2.2 Clear Width. Doorways shall have a clear opening width of 32 inches (815 mm) minimum. Clear opening width of doorways with swinging doors shall be measured between the face of door and stop, with the door open 90 degrees. Openings, doors and doorways without doors more than 24 inches (610 mm) in depth shall provide a clear opening width of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. There shall be no projections into the clear opening width lower than 34 inches (865 mm) above the floor. Projections into the clear opening width between 34 inches (865 mm) and 80 inches (2030 mm) above the floor shall not exceed 4 inches (100 mm). EXCEPTIONS: See also IBC 1008.1.1 Door arrangement

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>Figure 24(c) shows a 32 inch minimum clear width of a sliding or pocket door, measured from the leading edge of the open door to the opposing stop/jamb. Figure 24(d) illustrates the same measurement for a retracted folding/accordion door.</p> <p>Figure 24(e) illustrates a doorway without a door. The clear width is 32 inches minimum, and the maximum depth of the opening is 24 inches.</p>	
1. In alterations, a projection of 5/8 inch (16 mm) maximum into the required clear width shall be permitted for the latch side stop.	<p>4.1.6(3)(d) Doors:</p> <p>(i) Where it is technically infeasible to comply with clear opening width requirements of 4.13.5, a projection of 5/8 in (16 mm) maximum will be permitted for the latch side stop.</p>	2. In alterations, a projection of 5/8 inch (16 mm) maximum into the required clear opening width shall be permitted for the latch side stop.
2. Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.		1. Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the floor.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>404.2.4 Maneuvering Clearances. Minimum maneuvering clearances at doors and gates shall comply with 404.2.4. Maneuvering clearances shall extend the full width of the doorway and the required latch side or hinge side clearance.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Entry doors to hospital patient rooms shall not be required to provide the clearance beyond the latch side of the door.</p>	<p>4.13.6 Maneuvering Clearances at Doors. Minimum maneuvering clearances at doors that are not automatic or power-assisted shall be as shown in Fig. 25. The floor or ground area within the required clearances shall be level and clear.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Entry doors to acute care hospital bedrooms for in-patients shall be exempted from the requirement for space at the latch side of the door (see dimension "x" in Fig. 25) if the door is at least 44 in (1120 mm) wide.</p> <p>NOTE: See description of figure 25 below New ADAAG Table 404.2.4.1 Maneuvering Clearances at Manual Swinging Doors and Gates</p>	<p>ANSI 404.2.3 Maneuvering Clearances at Doors. Minimum maneuvering clearances at doors shall comply with Section 404.2.3 and shall include the full clear opening width of the doorway.</p>
<p>404.2.4.1 Swinging Doors and Gates. Swinging doors and gates shall have maneuvering clearances complying with Table 404.2.4.1.</p>	<p>6.3(1) Each bedroom shall have a door that complies with 4.13.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Entry doors to acute care hospital bedrooms for in- patients shall be exempted from the requirement in 4.13.6 for maneuvering space at the latch side of the door if the door is at least 44 in (1120 mm) wide.</p>	<p>ANSI 404.2.3.1 Swinging Doors. Swinging doors shall have maneuvering clearances complying with Table 404.2.3.1.</p>

New ADAAG 404.2.4.1 Maneuvering Clearances at Manual Swinging Doors and Gates

Type of Use	Minimum Maneuvering Clearance
-------------	-------------------------------

Approach Direction	Door or Gate Side	Perpendicular to Doorway	Parallel to Doorway (beyond latch side unless noted)
From front	Pull	60 inches (1525 mm)	18 inches (455 mm)
From front	Push	48 inches (1220 mm)	0 inches (0 mm) ¹
From hinge side	Pull	60 inches (1525 mm)	36 inches (915 mm)
From hinge side	Pull	54 inches (1370 mm)	42 inches (1065 mm)
From hinge side	Push	42 inches (1065 mm) ²	22 inches (560 mm) ³
From latch side	Pull	48 inches (1220 mm) ⁴	24 inches (610 mm)
From latch side	Push	42 inches (1065 mm) ⁴	24 inches (610 mm)

1. Add 12 inches (305 mm) if closer and latch are provided.

2. Add 6 inches (150 mm) if closer and latch are provided.

3. Beyond hinge side.

4. Add 6 inches (150 mm) if closer is provided.

Figure 25

NOTE: Figure 25 indicates the following -- Diagram (a) Front Approaches -- Swinging Doors. Front approaches to pull side of swinging doors shall have maneuvering space that extends 18 in (455 mm) minimum beyond the latch side of the door and 60 in (1525 mm) minimum perpendicular to the doorway.

Front approaches to push side of swinging doors, equipped with both closer and latch, shall have maneuvering space that extends 12 in (305 mm) minimum beyond the latch side of the door and 48 in (1220 mm) minimum perpendicular to the doorway.

Front approaches to push side of swinging doors, not equipped with latch and closer, shall have maneuvering space that is the same width as door opening and extends 48 in (1220 mm) minimum perpendicular to the doorway.

Diagram (b) Hinge Side Approaches. Hinge-side approaches to pull side of swinging doors shall have maneuvering space that extends 36 in (915 mm) minimum beyond the latch side of the door if 60 in (1525 mm) minimum is provided perpendicular to the doorway or maneuvering space that extends 42 in (1065 mm) minimum beyond the latch side of the door shall be provided if 54 in (1370 mm) minimum is provided perpendicular to the doorway.

Hinge-side approaches to push side of swinging doors, not equipped with both latch and closer, shall have a maneuvering space of 54 in (1370 mm) minimum, parallel to the doorway and 42 in (1065 mm) minimum, perpendicular to the doorway.

Hinge side approaches to push side of swinging doors, equipped with both latch and closer, shall have maneuvering space of 54 in (1370 mm) minimum, parallel to the doorway, 48 in (1220 mm) minimum perpendicular to the doorway.

Diagram (c) Latch Side Approaches -- Swinging Doors. Latch-side approaches to pull side of swinging doors, with closers, shall have maneuvering

space that extends 24 in (610 mm) minimum beyond the latch side of the door and 54 in (1370 mm) minimum perpendicular to the doorway.

Latch-side approaches to pull side of swinging doors, not equipped with closers, shall have maneuvering space that extends 24 in (610 mm) minimum beyond the latch side of the door and 48 in (1220 mm) minimum perpendicular to the doorway.

Latch-side approaches to push side of swinging doors, with closers, shall have maneuvering space that extends 24 in (610 mm) minimum parallel to the doorway beyond the latch side of the door and 48 in (1220 mm) minimum perpendicular to the doorway.

Diagram (d) Front Approach -- Sliding Doors and Folding Doors. Front approaches to sliding doors and folding doors shall have maneuvering space that is the same width as the door opening and shall extend 48 in (1220 mm) minimum perpendicular to the doorway.

Diagram (e). Slide-side approaches to sliding doors and folding doors shall have a maneuvering space of 54 in (1370 mm) minimum, parallel to the doorway, and 42 in (1065 mm) minimum, perpendicular to the doorway.

Diagram (f) Latch Side Approach -- Sliding Doors and Folding Doors. Latch-side approaches to sliding doors and folding doors shall have a maneuvering space that extends 24 in (610 mm) minimum beyond the latch side of the door and extends 42 in (1065 mm) minimum perpendicular to the doorway.

Depending on the direction of approach, diagrams (a) through (f) illustrate minimum maneuvering space depths and latch side clearances for both push and pull sides of swinging, sliding and folding doors. (4.13.6).

Latch-side approaches to push side of swinging doors, not equipped with closers, shall have maneuvering space that extends 24 in (610 mm) minimum parallel to the doorway beyond the latch side of the door and 42 in (1065 mm) minimum perpendicular to the doorway.

ANSI Table 404.2.3.1—Maneuvering Clearances at Manual Swinging Doors

TYPE OF USE		MINIMUM MANEUVERING CLEARANCES	
Approach Direction	Door Side	Perpendicular to Doorway	Parallel to Doorway (beyond latch unless noted)
From front	Pull	60 inches (1525 mm)	18 inches (455 mm)
From front	Push	48 inches (1220 mm)	0 inches (0 mm) ³
From hinge side	Pull	60 inches (1525 mm)	36 inches (915 mm)
From hinge side	Pull	54 inches (1370 mm)	42 inches (1065 mm)
From hinge side	Push	42 inches (1065 mm) ¹	22 inches (560 mm) ^{3 & 4}
From latch side	Pull	48 inches (1220 mm) ²	24 inches (610 mm)

From latch side	Push	42 inches (1065 mm) ²	24 inches (610 mm)
-----------------	------	----------------------------------	--------------------

¹Add 6 inches (150 mm) if closer and latch provided.

²Add 6 inches (150 mm) if closer provided.

³Add 12 inches (305 mm) beyond latch if closer and latch provided.

⁴Beyond hinge side.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
404.2.4.2 Doorways without Doors or Gates, Sliding Doors, and Folding Doors. Doorways less than 36 inches (915 mm) wide without doors or gates, sliding doors, or folding doors shall have maneuvering clearances complying with Table 404.2.4.2.		ANSI 404.2.3.3 Doorways without Doors. Doorways without doors that are less than 36 inches (915 mm) in width shall have maneuvering clearances complying with Table 404.2.3.3
		ANSI 404.2.3.2 Sliding and Folding Doors. Sliding doors and folding doors shall have maneuvering clearances complying with Table 404.2.3.2.

New ADAAG 404.2.4.2 Maneuvering Clearances at Doorways without Doors or Gates, Manual Sliding Doors, and Manual Folding Doors

Approach Direction	Minimum Maneuvering Clearance	
	Perpendicular to Doorway	Parallel to Doorway (beyond stop/latch side unless noted)
From Front	48 inches (1220 mm)	0 inches (0 mm)
From side ¹	42 inches (1065 mm)	0 inches (0 mm)
From pocket/hinge side	42 inches (1065 mm)	22 inches (560 mm) ²
From stop/latch side	42 inches (1065 mm)	24 inches (610 mm)

1. Doorway with no door only.

2. Beyond pocket/hinge side.

ANSI Table 404.2.3.3—Maneuvering Clearances for Doorways without Doors

Approach Direction	MINIMUM MANEUVERING CLEARANCES Perpendicular to Doorway
From front	48 inches (1220 mm)

From side	42 inches (1065 mm)
-----------	---------------------

ANSI Table 404.2.3.2—Maneuvering Clearances at Sliding and Folding Doors

Approach Direction	MINIMUM MANEUVERING CLEARANCES	
	Perpendicular to Doorway	Parallel to Doorway(beyond stop or latch side unless noted)
From front	48 inches (1220 mm)	0 inches (0 mm)
From nonlatch side	42 inches (1065 mm)	22 inches (560 mm) ¹
From latch side	42 inches (1065 mm)	24 inches (610 mm)

¹Beyond pocket or hinge side.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
404.2.4.3 Recessed Doors and Gates. Maneuvering clearances for forward approach shall be provided when any obstruction within 18 inches (455 mm) of the latch side of a doorway projects more than 8 inches (205 mm) beyond the face of the door, measured perpendicular to the face of the door or gate.		ANSI 404.2.3.4 Recessed Doors. Where any obstruction within 18 inches (455 mm) of the latch side of a doorway projects more than 8 inches (205 mm) beyond the face of the door, measured perpendicular to the face of the door, maneuvering clearances for a forward approach shall be provided.
404.2.4.4 Floor or Ground Surface. Floor or ground surface within required maneuvering clearances shall comply with 302. Changes in level are not permitted. EXCEPTIONS: 1. Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted. 2. Changes in level at thresholds complying with 404.2.5 shall be permitted.	4.5.2 Changes in Level. Changes in level up to 1/4 in (6 mm) may be vertical and without edge treatment (see Fig. 7(c)). Changes in level between 1/4 in and 1/2 in (6 mm and 13 mm) shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2 (see Fig. 7(d)). Changes in level greater than 1/2 in (13 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp that complies with 4.7 or 4.8. 4.13.6 Maneuvering Clearances at Doors. . . . The floor or ground area within the required	ANSI 404.2.3.5 Floor Surface. Floor surface within the maneuvering clearances shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48 and shall comply with Section 302.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>clearances shall be level and clear.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 7(c) is a cross section drawing showing a maximum 1/4 inch vertical change in level.</p> <p>Figure 7(d) is a cross section drawing showing a change in level 1/4 to 1/2 inch high with a 1:2 slope.</p>	
<p>404.2.5 Thresholds. Thresholds, if provided at doorways, shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) high maximum. Raised thresholds and changes in level at doorways shall comply with 302 and 303.</p>	<p>4.13.8 Thresholds at Doorways. Thresholds at doorways shall not exceed 3/4 in (19 mm) in height for exterior sliding doors or 1/2 in (13 mm) for other types of doors. Raised thresholds and floor level changes at accessible doorways shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2 (see 4.5.2).</p>	<p>IBC 1008.1.6 Thresholds. Thresholds at doorways shall not exceed $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) in height for sliding doors serving dwelling units or $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) for other doors. Raised thresholds and floor level changes greater than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) at doorways shall be beveled with a slope not greater than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope).</p> <p>ANSI 404.2.4 Thresholds at Doorways. If provided, thresholds at doorways shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum in height. Raised thresholds and changes in level at doorways shall comply with Sections 302 and 303.</p>
<p>EXCEPTION: Existing or altered thresholds 3/4 inch (19 mm) high maximum that have a beveled edge on each side with a slope not steeper than 1:2 shall not be required to comply with 404.2.5.</p>	<p>4.1.6(3)(d) (ii) If existing thresholds are 3/4 in (19 mm) high or less, and have (or are modified to have) a beveled edge on each side, they may remain.</p>	<p>EXCEPTION: Section 404.2.4 shall not apply to existing thresholds or altered thresholds 3/4 inch (19 mm) maximum in height that have a beveled edge on each side with a maximum slope of 1:2 for the height exceeding 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).</p>
		<p>IBC 3409.7.12 Thresholds. The maximum height of thresholds at doorways shall be $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19.1 mm). Such thresholds shall have beveled edges on each side.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>404.2.6 Doors in Series and Gates in Series. The distance between two hinged or pivoted doors in series and gates in series shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum plus the width of doors or gates swinging into the space.</p>	<p>4.13.7 Two Doors in Series. The minimum space between two hinged or pivoted doors in series shall be 48 in (1220 mm) plus the width of any door swinging into the space. Doors in series shall swing either in the same direction or away from the space between the doors (see Fig. 26).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 26(a) illustrates two hinged doors in series, <i>i.e.</i>, located in parallel walls and in a straight line from one another. The doors swing in the same direction. The distance between the leading edge of the first door and the wall in which the second door is located is 48 inches minimum.</p> <p>Figure 26(b) shows the same vestibule condition, but with both doors swinging out of the vestibule. In this instance, the clear space is 48 inches minimum, measured between the opposing wall surfaces.</p>	<p>ANSI 404.2.5 Two Doors in Series. Distance between two hinged or pivoted doors in series shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum plus the width of any door swinging into the space. The space between the doors shall provide a turning space complying with Section 304.</p> <p>See also IBC 1008.1.7 Door arrangement.</p>
<p>404.2.7 Door and Gate Hardware. Handles, pulls, latches, locks, and other operable parts on doors and gates shall comply with 309.4. Operable parts of such hardware shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Where sliding doors are in the fully open position, operating hardware shall be exposed and usable from both sides.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. Existing locks shall be permitted in any location at existing glazed doors without stiles, existing overhead rolling doors or grilles, and similar existing doors or grilles that are</p>	<p>4.13.9 Door Hardware. Handles, pulls, latches, locks, and other operating devices on accessible doors shall have a shape that is easy to grasp with one hand and does not require tight grasping, tight pinching, or twisting of the wrist to operate. Lever-operated mechanisms, push-type mechanisms, and U-shaped handles are acceptable designs. When sliding doors are fully open, operating hardware shall be exposed and usable from both sides. Hardware required for accessible door passage shall be mounted no higher than 48 in (1220 mm) above finished floor.</p>	<p>ANSI 404.2.6 Door Hardware. Handles, pulls, latches, locks, and other operable parts on accessible doors shall have a shape that is easy to grasp with one hand and does not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist to operate. Operable parts of such hardware shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor. Where sliding doors are in the fully open position, operating hardware shall be exposed and usable from both sides.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Locks used only for security purposes and not used for normal operation are permitted in any location.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>designed with locks that are activated only at the top or bottom rail.</p> <p>2. Access gates in barrier walls and fences protecting pools, spas, and hot tubs shall be permitted to have operable parts of the release of latch on self-latching devices at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground provided the self-latching devices are not also self-locking devices and operated by means of a key, electronic opener, or integral combination lock.</p>		<p>See also IBC 1008.1.8 Door operations</p>
<p>404.2.8 Closing Speed. Door and gate closing speed shall comply with 404.2.8.</p>		<p>ANSI 404.2.7 Closing Speed.</p>
<p>404.2.8.1 Door Closers and Gate Closers. Door closers and gate closers shall be adjusted so that from an open position of 90 degrees, the time required to move the door to a position of 12 degrees from the latch is 5 seconds minimum.</p>	<p>4.13.10 Door Closers. If a door has a closer, then the sweep period of the closer shall be adjusted so that from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 3 seconds to move to a point 3 in (75 mm) from the latch, measured to the leading edge of the door.</p>	<p>ANSI 404.2.7.1 Door Closers. Door closers shall be adjusted so that from an open position of 90 degrees, the time required to move the door to an open position of 12 degrees shall be 5 seconds minimum.</p>
<p>404.2.8.2 Spring Hinges. Door and gate spring hinges shall be adjusted so that from the open position of 70 degrees, the door or gate shall move to the closed position in 1.5 seconds minimum.</p>		<p>ANSI 404.2.7.2 Spring Hinges. Door spring hinges shall be adjusted so that from the open position of 70 degrees, the door shall move to the closed position in 1.5 seconds minimum.</p>
<p>404.2.9 Door and Gate Opening Force. Fire doors shall have a minimum opening force allowable by the appropriate administrative authority. The force for pushing or pulling open a door or gate other than fire doors shall be as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Interior hinged doors and gates: 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum. 2. Sliding or folding doors: 5 pounds (22.2 N) 	<p>4.13.11 Door Opening Force. The maximum force for pushing or pulling open a door shall be as follows:</p> <p>(1) Fire doors shall have the minimum opening force allowable by the appropriate administrative authority.</p>	<p>ANSI 404.2.8 Door–Opening Force. Fire doors shall have the minimum opening force allowable by the appropriate administrative authority. The force for pushing or pulling open doors other than fire doors shall be as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Interior hinged door: 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum 2. Sliding or folding door: 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>maximum. These forces do not apply to the force required to retract latch bolts or disengage other devices that hold the door or gate in a closed position.</p>	<p>(2) Other doors. (a) exterior hinged doors: (Reserved). (b) interior hinged doors: 5 lbf (22.2N) (c) sliding or folding doors: 5 lbf (22.2N)</p> <p>These forces do not apply to the force required to retract latch bolts or disengage other devices that may hold the door in a closed position.</p>	<p>These forces do not apply to the force required to retract latch bolts or disengage other devices that hold the door in a closed position.</p> <p>See also IBC 1008.1.2 Door swing</p>
<p>404.2.10 Door and Gate Surfaces. Swinging door and gate surfaces within 10 inches (255 mm) of the finish floor or ground measured vertically shall have a smooth surface on the push side extending the full width of the door or gate. Parts creating horizontal or vertical joints in these surfaces shall be within 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of the same plane as the other. Cavities created by added kick plates shall be capped.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Sliding doors shall not be required to comply with 404.2.10. 2. Tempered glass doors without stiles and having a bottom rail or shoe with the top leading edge tapered at 60 degrees minimum from the horizontal shall not be required to meet the 10 inch (255 mm) bottom smooth surface height requirement. 3. Doors and gates that do not extend to within 10 inches (255 mm) of the finish floor or ground shall not be required to comply with 404.2.10. 4. Existing doors and gates without smooth surfaces within 10 inches (255 mm) of the finish floor or ground shall not be required to 	<p>10.3.1(7) Automatic fare vending, collection and adjustment (e.g., add-fare) systems shall. . . Gates which must be pushed open by wheelchair or mobility aid users shall have a smooth continuous surface extending from 2 inches above the floor to 27 inches above the floor and shall comply with 4.13. . . .</p>	<p>ANSI 404.2.9 Door Surface. Door surfaces within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor, measured vertically, shall be a smooth surface on the push side extending the full width of the door. Parts creating horizontal or vertical joints in such surface shall be within 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of the same plane as the other. Cavities created by added kick plates shall be capped.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Sliding doors. 2. Tempered glass doors without stiles and having a bottom rail or shoe with the top leading edge tapered at no less than 60 degrees from the horizontal shall not be required to meet the 10 inch (255 mm) bottom rail height requirement. 3. Doors that do not extend to within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
provide smooth surfaces complying with 404.2.10 provided that if added kick plates are installed, cavities created by such kick plates are capped.		
<p>404.2.11 Vision Lights. Doors, gates, and side lights adjacent to doors or gates, containing one or more glazing panels that permit viewing through the panels shall have the bottom of at least one glazed panel located 43 inches (1090 mm) maximum above the finish floor.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Vision lights with the lowest part more than 66 inches (1675 mm) from the finish floor or ground shall not be required to comply with 404.2.11.</p>		<p>ANSI 404.2.10 Vision Lites. Doors and sidelites adjacent to doors containing one or more glazing panels that permit viewing through the panels shall have the bottom of at least one panel on either the door or an adjacent sidelite 43 inches (1090 mm) maximum above the floor.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Vision lites with the lowest part more than 66 inches (1675 mm) above the floor are not required to comply with Section 404.2.10.</p>
<p>404.3 Automatic and Power-Assisted Doors and Gates. Automatic doors and automatic gates shall comply with 404.3. Full-powered automatic doors shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.10 (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1). Low-energy and power-assisted doors shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19 (1997 or 2002 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1).</p>	<p>4.13.12 Automatic Doors and Power-Assisted Doors. If an automatic door is used, then it shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.10-1985. Slowly opening, low-powered, automatic doors shall comply with ANSI A156.19-1984. Such doors shall not open to back check faster than 3 seconds and shall require no more than 15 lbf (66.6N) to stop door movement. If a power-assisted door is used, its door-opening force shall comply with 4.13.11 and its closing shall conform to the requirements in ANSI A156.19-1984.</p>	<p>ANSI 404.3 Automatic Doors. Automatic doors and automatic gates shall comply with Section 404.3. Full powered automatic doors shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.10 listed in Section 105.2.4. Power-assist and low-energy doors shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19 listed in Section 105.2.3.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Doors, doorways, and gates designed to be operated only by security personnel shall not be required to comply with Sections 404.3.2, 404.3.4, and 404.3.5. See also IBC 1008.1.3.2 Power-operated doors and IBC 1008.1.3.3 Horizontal sliding doors</p>
<p>404.3.1 Clear Width. Doorways shall provide a clear opening of 32 inches (815 mm) minimum in power-on and power-off mode. The minimum clear width for automatic door systems in a doorway shall be based on the</p>	<p>4.13.5 Clear Width. Doorways shall have a minimum clear opening of 32 in (815 mm) with the door open 90 degrees, measured between the face of the door and the opposite stop (see Fig. 24(a), (b), (c), and (d)). Openings more</p>	<p>ANSI 404.3.1 Clear Opening Width. Doorways shall have a clear opening width of 32 inches (815 mm) in power-on and power-off mode. The minimum clear opening width for automatic door systems shall be based on the</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>clear opening provided by all leaves in the open position.</p>	<p>than 24 in (610 mm) in depth shall comply with 4.2.1 and 4.3.3 (see Fig. 24(e)).</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Doors not requiring full user passage, such as shallow closets, may have the clear opening reduced to 20 in (510 mm) minimum.</p> <p>NOTE: Figures 24(a) and 24(b) illustrate a 32 inch minimum opening on a hinged door, with Figure 24(a) demonstrating that the measurement is taken from the face of the door to the opposite stop.</p> <p>Figure 24(c) shows a 32 inch minimum clear width of a sliding or pocket door, measured from the leading edge of the open door to the opposing stop/jamb. Figure 24(d) illustrates the same measurement for a retracted folding/accordion door.</p> <p>Figure 24(e) illustrates a doorway without a door. The clear width is 32 inches minimum, and the maximum depth of the opening is 24 inches.</p>	<p>clear opening width provided with all leaves in the open position.</p>
<p>404.3.2 Maneuvering Clearance. Clearances at power-assisted doors and gates shall comply with 404.2.4. Clearances at automatic doors and gates without standby power and serving an accessible means of egress shall comply with 404.2.4.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where automatic doors and gates remain open in the power-off condition, compliance with 404.2.4 shall not be required.</p>		<p>ANSI 404.3.2 Maneuvering Clearances. Maneuvering clearances at power-assisted doors shall comply with Section 404.2.3.</p>
<p>404.3.3 Thresholds. Thresholds and changes in level at doorways shall comply with 404.2.5.</p>	<p>4.13.8 Thresholds at Doorways. Thresholds at doorways shall not exceed 3/4 in (19 mm) in height for exterior sliding doors or 1/2 in (13</p>	<p>ANSI 404.3.3 Thresholds. Thresholds and changes in level at doorways shall comply with Section 404.2.4.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	mm) for other types of doors. Raised thresholds and floor level changes at accessible doorways shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2 (see 4.5.2).	
404.3.4 Doors in Series and Gates in Series. Doors in series and gates in series shall comply with 404.2.6.	<p>4.13.7 Two Doors in Series. The minimum space between two hinged or pivoted doors in series shall be 48 in (1220 mm) plus the width of any door swinging into the space. Doors in series shall swing either in the same direction or away from the space between the doors (see Fig. 26).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 26(a) illustrates two hinged doors in series, <i>i.e.</i>, located in parallel walls and in a straight line from one another. The doors swing in the same direction. The distance between the leading edge of the first door and the wall in which the second door is located is 48 inches minimum.</p> <p>Figure 26(b) shows the same vestibule condition, but with both doors swinging out of the vestibule. In this instance, the clear space is 48 inches minimum, measured between the opposing wall surfaces.</p>	ANSI 404.3.4 Two Doors in Series. Doors in series shall comply with Section 404.2.5.
404.3.5 Controls. Manually operated controls shall comply with 309. The clear floor space adjacent to the control shall be located beyond the arc of the door swing.	4.1.3(13) Controls and operating mechanisms in accessible spaces, along accessible routes, or as parts of accessible elements (for example, light switches and dispenser controls) shall comply with 4.27.	ANSI 404.3.5 Control Switches. Manually operated control switches shall comply with Section 309. The clear floor space adjacent to the control switch shall be located beyond the arc of the door swing.
404.3.6 Break Out Opening. Where doors and gates without standby power are a part of a means of egress, the clear break out opening at swinging or sliding doors and gates shall be		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>32 inches (815 mm) minimum when operated in emergency mode.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where manual swinging doors and gates comply with 404.2 and serve the same means of egress compliance with 404.3.6 shall not be required.</p>		
<p>404.3.7 Revolving Doors, Revolving Gates, and Turnstiles. Revolving doors, revolving gates, and turnstiles shall not be part of an accessible route.</p>	<p>4.13.2 Revolving Doors and Turnstiles. Revolving doors or turnstiles shall not be the only means of passage at an accessible entrance or along an accessible route. An accessible gate or door shall be provided adjacent to the turnstile or revolving door and shall be so designed as to facilitate the same use pattern.</p>	
<p>405 Ramps</p>	<p>4.8 Ramps.</p>	<p>ANSI 405 Ramps</p> <p>See also IBC 1010 Ramps</p>
<p>405.1 General. Ramps on accessible routes shall comply with 405.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In assembly areas, aisle ramps adjacent to seating and not serving elements required to be on an accessible route shall not be required to comply with 405.</p>	<p>4.8.1 General. Any part of an accessible route with a slope greater than 1:20 shall be considered a ramp and shall comply with 4.8.</p>	<p>ANSI 405.1 General. Ramps along accessible routes shall comply with Section 405.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>405.2 Slope. Ramp runs shall have a running slope not steeper than 1:12.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In existing sites, buildings, and facilities, ramps shall be permitted to have running slopes steeper than 1:12 complying with Table 405.2 where such slopes are necessary due to space limitations.</p>	<p>4.8.2 Slope and Rise. The least possible slope shall be used for any ramp. The maximum slope of a ramp in new construction shall be 1:12. The maximum rise for any run shall be 30 in (760 mm) (see Fig. 16). Curb ramps and ramps to be constructed on existing sites or in existing buildings or facilities may have slopes and rises as allowed in 4.1.6(3)(a) if space limitations prohibit the use of a 1:12 slope or less.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 16 indicates that if the slope of a ramp is between 1:12 and 1:16, the maximum rise shall be 30 inches (760 mm) and the maximum horizontal run shall be 30 feet (9 m). If the slope of the ramp is between 1:16 and 1:20, the maximum rise shall be 30 inches (760 mm) and the maximum horizontal run shall be 40 feet (12 m).</p>	<p>ANSI 405.2 Slope. Ramp runs shall have a running slope not steeper than 1:12.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In existing buildings or facilities, ramps shall be permitted to have slopes steeper than 1:12 complying with Table 405.2 where such slopes are necessary due to space limitations.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>4.1.6(3)(a) Ramps: Curb ramps and interior or exterior ramps to be constructed on sites or in existing buildings or facilities where space limitations prohibit the use of a 1:12 slope or less may have slopes and rises as follows:</p> <p>(i) A slope between 1:10 and 1:12 is allowed for a maximum rise of 6 inches (150 mm).</p> <p>(ii) A slope between 1:8 and 1:10 is allowed for a maximum rise of 3 inches (75 mm). A slope steeper than 1:8 is not allowed.</p> <p>4.1.7 (3) Historic Preservation: Minimum Requirements:</p> <p>(a) At least one accessible route complying with 4.3 from a site access point to an accessible entrance shall be provided.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: A ramp with a slope no greater than 1:6 for a run not to exceed 2 ft (610 mm) may be used as part of an accessible route to an entrance.</p>	

New ADAAG 405.2 Maximum Ramp Slope and Rise for Existing Sites, Buildings, and Facilities

Slope ¹	Maximum Rise
Steeper than 1:10 but not steeper than 1:8	3 inches (75 mm)
Steeper than 1:12 but not steeper than 1:10	6 inches (150 mm)

¹ A slope steeper than 1:8 is prohibited.

ANSI Table 405.2—Allowable Ramp Dimensions for Construction in Existing Sites, Buildings, and Facilities

Slope ¹	Maximum Rise
Steeper than 1:10 but not steeper than 1:8	3 inches (75 mm)
Steeper than 1:12 but not steeper than 1:10	6 inches (150 mm)

¹A slope steeper than 1:8 shall not be permitted.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
405.3 Cross Slope. Cross slope of ramp runs shall not be steeper than 1:48.	4.8.6 Cross Slope and Surfaces. The cross slope of ramp surfaces shall be no greater than 1:50. Ramp surfaces shall comply with 4.5.	ANSI 405.3 Cross Slope. Cross slope of ramp runs shall not be steeper than 1:48.
405.4 Floor or Ground Surfaces. Floor or ground surfaces of ramp runs shall comply with 302. Changes in level other than the running slope and cross slope are not permitted on ramp runs.		ANSI 405.4 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces of ramp runs shall comply with Section 302.
405.5 Clear Width. The clear width of a ramp run and, where handrails are provided, the clear width between handrails shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. EXCEPTION: Within employee work areas, the required clear width of ramps that are a part of common use circulation paths shall be permitted to be decreased by work area equipment provided that the decrease is essential to the function of the work being performed.	4.8.3 Clear Width. The minimum clear width of a ramp shall be 36 in (915 mm).	ANSI 405.5 Clear Width. The clear width of a ramp run shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. Where handrails are provided on the ramp run, the clear width shall be measured between the handrails.
405.6 Rise. The rise for any ramp run shall be 30 inches (760 mm) maximum.	See 4.8.2	ANSI 405.6 Rise. The rise for any ramp run shall be 30 inches (760 mm) maximum.
405.7 Landings. Ramps shall have landings at the top and the bottom of each ramp run. Landings shall comply with 405.7.	4.8.4 Landings. Ramps shall have level landings at bottom and top of each ramp and each ramp run. Landings shall have the following features:	ANSI 405.7 Landings. Ramps shall have landings at bottom and top of each ramp run. Landings shall comply with Section 405.7.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
405.7.1 Slope. Landings shall comply with 302. Changes in level are not permitted. EXCEPTION: Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.	4.2.4.3 Surfaces for Wheelchair Spaces. Clear floor or ground spaces for wheelchairs shall comply with 4.5. . 4.13.6 Maneuvering Clearances at Doors. . . . The floor or ground area within the required clearances shall be level and clear.	ANSI 405.7.1 Slope. Landings shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48 and shall comply with Section 302.
405.7.2 Width. The landing clear width shall be at least as wide as the widest ramp run leading to the landing.	(1) The landing shall be at least as wide as the ramp run leading to it.	ANSI 405.7.2 Width. Clear width of landings shall be at least as wide as the widest ramp run leading to the landing.
405.7.3 Length. The landing clear length shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) long minimum.	(2) The landing length shall be a minimum of 60 in (1525 mm) clear.	ANSI 405.7.3 Length. Landings shall have a clear length of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.
405.7.4 Change in Direction. Ramps that change direction between runs at landings shall have a clear landing 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.	(3) If ramps change direction at landings, the minimum landing size shall be 60 in by 60 in (1525 mm by 1525 mm).	ANSI 405.7.4 Change in Direction. Ramps that change direction at ramp landings shall be sized to provide a turning space complying with Section 304.3.
405.7.5 Doorways. Where doorways are located adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearances required by 404.2.4 and 404.3.2 shall be permitted to overlap the required landing area.	(4) If a doorway is located at a landing, then the area in front of the doorway shall comply with 4.13.6.	ANSI 405.7.5 Doorways. Where doorways are adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearances required by Sections 404.2.3 and 404.3.2 shall be permitted to overlap the landing area. Where doors that are subject to locking are adjacent to a ramp landing, landings shall be sized to provide a turning space complying with Section 304.3.
405.8 Handrails. Ramp runs with a rise greater than 6 inches (150 mm) shall have handrails complying with 505.	4.8.5 Handrails. If a ramp run has a rise greater than 6 in (150 mm) or a horizontal projection greater than 72 in (1830 mm), then	ANSI 405.8 Handrails. Ramp runs with a rise greater than 6 inches (150 mm) shall have handrails complying with Section 505.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>EXCEPTION: Within employee work areas, handrails shall not be required where ramps that are part of common use circulation paths are designed to permit the installation of handrails complying with 505. Ramps not subject to the exception to 405.5 shall be designed to maintain a 36 inch (915 mm) minimum clear width when handrails are installed.</p>	<p>it shall have handrails on both sides. Handrails are not required on curb ramps or adjacent to seating in assembly areas. . . .</p>	
<p>405.9 Edge Protection. Edge protection complying with 405.9.1 or 405.9.2 shall be provided on each side of ramp runs and at each side of ramp landings.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Edge protection shall not be required on ramps that are not required to have handrails and have sides complying with 406.3. 2. Edge protection shall not be required on the sides of ramp landings serving an adjoining ramp run or stairway. 3. Edge protection shall not be required on the sides of ramp landings having a vertical drop-off of 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum within 10 inches (255 mm) horizontally of the minimum landing area specified in 405.7. 	<p>4.8.7 Edge Protection. Ramps and landings with drop-offs shall have curbs, walls, railings, or projecting surfaces that prevent people from slipping off the ramp. Curbs shall be a minimum of 2 in (50 mm) high (see Fig. 17).</p>	<p>ANSI 405.9 Edge Protection. Edge protection complying with Section 405.9.1 or 405.9.2 shall be provided on each side of ramp runs and at each side of ramp landings.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ramps not required to have handrails where curb ramp flares complying with Section 406.3 are provided. 2. Sides of ramp landings serving an adjoining ramp run or stairway. 3. Sides of ramp landings having a vertical drop-off of 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum within 10 inches (255 mm) horizontally of the minimum landing area.
<p>405.9.1 Extended Floor or Ground Surface. The floor or ground surface of the ramp run or landing shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of a handrail complying with 505.</p>		<p>ANSI 405.9.1 Extended Floor Surface. The floor surface of the ramp run or landing shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of a handrail complying with 505.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
405.9.2 Curb or Barrier. A curb or barrier shall be provided that prevents the passage of a 4 inch (100 mm) diameter sphere, where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (100 mm) of the finish floor or ground surface.		ANSI 405.9.2 Curb or Barrier. A curb or barrier shall be provided that prevents the passage of a 4-inch (100 mm) diameter sphere where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (100 mm) of the floor.
405.10 Wet Conditions. Landings subject to wet conditions shall be designed to prevent the accumulation of water.	4.8.8 Outdoor Conditions. Outdoor ramps and their approaches shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on walking surfaces.	ANSI 405.10 Wet Conditions. Landings subject to wet conditions shall be designed to prevent the accumulation of water.
406 Curb Ramps	4.7 Curb Ramps.	ANSI 406 Curb Ramps
406.1 General. Curb ramps on accessible routes shall comply with 406, 405.2 through 405.5, and 405.10.	4.7.1 Location. Curb ramps complying with 4.7 shall be provided wherever an accessible route crosses a curb	
	4.3.7 Slope. An accessible route with a running slope greater than 1:20 is a ramp and shall comply with 4.8. Nowhere shall the cross slope of an accessible route exceed 1:50.	
	4.7.3 Width. The minimum width of a curb ramp shall be 36 in (915 mm), exclusive of flared sides.	
	4.7.4 Surface. Surfaces of curb ramps shall comply with 4.5.	
	4.8.8 Outdoor Conditions. Outdoor ramps and their approaches shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on walking surfaces.	
406.2 Counter Slope. Counter slopes of adjoining gutters and road surfaces immediately adjacent to the curb ramp shall not be steeper than 1:20. The adjacent	4.7.2 Slope. Slopes of curb ramps shall comply with 4.8.2. The slope shall be measured as shown in Fig. 11. Transitions from ramps to walks, gutters, or streets shall	ANSI 406.2 Counter Slope. Counter slopes of adjoining gutters and road surfaces immediately adjacent to the curb ramp shall not be steeper than 1:20. The adjacent

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>surfaces at transitions at curb ramps to walks, gutters, and streets shall be at the same level.</p>	<p>be flush and free of abrupt changes. Maximum slopes of adjoining gutters, road surface immediately adjacent to the curb ramp, or accessible route shall not exceed 1:20.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 11 indicates the ramp slope is a ratio equal to the vertical rise (y) divided by the horizontal run (x). It is equal to the tangent of the angle that the plane of the ramp surface makes with a horizontal (level) plane. For a curb ramp, the adjoining slope at walk or street shall not exceed 1:20.</p>	<p>surfaces at transitions at curb ramps to walks, gutters and streets shall be at the same level.</p>
<p>406.3 Sides of Curb Ramps. Where provided, curb ramp flares shall not be steeper than 1:10.</p>	<p>4.7.5 Sides of Curb Ramps. If a curb ramp is located where pedestrians must walk across the ramp, or where it is not protected by handrails or guardrails, it shall have flared sides; the maximum slope of the flare shall be 1:10 (see Fig. 12(a)). Curb ramps with returned curbs may be used where pedestrians would not normally walk across the ramp (see Fig. 12(b)).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 12(a) shows a typical curb ramp, cut into a walkway perpendicular to the curb face, with flared sides having a maximum slope of 1:10. The landing at the top, measured from the top of the ramp to the edge of the walkway or closest obstruction is denoted as "x". If x, the landing depth at the top of a curb ramp, is less than 48 inches, then the slope of the flared side shall not exceed 1:12.</p> <p>Figure 12(b) indicates that where the curb ramp is completely contained within a planting</p>	<p>ANSI 406.3 Sides of Curb Ramps. Where provided, curb ramp flares shall not be steeper than 1:10.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	strip or other non-walking surface, so that pedestrians would not normally cross the sides, the curb ramp sides can have steep sides including vertical returned curbs.	
<p>406.4 Landings. Landings shall be provided at the tops of curb ramps. The landing clear length shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. The landing clear width shall be at least as wide as the curb ramp, excluding flared sides, leading to the landing.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In alterations, where there is no landing at the top of curb ramps, curb ramp flares shall be provided and shall not be steeper than 1:12.</p>	<p>4.3.7 Slope. An accessible route with a running slope greater than 1:20 is a ramp and shall comply with 4.8. Nowhere shall the cross slope of an accessible route exceed 1:50.</p>	<p>ANSI 406.7 Landings. Landings shall be provided at the tops of curb ramps. The clear length of the landing shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. The clear width of the landing shall be at least as wide as the curb ramp, excluding flared sides, leading to the landing.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In alterations, where there is no landing at the top of curb ramps, curb ramp flares shall be provided and shall not be steeper than 1:12.</p>
<p>406.5 Location. Curb ramps and the flared sides of curb ramps shall be located so that they do not project into vehicular traffic lanes, parking spaces, or parking access aisles. Curb ramps at marked crossings shall be wholly contained within the markings, excluding any flared sides.</p>	<p>4.7.6 Built-up Curb Ramps. Built-up curb ramps shall be located so that they do not project into vehicular traffic lanes (see Fig. 13).</p> <p>NOTE: In Figure 13, a built-up curb ramp extends outward from the curb and slopes to the ground surface. The sides must also be tapered from the ramp surface to the ground, with a maximum slope of 1:10, so that there are no drop-offs along the edges.</p>	<p>ANSI 406.6 Location. Curb ramps and the flared sides of curb ramps shall be located so they do not project into vehicular traffic lanes, parking spaces, or parking access aisles. Curb ramps at marked crossings shall be wholly contained within the markings, excluding any flared sides.</p>
	<p>4.7.9 Location at Marked Crossings. Curb ramps at marked crossings shall be wholly contained within the markings, excluding any flared sides (see Fig. 15).</p>	
	<p>4.7.8 Obstructions. Curb ramps shall be located or protected to prevent their obstruction by parked vehicles</p>	<p>ANSI 406.8 Obstructions. Curb ramps shall be located or protected to prevent their obstruction by parked vehicles.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 406.9 Handrails. Handrails are not required on curb ramps.
<p>406.6 Diagonal Curb Ramps. Diagonal or corner type curb ramps with returned curbs or other well-defined edges shall have the edges parallel to the direction of pedestrian flow. The bottom of diagonal curb ramps shall have a clear space 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum outside active traffic lanes of the roadway. Diagonal curb ramps provided at marked crossings shall provide the 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum clear space within the markings. Diagonal curb ramps with flared sides shall have a segment of curb 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum located on each side of the curb ramp and within the marked crossing.</p>	<p>4.7.10 Diagonal Curb Ramps. If diagonal (or corner type) curb ramps have returned curbs or other well-defined edges, such edges shall be parallel to the direction of pedestrian flow. The bottom of diagonal curb ramps shall have 48 in (1220 mm) minimum clear space as shown in Fig. 15(c) and (d). If diagonal curb ramps are provided at marked crossings, the 48 in (1220 mm) clear space shall be within the markings (see Fig. 15(c) and (d)). If diagonal curb ramps have flared sides, they shall also have at least a 24 in (610 mm) long segment of straight curb located on each side of the curb ramp and within the marked crossing (see Fig. 15(c)).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 15(c) shows diagonal curb ramps located at each corner of the intersection. There are flared sides on each diagonal curb ramp. The cross walks are placed so a minimum 48 inch (1220 mm) long clear space is provided at the bottom of the curb ramp inside the marked cross walk. An accessible route is provided across the island in the intersection.</p> <p>Figure 15(d) is similar to 15(c) except that returned curb ramps are provided at each corner of the intersection. A minimum 48 inch (1220 mm) long clear floor space is provided at the bottom of the curb ramp within the marked crossing area. A well defined edge is</p>	<p>ANSI 406.10 Diagonal Curb Ramps. Diagonal or corner-type curb ramps with returned curbs or other well-defined edges shall have the edges parallel to the direction of pedestrian flow. The bottoms of diagonal curb ramps shall have 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum clear space outside active traffic lanes of the roadway. Diagonal curb ramps provided at marked crossings shall provide the 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum clear space within the markings. Diagonal curb ramps with flared sides shall have a segment of curb 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length on each side of the curb ramp and within the marked crossing.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	provided at the side of each curb ramp.	
<p>406.7 Islands. Raised islands in crossings shall be cut through level with the street or have curb ramps at both sides. Each curb ramp shall have a level area 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum by 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum at the top of the curb ramp in the part of the island intersected by the crossings. Each 48 inch (1220 mm) minimum by 36 inch (915 mm) minimum area shall be oriented so that the 48 inch (1220 mm) minimum length is in the direction of the running slope of the curb ramp it serves. The 48 inch (1220 mm) minimum by 36 inch (915 mm) minimum areas and the accessible route shall be permitted to overlap.</p>	<p>4.7.11 Islands. Any raised islands in crossings shall be cut through level with the street or have curb ramps at both sides and a level area at least 48 in (1220 mm) long between the curb ramps in the part of the island intersected by the crossings (see Fig. 15(a) and (b)).</p> <p>NOTE: Figures 15(a) and 15(b) illustrate street pedestrian crossings cutting through a mid-street median at street level.</p>	<p>ANSI 406.11 Islands. Raised islands in crossings shall be a cut-through level with the street or have curb ramps at both sides. Each curb ramp shall have a level area 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width at the top of the curb ramp in the part of the island intersected by the crossings. Each 48-inch (1220 mm) by 36-inch (915 mm) area shall be oriented so the 48-inch (1220 mm) length is in the direction of the running slope of the curb ramp it serves. The 48-inch (1220 mm) by 36-inch (915 mm) areas and the accessible route shall be permitted to overlap.</p>
	<p>4.7.7 Detectable Warnings. A curb ramp shall have a detectable warning complying with 4.29.2. The detectable warning shall extend the full width and depth of the curb ramp.</p>	<p>ANSI 406.12 Detectable Warnings at Raised Marked Crossings. Marked crossings that are raised to the same level as the adjoining sidewalk shall be preceded by a 24-inch (610 mm) deep detectable warning complying with Section 705, extending the full width of the marked crossing.</p>
		<p>ANSI 406.13 Detectable Warnings at Curb Ramps. Where detectable warnings are provided on curb ramps, they shall comply with Sections 406.13 and 705.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 406.13.1 Area Covered. Detectable warnings shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in the direction of travel and extend the full width of the curb ramp or flush surface.
		ANSI 406.13.2 Location. The detectable warning shall be located so the edge nearest the curb line is 6 inches (150 mm) to 8 inches (205 mm) from the curb line.
		ANSI 406.14 Detectable Warnings at Islands or Cut-through Medians. Where detectable warnings are provided on curb ramps or at raised marked crossings leading to islands or cut-through medians, the island or cut-through median shall also be provided with detectable warnings complying with Section 705, are 24 inches (610 mm) in depth, and extend the full width of the pedestrian route or cut-through. Where such island or cut-through median is less than 48 inches (1220 mm) in depth, the entire width and depth of the pedestrian route or cut-through shall have detectable warnings.
407 Elevators	4.10 Elevators.	ANSI 407 Elevators

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>407.1 General. Elevators shall comply with 407 and with ASME A17.1 (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1). They shall be passenger elevators as classified by ASME A17.1. Elevator operation shall be automatic.</p>	<p>4.10.1 General. Accessible elevators shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with 4.10 and with the ASME A17.1-1990, Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators. Freight elevators shall not be considered as meeting the requirements of this section unless the only elevators provided are used as combination passenger and freight elevators for the public and employees.</p>	<p>ANSI 407.1 General. Elevators shall comply with Section 407 and ASME A17.1 listed in Section 105.2.5. Elevators shall be passenger elevators as classified by ASME A17.1. Elevator operation shall be automatic.</p>
	<p>4.10.2 Automatic Operation. Elevator operation shall be automatic. Each car shall be equipped with a self-leveling feature that will automatically bring the car to floor landings within a tolerance of 1/2 in (13 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions. This self-leveling feature shall be automatic and independent of the operating device and shall correct the overtravel or undertravel.</p>	
<p>407.2 Elevator Landing Requirements. Elevator landings shall comply with 407.2.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.2 Elevator Landing Requirements. Elevator landings shall comply with Section 407.2.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>407.2.1 Call Controls. Where elevator call buttons or keypads are provided, they shall comply with 407.2.1 and 309.4. Call buttons shall be raised or flush.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Existing elevators shall be permitted to have recessed call buttons.</p>	<p>4.10.3 Hall Call Buttons. Call buttons in elevator lobbies and halls shall be centered at 42 in (1065 mm) above the floor. Such call buttons shall have visual signals to indicate when each call is registered and when each call is answered. Call buttons shall be a minimum of 3/4 in (19 mm) in the smallest dimension. The button designating the up direction shall be on top. (See Fig. 20.) Buttons shall be raised or flush. Objects mounted beneath hall call buttons shall not project into the elevator lobby more than 4 in (100 mm).</p> <p>4.27.4 Operation. Controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N).</p> <p>4.27.2 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space complying with 4.2.4 that allows a forward or a parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at controls, dispensers, receptacles, and other operable equipment.</p>	<p>ANSI 407.2.1 Call Controls. Where elevator call buttons or keypads are provided, they shall comply with Sections 407.2.1 and 309.4. Call buttons shall be raised or flush. Objects beneath hall call buttons shall protrude 1 inch (25 mm) maximum.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Existing elevators shall be permitted to have recessed call buttons. 2. The restriction on objects beneath call buttons shall not apply to existing call buttons.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>407.2.1.1 Height. Call buttons and keypads shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in 308, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Existing call buttons and existing keypads shall be permitted to be located at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finish floor, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.2.1.1 Height. Call buttons and keypads shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in Section 308, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Existing call buttons and existing keypads shall be permitted to be located 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part.</p>
<p>407.2.1.2 Size. Call buttons shall be 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum in the smallest dimension.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Existing elevator call buttons shall not be required to comply with 407.2.1.2.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.2.1.2 Size. Call buttons shall be 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum in the smallest dimension.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Existing elevator call buttons shall not be required to comply with Section 407.2.1.2.</p>
<p>407.2.1.3 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided at call controls.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.2.1.3 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 shall be provided at call controls.</p>
<p>407.2.1.4 Location. The call button that designates the up direction shall be located above the call button that designates the down direction.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with 407.2.1.4.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.2.1.4 Location. The call button that designates the up direction shall be located above the call button that designates the down direction.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with Section 407.2.1.4.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>407.2.1.5 Signals. Call buttons shall have visible signals to indicate when each call is registered and when each call is answered.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with 407.2.1.5 provided that visible and audible signals complying with 407.2.2 indicating which elevator car to enter are provided. 2. Existing elevators shall not be required to comply with 407.2.1.5. 		<p>ANSI 407.2.1.5 Signals. Call buttons shall have visible signals to indicate when each call is registered and when each call is answered.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with Section 407.2.1.5, provided visible and audible signals complying with Section 407.2.1.7 are provided. 2. Existing elevators shall not be required to comply with Section 407.2.1.5.
<p>407.2.1.6 Keypads. Where keypads are provided, keypads shall be in a standard telephone keypad arrangement and shall comply with 407.4.7.2.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.2.1.6 Keypads. Where keypads are provided, keypads shall be in a standard telephone keypad arrangement and shall comply with Section 407.4.7.2.</p>
		<p>ANSI 407.2.1.7 Destination-oriented Elevator Signals. Destination-oriented elevators shall be provided with visible and audible signals to indicate which car is responding to a call. The audible signal shall be activated by pressing a function button. The function button shall be identified by the International Symbol for Accessibility and tactile indication. The International Symbol for Accessibility, complying with Section 703.6.3.1, shall be 5/8 inch (16 mm) in height and be a visual character complying with Section 703.2. The tactile indication shall be three raised dots, spaced 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) at base diameter, in the form of an equilateral triangle. The function button shall be located immediately below the keypad arrangement or floor buttons.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>407.2.2 Hall Signals. Hall signals, including in-car signals, shall comply with 407.2.2.</p> <p>407.2.2.1 Visible and Audible Signals. A visible and audible signal shall be provided at each hoistway entrance to indicate which car is answering a call and the car's direction of travel. Where in-car signals are provided, they shall be visible from the floor area adjacent to the hall call buttons.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Visible and audible signals shall not be required at each destination-oriented elevator where a visible and audible signal complying with 407.2.2 is provided indicating the elevator car designation information. 2. In existing elevators, a signal indicating the direction of car travel shall not be required. 	<p>4.10.4 Hall Lanterns. A visible and audible signal shall be provided at each hoistway entrance to indicate which car is answering a call. Audible signals shall sound once for the up direction and twice for the down direction or shall have verbal annunciators that say "up" or "down." Visible signals shall have the following features:</p>	<p>ANSI 407.2.2 Hall Signals. Hall signals, including in-car signals, shall comply with Section 407.2.2.</p> <p>ANSI 407.2.2.1 Visible and Audible Signals. A visible and audible signal shall be provided at each hoistway entrance to indicate which car is answering a call and the car's direction of travel. Where in-car signals are provided they shall be visible from the floor area adjacent to the hall call buttons.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with Section 407.2.2.1, provided visible and audible signals complying with Section 407.2.1.7 are provided. 2. In existing elevators, a signal indicating the direction of car travel shall not be required.
<p>407.2.2.2 Visible Signals. Visible signal fixtures shall be centered at 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground. The visible signal elements shall be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) minimum measured along the vertical centerline of the element. Signals shall be visible from the floor area adjacent to the hall call button.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Destination-oriented elevators shall be permitted to have signals visible from the floor area adjacent to the hoistway entrance. 2. Existing elevators shall not be required to comply with 407.2.2.2. 	<p>(1) Hall lantern fixtures shall be mounted so that their centerline is at least 72 in (1830 mm) above the lobby floor. (See Fig. 20.)</p> <p>(2) Visual elements shall be at least 2-1/2 in (64 mm) in the smallest dimension.</p> <p>(3) Signals shall be visible from the vicinity of the hall call button (see Fig. 20). In-car lanterns located in cars, visible from the vicinity of hall call buttons, and conforming to the above requirements, shall be acceptable.</p>	<p>ANSI 407.2.2.2 Visible Signals. Visible signal fixtures shall be centered at 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum above the floor. The visible signal elements shall be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) minimum measured along the vertical centerline of the element. Signals shall be visible from the floor area adjacent to the hall call button.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Destination-oriented elevators shall be permitted to have signals visible from the floor area adjacent to the hoistway entrance. 2. Existing elevators shall not be required to comply with Section 407.2.2.2.
<p>407.2.2.3 Audible Signals. Audible signals shall sound once for the up direction and twice for the down direction, or shall have verbal</p>	<p>See 4.10.4</p>	<p>ANSI 407.2.2.3 Audible Signals. Audible signals shall sound once for the up direction and twice for the down direction, or shall have</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>annunciators that indicate the direction of elevator car travel. Audible signals shall have a frequency of 1500 Hz maximum. Verbal annunciators shall have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum and 3000 Hz maximum. The audible signal and verbal annunciator shall be 10 dB minimum above ambient, but shall not exceed 80 dB, measured at the hall call button.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with 407.2.2.3 provided that the audible tone and verbal announcement is the same as those given at the call button or call button keypad. 2. Existing elevators shall not be required to comply with the requirements for frequency and dB range of audible signals. 		<p>verbal annunciators that indicate the direction of elevator car travel. Audible signals shall have a frequency of 1500 Hz maximum. Verbal annunciators shall have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum and 3,000 Hz maximum. The audible signal or verbal annunciator shall be 10 dBA minimum above ambient, but shall not exceed 80 dBA, measured at the hall call button.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with Section 407.2.2.3, provided the audible tone and verbal announcement is the same as those given at the call button or call button keypad. 2. The requirement for the frequency and range of audible signals shall not apply in existing elevators.
<p>407.2.2.4 Differentiation. Each destination-oriented elevator in a bank of elevators shall have audible and visible means for differentiation.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.2.2.4 Differentiation. Each destination-oriented elevator in a bank of elevators shall have audible and visible means for differentiation.</p>
<p>407.2.3 Hoistway Signs. Signs at elevator hoistways shall comply with 407.2.3.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.2.3 Hoistway Signs. Signs at elevator hoistways shall comply with Section 407.2.3.</p>
<p>407.2.3.1 Floor Designation. Floor designations complying with 703.2 and 703.4.1 shall be provided on both jambs of elevator hoistway entrances. Floor designations shall be provided in both tactile characters and braille. Tactile characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) high minimum. A tactile star shall be provided on both jambs at the main entry level.</p>	<p>4.10.5 Raised and Braille Characters on Hoistway Entrances. All elevator hoistway entrances shall have raised and Braille floor designations provided on both jambs. The centerline of the characters shall be 60 in (1525 mm) above finish floor. Such characters shall be 2 in (50 mm) high and shall comply with 4.30.4. Permanently applied plates are acceptable if they are permanently fixed to the jambs. (See Fig. 20).</p>	<p>ANSI 407.2.3.1 Floor Designation. Floor designations shall be provided in tactile characters complying with Section 703.3 located on both jambs of elevator hoistway entrances. Tactile characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) minimum in height. A tactile star shall be provided on both jambs at the main entry level.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>NOTE: Figure 20 illustrates hall call buttons mounted 42 inches (1065 mm) measured from the floor to the centerline between the buttons. Hall lanterns are mounted 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum measured from the floor to the centerline between the up and down indicators. Raised and Braille characters on hoistway entrances are mounted with the centerline at 60 inches (1525 mm) above the floor. Sensors for the required door protective and reopening device detect an obstruction passing through the door opening at heights of 5 inches (125 mm), indicated by a dashed line A and 29 inches (735 mm), indicated by a dashed line B. Each is measured from the floor. A note indicates, "The automatic door reopening device is activated if an object passes through either line A or line B. Line A and line B represent the vertical locations of the door reopening device not requiring contact."</p>	
<p>407.2.3.2 Car Designations. Destination-oriented elevators shall provide tactile car identification complying with 703.2 on both jambs of the hoistway immediately below the floor designation. Car designations shall be provided in both tactile characters and braille. Tactile characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) high minimum.</p>	<p>See 4.10.5</p>	<p>ANSI 407.2.3.2 Car Designations. Destination-oriented elevators shall provide car identification in tactile characters complying with Section 703.3 located on both jambs of the hoistway immediately below the floor designation. Tactile characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) minimum in height.</p>
		<p>ANSI 407.2.4 Destination Signs. Where signs indicate that elevators do not serve all landings, signs in tactile characters complying with Section 703.3 shall be provided above the hall call button fixture.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		EXCEPTION: Destination oriented elevator systems shall not be required to comply with Section 407.2.4.
407.3 Elevator Door Requirements. Hoistway and car doors shall comply with 407.3.		ANSI 407.3 Elevator Door Requirements. Hoistway and elevator car doors shall comply with Section 407.3.
407.3.1 Type. Elevator doors shall be the horizontal sliding type. Car gates shall be prohibited.		ANSI 407.3.1 Type. Elevator doors shall be horizontal sliding type. Car gates shall be prohibited.
407.3.2 Operation. Elevator hoistway and car doors shall open and close automatically. EXCEPTION: Existing manually operated hoistway swing doors shall be permitted provided that they comply with 404.2.3 and 404.2.9. Car door closing shall not be initiated until the hoistway door is closed.	4.10.6 Door Protective and Reopening Device. Elevator doors shall open and close automatically. They shall be provided with a reopening device that will stop and reopen a car door and hoistway door automatically if the door becomes obstructed by an object or person. The device shall be capable of completing these operations without requiring contact for an obstruction passing through the opening at heights of 5 in and 29 in (125 mm and 735 mm) above finish floor (see Fig. 20). Door reopening devices shall remain effective for at least 20 seconds. After such an interval, doors may close in accordance with the requirements of ASME A17.1-1990.	ANSI 407.3.2 Operation. Elevator hoistway and car doors shall open and close automatically. EXCEPTION: Existing manually operated hoistway swing doors shall be permitted, provided: a) they comply with Sections 404.2.2 and 404.2.8; b) the car door closing is not initiated until the hoistway door is closed.
407.3.3 Reopening Device. Elevator doors shall be provided with a reopening device complying with 407.3.3 that shall stop and reopen a car door and hoistway door automatically if the door becomes obstructed by an object or person. EXCEPTION: Existing elevators with manually operated doors shall not be required to comply with 407.3.3.	4.1.6 Accessible Buildings: Alterations. (3) Special Technical Provisions for Alterations to Existing Buildings and Facilities:	ANSI 407.3.3 Reopening Device. Elevator doors shall be provided with a reopening device complying with Section 407.3.3 that shall stop and reopen a car door and hoistway door automatically if the door becomes obstructed by an object or person. EXCEPTION: In existing elevators, manually operated doors shall not be required to comply with Section 407.3.3.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>407.3.3.1 Height. The device shall be activated by sensing an obstruction passing through the opening at 5 inches (125 mm) nominal and 29 inches (735 mm) nominal above the finish floor.</p>	<p>(c) Elevators:</p> <p>(i) If safety door edges are provided in existing automatic elevators, automatic door reopening devices may be omitted (see 4.10.6).</p>	<p>ANSI 407.3.3.1 Height. The reopening device shall be activated by sensing an obstruction passing through the opening at 5 inches (125 mm) nominal and 29 inches (735 mm) nominal above the floor.</p>
<p>407.3.3.2 Contact. The device shall not require physical contact to be activated, although contact is permitted to occur before the door reverses.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.3.3.2 Contact. The reopening device shall not require physical contact to be activated, although contact shall be permitted before the door reverses.</p>
<p>407.3.3.3 Duration. Door reopening devices shall remain effective for 20 seconds minimum.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.3.3.3 Duration. The reopening device shall remain effective for 20 seconds minimum.</p>
<p>407.3.4 Door and Signal Timing. The minimum acceptable time from notification that a car is answering a call or notification of the car assigned at the means for the entry of destination information until the doors of that car start to close shall be calculated from the following equation:</p> <p>$T = D/(1.5 \text{ ft/s})$ or $T = D/(455 \text{ mm/s}) = 5$ seconds minimum</p> <p>where T equals the total time in seconds and D equals the distance (in feet or millimeters) from the point in the lobby or corridor 60 inches (1525 mm) directly in front of the farthest call button controlling that car to the centerline of its hoistway door.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> For cars with in-car lanterns, T shall be permitted to begin when the signal is visible from the point 60 inches (1525 mm) directly in front of the farthest hall call button and the audible signal is sounded. Destination-oriented elevators shall not be 	<p>4.10.7 Door and Signal Timing for Hall Calls. The minimum acceptable time from notification that a car is answering a call until the doors of that car start to close shall be calculated from the following equation:</p> <p>$T = D/(1.5 \text{ ft/s})$ or $T = D/(445 \text{ mm/s})$</p> <p>where T total time in seconds and D distance (in feet or millimeters) from a point in the lobby or corridor 60 in (1525 mm) directly in front of the farthest call button controlling that car to the centerline of its hoistway door (see Fig. 21). For cars with in-car lanterns, T begins when the lantern is visible from the vicinity of hall call buttons and an audible signal is sounded. The minimum acceptable notification time shall be 5 seconds.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 21 is a graph of the formula. The y axis is T, time in seconds and the x axis</p>	<p>ANSI 407.3.4 Door and Signal Timing. The minimum acceptable time from notification that a car is answering a call until the doors of that car start to close shall be calculated from the following equation:</p> <p>$T = D/(1.5 \text{ ft/s})$ or $T = D/(455 \text{ mm/s}) = 5$ seconds minimum,</p> <p>where T equals the total time in seconds and D equals the distance (in feet or millimeters) from the point in the lobby or corridor 60 inches (1525 mm) directly in front of the farthest call button controlling that car to the centerline of its hoistway door.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> For cars with in-car lanterns, T shall be permitted to begin when the signal is visible from the point 60 inches (1525 mm) directly in front of the farthest hall call button and the audible signal is sounded. Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with Section 407.3.4.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
required to comply with 407.3.4.	is D, distance in feet. The "Acceptable" range is above a line on the graph indicated as follows: If D = 5 to 8 feet, then T = 5 seconds. If D = 8 to 18 feet, T increases at approximately 1:1 with the end of the line at D = 18 feet and T = 12 seconds. The maximum value shown for T is 13 seconds and for D is 18 feet. Values below the line on the graph are indicated as "Unacceptable."	
407.3.5 Door Delay. Elevator doors shall remain fully open in response to a car call for 3 seconds minimum.	4.10.8 Door Delay for Car Calls. The minimum time for elevator doors to remain fully open in response to a car call shall be 3 seconds.	ANSI 407.3.5 Door Delay. Elevator doors shall remain fully open in response to a car call for 3 seconds minimum.
407.3.6 Width. The width of elevator doors shall comply with Table 407.4.1. EXCEPTION: In existing elevators, a power-operated car door complying with 404.2.3 shall be permitted.	See 4.10.9	ANSI 407.3.6 Width. Elevator door clear opening width shall comply with Table 407.4.1. EXCEPTION: In existing elevators, a power-operated car door complying with Section 404.2.2 shall be permitted.
407.4 Elevator Car Requirements. Elevator cars shall comply with 407.4.	4.10.9 Floor Plan of Elevator Cars. The floor area of elevator cars shall provide space for wheelchair users to enter the car, maneuver within reach of controls, and exit from the car.	ANSI 407.4 Elevator Car Requirements. Elevator cars shall comply with Section 407.4.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>407.4.1 Car Dimensions. Inside dimensions of elevator cars and clear width of elevator doors shall comply with Table 407.4.1.</p>	<p>Acceptable door opening and inside dimensions shall be as shown in Fig. 22. The clearance between the car platform sill and the edge of any hoistway landing shall be no greater than 1-1/4 in (32 mm).</p> <p>Note: Figure 22 Minimum Dimensions of Elevator Cars. Diagram (a) illustrates an elevator with a door providing a 36 inch (915 mm) minimum clear width, in the middle of the elevator. The width of the elevator car is a minimum of 80 inches (2030 mm). The depth of the elevator car measured from the back wall to the elevator door is a minimum of 54 inches (1370 mm). The depth of the elevator car measured from the back wall to the control panel is a minimum of 51 inches (1291 mm).</p> <p>Diagram (b) illustrates an elevator with door providing a minimum 36 inch (915 mm) clear width, located to one side of the elevator. The width of the elevator car is a minimum of 68 inches (1730 mm). The depth of the elevator car measured from the back wall to the elevator door is a minimum of 54 inches (1370 mm). The depth of the elevator car measured from the back wall to the control panel is a minimum of 51 inches (1291).</p> <p>See also 10.3.1(17) EXCEPTION</p>	<p>ANSI 407.4.1 Car Dimensions. Inside dimensions of elevator cars shall comply with Table 407.4.1.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>EXCEPTION: Existing elevator car configurations that provide a clear floor area of 16 square feet (1.5 m²) minimum and also provide an inside clear depth 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum and a clear width 36 inches (915 mm) minimum shall be permitted.</p>	<p>4.1.6 Accessible Buildings: Alterations. (3) Special Technical Provisions for Alterations to Existing Buildings and Facilities: (c) Elevators:</p> <p>(ii) Where existing shaft configuration or technical infeasibility prohibits strict compliance with 4.10.9, the minimum car plan dimensions may be reduced by the minimum amount necessary, but in no case shall the inside car area be smaller than 48 in (1220 mm) by 48 in (1220 mm).</p> <p>(iii) Equivalent facilitation may be provided with an elevator car of different dimensions when usability can be demonstrated and when all other elements required to be accessible comply with the applicable provisions of 4.10. For example, an elevator of 47 in by 69 in (1195 mm by 1755 mm) with a door opening on the narrow dimension, could accommodate the standard wheelchair clearances shown in Figure 4.</p>	<p>EXCEPTION: Existing elevator car configurations that provide a clear floor area of 16 square feet (1.5 m²) minimum, and provide a clear inside dimension of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum in depth, shall be permitted.</p>

New ADAAG 407.4.1 Elevator Car Dimensions

Minimum Dimensions				
Door Location	Door Clear Width	Inside Car, Side to Side	Inside Car, Back Wall to Front Return	Inside Car, Back Wall to Inside Face of Door
Centered	42 inches (1065 mm)	80 inches (2030 mm)	51 inches (1295 mm)	54 inches (1370 mm)
Side (off-centered)	36 inches (915 mm) ¹	68 inches (1725 mm)	51 inches (1295 mm)	54 inches (1370 mm)
Any	36 inches (915 mm) ¹	54 inches (1370 mm)	80 inches (2030 mm)	80 inches (2030 mm)

Any	36 inches (915 mm) ¹	60 inches (1525 mm) ²	60 inches (1525 mm) ²	60 inches (1525 mm) ²
-----	------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

1. A tolerance of minus 5/8 inch (16 mm) is permitted.

2. Other car configurations that provide a turning space complying with 304 with the door closed shall be permitted.

ANSI Table 407.4.1—Minimum Dimensions of Elevator Cars¹

Door Location	Door Clear Opening Width	Inside Car, Side to Side	Inside Car, Back Wall to Front Return	Inside Car, Back Wall to Inside Face of Door
Centered	42 inches (1065 mm)	80 inches (2030 mm)	51 inches (1295 mm)	54 inches (1370 mm)
Side (Off Center)	36 inches (915 mm) ¹	68 inches (1725 mm)	51 inches (1295 mm)	54 inches (1370 mm)
Any	36 inches (915 mm) ¹	54 inches (1370 mm)	80 inches (2030 mm)	80 inches (2030 mm)
Any	36 inches (915 mm) ¹	60 inches (1525 mm) ²	60 inches (1525 mm) ²	60 inches (1525 mm) ²

¹A tolerance of minus 5/8 inch (16 mm) is permitted.

²Other car configurations that provide a 36-inch (915 mm) door clear opening width and a turning space complying with Section 304 with the door closed are permitted.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
407.4.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall comply with 302 and 303.	4.10.10 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces shall comply with 4.5.	ANSI 407.4.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall comply with Section 302.
407.4.3 Platform to Hoistway Clearance. The clearance between the car platform sill and the edge of any hoistway landing shall be 1 1/4 inch (32 mm) maximum.	See 4.10.9.	ANSI 407.4.3 Platform to Hoistway Clearance. The clearance between the car platform sill and the edge of any hoistway landing shall be in compliance with ASME/ANSI A17.1 listed in Section 105.2.5.
407.4.4 Leveling. Each car shall be equipped	See 4.10.2.	ANSI 407.4.4 Leveling. Each car shall be

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
with a self-leveling feature that will automatically bring and maintain the car at floor landings within a tolerance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions.		equipped with a self-leveling feature that will automatically bring and maintain the car at floor landings within a tolerance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions.
407.4.5 Illumination. The level of illumination at the car controls, platform, car threshold and car landing sill shall be 5 foot candles (54 lux) minimum.	4.10.11 Illumination Levels. The level of illumination at the car controls, platform, and car threshold and landing sill shall be at least 5 footcandles (53.8 lux).	ANSI 407.4.5 Illumination. The level of illumination at the car controls, platform, car threshold and car landing sill shall be 5 foot-candles (54 lux) minimum.
407.4.6 Elevator Car Controls. Where provided, elevator car controls shall comply with 407.4.6 and 309.4. EXCEPTION: In existing elevators, where a new car operating panel complying with 407.4.6 is provided, existing car operating panels shall not be required to comply with 407.4.6.	4.10.12 Car Controls. Elevator control panels shall have the following features:	ANSI 407.4.6 Elevator Car Controls. Where provided, elevator car controls shall comply with Sections 407.4.6 and 309. EXCEPTION: In existing elevators, where a new car operating panel complying with Section 407.4.6 is provided, existing car operating panels shall not be required to comply with Section 407.4.6.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>407.4.6.1 Location. Controls shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in 308.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where the elevator panel serves more than 16 openings and a parallel approach is provided, buttons with floor designations shall be permitted to be 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finish floor. 2. In existing elevators, car control buttons with floor designations shall be permitted to be located 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finish floor where a parallel approach is provided. 	<p>(3) Height. All floor buttons shall be no higher than 54 in (1370 mm) above the finish floor for side approach and 48 in (1220 mm) for front approach. Emergency controls, including the emergency alarm and emergency stop, shall be grouped at the bottom of the panel and shall have their centerlines no less than 35 in (890 mm) above the finish floor (see Fig. 23(a) and (b)).</p> <p>Note: Figure 23(a) diagram illustrates the symbols used for the following control buttons: main entry floor, door closed, door open, emergency alarm, and emergency stop. The diagram further states that the octagon symbol for the emergency stop shall be raised but the X (inside the octagon) is not. Figure 23(b) indicates the maximum height for control buttons and mechanisms is 54 inches (1370 mm). Minimum height is 35 inches (890 mm).</p>	<p>ANSI 407.4.6.1 Location. Controls shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in Section 308.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where the elevator panel serves more than 16 openings and a parallel approach to the controls is provided, buttons with floor designations shall be permitted to be 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor. 2. In existing elevators, where a parallel approach is provided to the controls, car control buttons with floor designations shall be permitted to be located 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor. Where the panel is changed, it shall comply with Section 407.4.6.1.
	<p>(4) Location. Controls shall be located on a front wall if cars have center opening doors, and at the side wall or at the front wall next to the door if cars have side opening doors (see Fig. 23(c) and (d)).</p> <p>NOTE: In Figure 23(c), control panel locations are shown on either side of the center opening door. In Figure 23(d), control panel locations are shown to the right of the side opening door and to the left on the adjacent wall.</p>	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>407.4.6.2 Buttons. Car control buttons with floor designations shall comply with 407.4.6.2 and shall be raised or flush.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In existing elevators, buttons shall be permitted to be recessed.</p>	<p>(1) Buttons. All control buttons shall be at least 3/4 in (19 mm) in their smallest dimension. They shall be raised or flush.</p>	<p>ANSI 407.4.6.2 Buttons. Car control buttons with floor designations shall be raised or flush, and shall comply with Section 407.4.6.2.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In existing elevators, buttons shall be permitted to be recessed.</p>
<p>407.4.6.2.1 Size. Buttons shall be 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum in their smallest dimension.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.4.6.2.1 Size. Buttons shall be 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum in their smallest dimension.</p>
<p>407.4.6.2.2 Arrangement. Buttons shall be arranged with numbers in ascending order. When two or more columns of buttons are provided they shall read from left to right.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.4.6.2.2 Arrangement. Buttons shall be arranged with numbers in ascending order. Floors shall be designated . . . -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, et cetera, with floors below the main entry floor designated with minus numbers. Numbers shall be permitted to be omitted, provided the remaining numbers are in sequence. Where a telephone keypad arrangement is used, the number key (“#”) shall be utilized to enter the minus symbol (“-”). When two or more columns of buttons are provided they shall read from left to right.</p>
<p>407.4.6.3 Keypads. Car control keypads shall be in a standard telephone keypad arrangement and shall comply with 407.4.7.2.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.4.6.3 Keypads. Car control keypads shall be in a standard telephone keypad arrangement and shall comply with Section 407.4.7.2.</p>
<p>407.4.6.4 Emergency Controls. Emergency controls shall comply with 407.4.6.4.</p>	<p>See 4.10.12 (3).</p>	<p>ANSI 407.4.6.4 Emergency Controls. Emergency controls shall comply with Section 407.4.6.4.</p>
<p>407.4.6.4.1 Height. Emergency control buttons shall have their centerlines 35 inches (890 mm) minimum above the finish floor.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.4.6.4.1 Height. Emergency control buttons shall have their centerlines 35 inches (890 mm) minimum above the floor.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
407.4.6.4.2 Location. Emergency controls, including the emergency alarm, shall be grouped at the bottom of the panel.		ANSI 407.4.6.4.2 Location. Emergency controls, including the emergency alarm, shall be grouped at the bottom of the panel.
407.4.7 Designations and Indicators of Car Controls. Designations and indicators of car controls shall comply with 407.4.7. EXCEPTION: In existing elevators, where a new car operating panel complying with 407.4.7 is provided, existing car operating panels shall not be required to comply with 407.4.7.		ANSI 407.4.7 Designations and Indicators of Car Controls. Designations and indicators of car controls shall comply with Section 407.4.7. EXCEPTIONS: 1. In existing elevators, where a new car operating panel complying with Section 407.4.7 is provided, existing car operating panels shall not be required to comply with Section 407.4.7. 2. Where existing building floor designations differ from the arrangement required by Section 407.4.6.2.2, or are alphanumeric, a new operating panel shall be permitted to use such existing building floor designations.
407.4.7.1 Buttons. Car control buttons shall comply with 407.4.7.1.	4.10.2 (2) Tactile, Braille, and Visual Control Indicators. All control buttons shall be designated by Braille and by raised standard alphabet characters for letters, arabic characters for numerals, or standard symbols as shown in Fig. 23(a), and as required in ASME A17.1-1990. Raised and Braille	ANSI 407.4.7.1 Buttons. Car control buttons shall comply with Section 407.4.7.1.
407.4.7.1.1 Type. Control buttons shall be identified by tactile characters complying with 703.2.		407.4.7.1.1 Type. Control buttons shall be identified by tactile characters complying with Section 703.3.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>407.4.7.1.2 Location. Raised character and braille designations shall be placed immediately to the left of the control button to which the designations apply.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where space on an existing car operating panel precludes tactile markings to the left of the controls, markings shall be placed as near to the control as possible.</p>	<p>characters and symbols shall comply with 4.30. The call button for the main entry floor shall be designated by a raised star at the left of the floor designation (see Fig. 23(a)). All raised designations for control buttons shall be placed immediately to the left of the button to which they apply. Applied plates, permanently attached, are an acceptable means to provide raised control designations. Floor buttons shall be provided with visual indicators to show when each call is registered. The visual indicators shall be extinguished when each call is answered.</p>	<p>ANSI 407.4.7.1.2 Location. Tactile character and braille designations shall be placed immediately to the left of the control button to which the designations apply. Where a negative number is used to indicate a negative floor, the braille designation shall be a cell with the dots 3 and 6 followed by the ordinal number.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where space on an existing car operating panel precludes tactile markings to the left of the control button, markings shall be placed as near to the control button as possible.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>407.4.7.1.3 Symbols. The control button for the emergency stop, alarm, door open, door close, main entry floor, and phone, shall be identified with tactile symbols as shown in Table 407.4.7.1.3.</p> <p>Note: New ADAAG Table 407.4.7.1.3 Elevator Control Button Identification indicates the following buttons shall be represented by the indicated symbols and shall include corresponding contracted braille messages:</p> <p>Emergency stop- octagon with 'X' in middle Alarm- bell shape Door open- two chevrons pointing outward Door close- two chevrons pointing inward Main entry floor- star shape Phone- phone hand receiver shape</p>	<p>Note: Figure 23(a) illustrates the symbols used for the following control buttons: main entry floor, door closed, door open, emergency alarm, and emergency stop. The diagram further states that the octagon symbol for the emergency stop shall be raised but the X (inside the octagon) is not.</p>	<p>ANSI 407.4.7.1.3 Symbols. The control button for the emergency stop, alarm, door open, door close, main entry floor, and phone, shall be identified with tactile symbols as shown in Table 407.4.7.1.3.</p> <p>Note: ANSI Table 407.4.7.1.3 Elevator Control Button Identification indicates the following buttons shall be represented by the indicated symbols and shall include corresponding contracted braille messages:</p> <p>Emergency stop- octagon with 'X' in middle Alarm- bell shape Door open- two chevrons pointing outward Door close- two chevrons pointing inward Main entry floor- star shape Phone- phone hand receiver shape</p>
<p>407.4.7.1.4 Visible Indicators. Buttons with floor designations shall be provided with visible indicators to show that a call has been registered. The visible indication shall extinguish when the car arrives at the designated floor.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.4.7.1.4 Visible Indicators. Buttons with floor designations shall be provided with visible indicators to show that a call has been registered. The visible indication shall extinguish when the car arrives at the designated floor.</p>
<p>407.4.7.2 Keypads. Keypads shall be identified by characters complying with 703.5 and shall be centered on the corresponding keypad button. The number five key shall have a single raised dot. The dot shall be 0.118 inch (3 mm) to 0.120 inch (3.05 mm) base diameter and in other aspects comply with Table 703.3.1.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.4.7.2 Keypads. Keypads shall be identified by visual characters complying with Section 703.2 and shall be centered on the corresponding keypad button. The number five key shall have a single raised dot. The dot shall have a base diameter of 0.118 inch (3 mm) minimum to 0.120 inch (3.05 mm) maximum, and a height of 0.025 inch (0.6 mm) minimum to 0.037 inch (0.9 mm) maximum.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 407.4.8 Elevator Car Call Sequential Step Scanning. Elevator car call sequential step scanning shall be provided where car control buttons are provided more than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the floor, as permitted by Section 407.4.6.1, Exception #1. Floor selection shall be accomplished by applying momentary or constant pressure to the up or down scan button. The up scan button shall sequentially select floors above the current floor. The down scan button shall sequentially select floors below the current floor. When pressure is removed from the up or down scan button for more than 2 seconds, the last floor selected shall be registered as a car call. The up and down scan button shall be located adjacent to or immediately above the emergency control buttons.
407.4.8 Car Position Indicators. Audible and visible car position indicators shall be provided in elevator cars.	4.10.13 Car Position Indicators. In elevator cars, a visual car position indicator shall be provided above the car control panel or over the door to show the position of the elevator in the hoistway. As the car passes or stops at a floor served by the elevators, the corresponding numerals shall illuminate, and an audible signal shall sound. Numerals shall be a minimum of 1/2 in (13 mm) high. The audible signal shall be no less than 20 decibels with a frequency no higher than 1500 Hz. An automatic verbal announcement of the floor number at which a car stops or which a car passes may be substituted for the audible	ANSI 407.4.9 Car Position Indicators. Audible and visible car position indicators shall be provided in elevator cars.
407.4.8.1 Visible Indicators. Visible indicators shall comply with 407.4.8.1.		ANSI 407.4.9.1 Visible Indicators. Visible indicators shall comply with Section 407.4.9.1.
407.4.8.1.1 Size. Characters shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) high minimum.		ANSI 407.4.9.1.1 Size. Characters shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) minimum in height.
407.4.8.1.2 Location. Indicators shall be located above the car control panel or above the door.		ANSI 407.4.9.1.2 Location. Indicators shall be located above the car control panel or above the door.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>407.4.8.1.3 Floor Arrival. As the car passes a floor and when a car stops at a floor served by the elevator, the corresponding character shall illuminate.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with 407.4.8.1.3 provided that the visible indicators extinguish when the call has been answered.</p>	signal.	<p>ANSI 407.4.9.1.3 Floor Arrival. As the car passes a floor and when a car stops at a floor served by the elevator, the corresponding character shall illuminate.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with Section 407.4.9.1.3, provided the visible indicators extinguish when the call has been answered.</p>
<p>407.4.8.1.4 Destination Indicator. In destination-oriented elevators, a display shall be provided in the car with visible indicators to show car destinations.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.4.9.1.4 Destination Indicator. In destination-oriented elevators, a display shall be provided in the car with visible indicators to show car destinations.</p>
<p>407.4.8.2 Audible Indicators. Audible indicators shall comply with 407.4.8.2.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.4.9.2 Audible Indicators. Audible indicators shall comply with Section 407.4.9.2.</p>
<p>407.4.8.2.1 Signal Type. The signal shall be an automatic verbal annunciator which announces the floor at which the car is about to stop.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: For elevators other than destination-oriented elevators that have a rated speed of 200 feet per minute (1 m/s) or less, a non-verbal audible signal with a frequency of 1500 Hz maximum which sounds as the car passes or is about to stop at a floor served by the elevator shall be permitted.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.4.9.2.1 Signal Type. The signal shall be an automatic verbal annunciator that announces the floor at which the car is about to stop. The verbal announcement indicating the floor shall be completed prior to the initiation of the door opening.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: For elevators other than destination-oriented elevators that have a rated speed of 200 feet per minute (1 m/s) or less, a non-verbal audible signal with a frequency of 1500 Hz maximum that sounds as the car passes or is about to stop at a floor served by the elevator shall be permitted.</p>
<p>407.4.8.2.2 Signal Level. The verbal annunciator shall be 10 dB minimum above ambient, but shall not exceed 80 dB, measured at the annunciator.</p>		<p>ANSI 407.4.9.2.2 Signal Level. The verbal annunciator shall be 10 dBA minimum above ambient, but shall not exceed 80 dBA, measured at the annunciator.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
407.4.8.2.3 Frequency. The verbal annunciator shall have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum to 3000 Hz maximum.		ANSI 407.4.9.2.3 Frequency. The verbal annunciator shall have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum to 3,000 Hz maximum.
407.4.9 Emergency Communication. Emergency two-way communication systems shall comply with 308. Tactile symbols and characters shall be provided adjacent to the device and shall comply with 703.2.	4.10.14 Emergency Communications. If provided, emergency two-way communication systems between the elevator and a point outside the hoistway shall comply with ASME A17.1-1990. The highest operable part of a two-way communication system shall be a maximum of 48 in (1220 mm) from the floor of the car. It shall be identified by a raised symbol and lettering complying with 4.30 and located adjacent to the device. If the system uses a handset then the length of the cord from the panel to the handset shall be at least 29 in (735 mm). If the system is located in a closed compartment the compartment door hardware shall conform to 4.27, Controls and Operating Mechanisms. The emergency intercommunication system shall not require voice communication	ANSI 407.4.10 Emergency Communications. Emergency two-way communication systems between the elevator car and a point outside the hoistway shall comply with Section 407.4.10 and ASME/ANSI A17.1 listed in Section 105.2.5.
		ANSI 407.4.10.1 Height. The highest operable part of a two-way communication system shall comply with Section 308.
		ANSI 407.4.10.2 Identification. Tactile characters complying with Section 703.3 and symbols complying with Section 407.4.7.1.3 shall be provided adjacent to the device.
408 Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators		ANSI 408 Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators
408.1 General. Limited-use/limited-application elevators shall comply with 408 and with ASME A17.1 (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1). They shall be passenger elevators as classified by ASME A17.1. Elevator operation shall be automatic.		ANSI 408.1 General. Limited-use/limited-application elevators shall comply with Section 408 and ASME A17.1 listed in Section 105.2.5. Elevator operation shall be automatic.
408.2 Elevator Landings. Landings serving limited-use/limited-application elevators shall comply with 408.2.		ANSI 408.2 Elevator Landing Requirements. Landings serving limited-use/limited application elevators shall comply with Section 408.2.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
408.2.1 Call Buttons. Elevator call buttons and keypads shall comply with 407.2.1.		ANSI 408.2.1 Call Controls. Elevator call buttons and keypads shall comply with Section 407.2.1.
408.2.2 Hall Signals. Hall signals shall comply with 407.2.2.		ANSI 408.2.2 Hall Signals. Hall signals shall comply with Section 407.2.2.
408.2.3 Hoistway Signs. Signs at elevator hoistways shall comply with 407.2.3.1.		ANSI 408.2.3 Hoistway Signs. Signs at elevator hoistways shall comply with Section 407.2.3.
408.3 Elevator Doors. Elevator hoistway doors shall comply with 408.3.		ANSI 408.3 Elevator Door Requirements. Elevator hoistway doors shall comply with Section 408.3.
408.3.1 Sliding Doors. Sliding hoistway and car doors shall comply with 407.3.1 through 407.3.3 and 408.4.1.		ANSI 408.3.1 Sliding Doors. Sliding hoistway and car doors shall comply with Sections 407.3.1 through 407.3.3, and 408.3.3.
408.3.2 Swinging Doors. Swinging hoistway doors shall open and close automatically and shall comply with 404, 407.3.2 and 408.3.2.		ANSI 408.3.2 Swinging Doors. Swinging hoistway doors shall open and close automatically and shall comply with Sections 408.3.2, 404, and 407.3.2.
408.3.2.1 Power Operation. Swinging doors shall be power-operated and shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19 (1997 or 2002 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1).		ANSI 408.3.2.1 Power Operation. Swinging doors shall be power-operated and shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19 listed in Section 105.2.3.
408.3.2.2 Duration. Power-operated swinging doors shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum when activated.		ANSI 408.3.2.2 Duration. Power-operated swinging doors shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum when activated.
408.4 Elevator Cars. Elevator cars shall comply with 408.4.		ANSI 408.4 Elevator Car Requirements. Elevator cars shall comply with Section 408.4.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>408.4.1 Car Dimensions and Doors. Elevator cars shall provide a clear width 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum and a clear depth 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum. Car doors shall be positioned at the narrow ends of cars and shall provide 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear width.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Cars that provide a clear width 51 inches (1295 mm) minimum shall be permitted to provide a clear depth 51 inches (1295 mm) minimum provided that car doors provide a clear opening 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum. 2. Existing elevator cars shall be permitted to provide a clear width 36 inches (915 mm) minimum, clear depth 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum, and a net clear platform area 15 square feet (1.4 m²) minimum. 		<p>ANSI 408.4.1 Inside Dimensions of Elevator Cars. Elevator cars shall provide a clear floor area of 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in width, and 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum in depth.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Cars that provide a 51 inches (1295 mm) minimum clear floor width shall be permitted to provide 51 inches (1295 mm) minimum clear floor depth. 2. For installations in existing buildings, elevator cars that provide a clear floor area of 15 square feet (1.4 m²) minimum, and provide a clear inside dimension of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum in depth, shall be permitted. <p>ANSI 408.3.3 Door Location and Width. Car doors shall provide a clear opening width of 32 inches (815 mm) minimum. Car doors shall be positioned at a narrow end of the car.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Car doors that provide a clear opening width of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum shall be permitted to be located on adjacent sides of cars that provide a clear floor area of 51 inches (1295 mm) in width and 51 inches (1295 mm) in depth.</p>
<p>408.4.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall comply with 302 and 303.</p>		<p>ANSI 408.4.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall comply with Section 302.</p>
<p>408.4.3 Platform to Hoistway Clearance. The platform to hoistway clearance shall comply with 407.4.3.</p>		<p>ANSI 408.4.3 Platform to Hoistway Clearance. The clearance between the car platform sill and the edge of any hoistway landing shall be in compliance with ASME/ANSI A17.1 listed in Section 105.2.5.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
408.4.4 Leveling. Elevator car leveling shall comply with 407.4.4.		ANSI 408.4.4 Leveling. Elevator car leveling shall comply with Section 407.4.4.
408.4.5 Illumination. Elevator car illumination shall comply with 407.4.5.		ANSI 408.4.5 Illumination. Elevator car illumination shall comply with Section 407.4.5.
408.4.6 Car Controls. Elevator car controls shall comply with 407.4.6. Control panels shall be centered on a side wall.		ANSI 408.4.6 Elevator Car Controls. Elevator car controls shall comply with Section 407.4.6. Control panels shall be centered on a side wall.
408.4.7 Designations and Indicators of Car Controls. Designations and indicators of car controls shall comply with 407.4.7.		ANSI 408.4.7 Designations and Indicators of Car Controls. Designations and indicators of car controls shall comply with Section 407.4.7.
408.4.8 Emergency Communications. Car emergency signaling devices complying with 407.4.9 shall be provided.		ANSI 408.4.8 Emergency Communications. Car emergency signaling devices complying with Section 407.4.10 shall be provided.
409 Private Residence Elevators		ANSI 409 Private Residence Elevators
409.1 General. Private residence elevators that are provided within a residential dwelling unit required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 through 809.4 shall comply with 409 and with ASME A17.1 (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1). They shall be passenger elevators as classified by ASME A17.1. Elevator operation shall be automatic.		ANSI 409.1 General. Private residence elevators shall comply with Section 409 and ASME/ANSI A17.1 listed in Section 105.2.5. Elevator operation shall be automatic. EXCEPTION: Elevators complying with Section 407 or 408.
409.2 Call Buttons. Call buttons shall be 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum in the smallest dimension and shall comply with 309.		ANSI 409.2 Call Buttons. Call buttons at elevator landings shall comply with Section 309. Call buttons shall be 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum in their smallest dimension.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>409.3 Elevator Doors. Hoistway doors, car doors, and car gates shall comply with 409.3 and 404.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Doors shall not be required to comply with the maneuvering clearance requirements in 404.2.4.1 for approaches to the push side of swinging doors.</p>		<p>ANSI 409.3 Doors and Gates. Elevator car and hoistway doors and gates shall comply with Sections 409.3 and 404.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: The maneuvering clearances required by Section 404.2.3 shall not apply for approaches to the push side of swinging doors.</p>
<p>409.3.1 Power Operation. Elevator car and hoistway doors and gates shall be power operated and shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19 (1997 or 2002 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1). Power operated doors and gates shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum when activated.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In elevator cars with more than one opening, hoistway doors and gates shall be permitted to be of the manual-open, self-close type.</p>		<p>ANSI 409.3.1 Power Operation. Elevator car doors and gates shall be power operated and shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19 listed in Section 105.2.3. Elevator cars with a single opening shall have low energy power operated hoistway doors and gates.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: For elevators with a car that has more than one opening, the hoistway doors and gates shall be permitted to be of the manual-open, self-close type.</p>
		<p>ANSI 409.3.2 Duration. Power operated doors and gates shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum when activated.</p>
<p>409.3.2 Location. Elevator car doors or gates shall be positioned at the narrow end of the clear floor spaces required by 409.4.1.</p>		<p>ANSI 409.3.3 Door or Gate Location. Car gates or doors shall be positioned at a narrow end of the clear floor area required by Section 409.4.1.</p>
<p>409.4 Elevator Cars. Private residence elevator cars shall comply with 409.4.</p>		<p>ANSI 409.4 Elevator Car Requirements. Elevator cars shall comply with Section 409.4.</p>
<p>409.4.1 Inside Dimensions of Elevator Cars. Elevator cars shall provide a clear floor space</p>		<p>ANSI 409.4.1 Inside Dimensions of Elevator Cars. Elevator cars shall provide a clear floor</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum and shall comply with 305.		area 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in depth.
409.4.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall comply with 302 and 303.		ANSI 409.4.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall comply with Section 302.
409.4.3 Platform to Hoistway Clearance. The clearance between the car platform and the edge of any landing sill shall be 1 1/2 inch (38 mm) maximum.		ANSI 409.4.3 Platform to Hoistway Clearance. The clearance between the car platform sill and the edge of any hoistway landing shall be 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) maximum.
409.4.4 Leveling. Each car shall automatically stop at a floor landing within a tolerance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions.		ANSI 409.4.4 Leveling. Each car shall automatically stop at a floor landing within a tolerance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions.
409.4.5 Illumination Levels. Elevator car illumination shall comply with 407.4.5.		ANSI 409.4.5 Illumination. The level of illumination at the car controls, platform, and car threshold and landing sill shall be 5 foot-candles (54 lux) minimum.
409.4.6 Car Controls. Elevator car control buttons shall comply with 409.4.6, 309.3, 309.4, and shall be raised or flush.		ANSI 409.4.6 Elevator Car Controls. Elevator car controls shall comply with Sections 409.4.6 and 309.4.
409.4.6.1 Size. Control buttons shall be 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum in their smallest dimension.		ANSI 409.4.6.1 Buttons. Control buttons shall be 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum in their smallest dimension. Control buttons shall be raised or flush.
		ANSI 409.4.6.2 Height. Buttons with floor designations shall comply with Section 309.3.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
409.4.6.2 Location. Control panels shall be on a side wall, 12 inches (305 mm) minimum from any adjacent wall.		ANSI 409.4.6.3 Location. Controls shall be on a sidewall, 12 inches (305 mm) minimum from any adjacent wall.
409.4.7 Emergency Communications. Emergency two-way communication systems shall comply with 409.4.7.		ANSI 409.4.7 Emergency Communications. Emergency communications systems shall comply with Section 409.4.7.
409.4.7.1 Type. A telephone and emergency signal device shall be provided in the car.		ANSI 409.4.7.1 Type. A telephone and emergency signal device shall be provided in the car.
409.4.7.2 Operable Parts. The telephone and emergency signaling device shall comply with 309.3 and 309.4.		ANSI 409.4.7.2 Operable Parts. The telephone and emergency signaling device shall comply with Section 309.3.
409.4.7.3 Compartment. If the telephone or device is in a closed compartment, the compartment door hardware shall comply with 309.		ANSI 409.4.7.3 Compartment. If the device is in a closed compartment, the compartment door hardware shall comply with Section 309.
409.4.7.4 Cord. The telephone cord shall be 29 inches (735 mm) long minimum.		ANSI 409.4.7.4 Cord. The telephone cord shall be 29 inches (735 mm) minimum in length.
410 Platform Lifts	4.11 Platform Lifts (Wheelchair Lifts).	ANSI 410 Platform Lifts
410.1 General. Platform lifts shall comply with ASME A18.1 (1999 edition or 2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1). Platform lifts shall not be attendant-operated and shall provide unassisted entry and exit from the lift.	4.11.1 Location. Platform lifts (wheelchair lifts) permitted by 4.1 shall comply with the requirements of 4.11.	ANSI 410.1 General. Platform lifts shall comply with Section 410 and ASME/ANSI A18.1 listed in Section 105.2.6. Platform lifts shall not be attendant operated and shall provide unassisted entry and exit from the lift.
	4.11.2 Other Requirements. If platform lifts (wheelchair lifts) are used, they shall comply with 4.2.4, 4.5, 4.27, and ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, Section XX,	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
410.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces in platform lifts shall comply with 302 and 303.	1990.	ANSI 410.3 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces of platform lifts shall comply with Section 302.
410.3 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space in platform lifts shall comply with 305.	4.11.3 Entrance. If platform lifts are used then they shall facilitate unassisted entry, operation, and exit from the lift in compliance with 4.11.2.	ANSI 410.5 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space of platform lifts shall comply with Section 305.
		ANSI 410.2 Lift Entry. Lifts with doors or gates shall comply with Section 410.2.1. Lifts with ramps shall comply with Section 410.2.2.
		ANSI 410.2.2 Ramps. End ramps shall be 32 inches (815 mm) minimum in width. Side ramps shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in width.
410.4 Platform to Runway Clearance. The clearance between the platform sill and the edge of any runway landing shall be 1 inch (32 mm) maximum.		ANSI 410.4 Platform to Runway Clearance. The clearance between the platform sill and the edge of any runway landing shall be 1 1/4 inch (32 mm) maximum.
410.5 Operable Parts. Controls for platform lifts shall comply with 309.	See 4.11.2	ANSI 410.6 Operable Parts. Controls for platform lifts shall comply with Section 309.
410.6 Doors and Gates. Platform lifts shall have low-energy power-operated doors or gates complying with 404.3. Doors shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum. End doors and gates shall provide a clear width 32 inches (815 mm) minimum. Side doors and gates shall provide a clear width 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum. EXCEPTION: Platform lifts serving two landings maximum and having doors or gates on opposite sides shall be permitted to have self-closing manual doors or gates.		ANSI 410.2.1 Doors and Gates. Doors and gates shall be low energy power operated doors or gates complying with Section 404.3. Doors shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum. End door clear opening width shall be 32 inches (815 mm) minimum. Side door clear opening width shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum. EXCEPTION: Lifts serving two landings maximum and having doors or gates on opposite sides shall be permitted to have self-closing manual doors or gates.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
CHAPTER 5: GENERAL SITE AND BUILDING ELEMENTS		ANSI Chapter 5. General Site and Building Elements
501 General		ANSI 501 General
501.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 5 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.		ANSI 501.1 Scope. General site and building elements required to be accessible by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 5.
502 Parking Spaces	4.6 Parking and Passenger Loading Zones.	ANSI 502 Parking Spaces
	4.6.1 Minimum Number. Parking spaces required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.6.2 through 4.6.5. Passenger loading zones required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.6.5 and 4.6.6.	
502.1 General. Car and van parking spaces shall comply with 502. Where parking spaces are marked with lines, width measurements of parking spaces and access aisles shall be made from the centerline of the markings.		ANSI 502.1 General. Accessible car and van parking spaces shall comply with Section 502.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>EXCEPTION: Where parking spaces or access aisles are not adjacent to another parking space or access aisle, measurements shall be permitted to include the full width of the line defining the parking space or access aisle.</p>		<p>ANSI 502.3 Vehicle Space Marking. Car and van parking spaces shall be marked to define the width. Where parking spaces are marked with lines, the width measurements of parking spaces and adjacent access aisles shall be made from the centerline of the markings.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where parking spaces or access aisles are not adjacent to another parking space or access aisle, measurements shall be permitted to include the full width of the line defining the parking space or access aisle.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>502.2 Vehicle Spaces. Car parking spaces shall be 96 inches (2440 mm) wide minimum and van parking spaces shall be 132 inches (3350 mm) wide minimum, shall be marked to define the width, and shall have an adjacent access aisle complying with 502.3.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Van parking spaces shall be permitted to be 96 inches (2440 mm) wide minimum where the access aisle is 96 inches (2440 mm) wide minimum.</p>	<p>4.6.3 Parking Spaces. Accessible parking spaces shall be at least 96 in (2440 mm) wide. Parking access aisles shall be part of an accessible route to the building or facility entrance and shall comply with 4.3. Two accessible parking spaces may share a common access aisle (see Fig. 9). Parked vehicle overhangs shall not reduce the clear width of an accessible route. Parking spaces and access aisles shall be level with surface slopes not exceeding 1:50 (2%) in all directions.</p> <p>4.1.2(5)(b) EXCEPTION: Provision of all required parking spaces in conformance with "Universal Parking Design" (see appendix A4.6.3) is permitted.</p> <p>A4.6.3 Parking Spaces. . . . Universal Parking Space Design. . . . Under this design, all accessible spaces are 132 in (3350 mm) wide with a 60 in (1525 mm) access aisle (see Fig. A5(b)).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 9 indicates the access aisle shall be a minimum of 60 inches (1525 mm) wide for cars or a minimum of 96 inches (2440 mm) wide for vans. The accessible route connected to the access aisle at the front of the parking spaces shall be a minimum of 36 inches (915 mm).</p>	<p>ANSI 502.2 Vehicle Space Size. Car parking spaces shall be 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum in width. Van parking spaces shall be 132 inches (3350 mm) minimum in width.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Van parking spaces shall be permitted to be 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum in width where the adjacent access aisle is 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum in width.</p>
<p>502.3 Access Aisle. Access aisles serving parking spaces shall comply with 502.3. Access aisles shall adjoin an accessible route. Two parking spaces shall be permitted to share a common access aisle.</p>		<p>ANSI 502.4 Access Aisle. Car and van parking spaces shall have an adjacent access aisle complying with Section 502.4.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
502.3.1 Width. Access aisles serving car and van parking spaces shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum.	4.1.2(5)(a) Except as provided in (b), access aisles adjacent to accessible spaces shall be 60 in (1525 mm) wide minimum.	ANSI 502.4.2 Width. Access aisles serving car and van parking spaces shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width.
502.3.2 Length. Access aisles shall extend the full length of the parking spaces they serve.		ANSI 502.4.3 Length. Access aisles shall extend the full length of the parking spaces they serve.
502.3.3 Marking. Access aisles shall be marked so as to discourage parking in them.		ANSI 502.4.4 Marking. Access aisles shall be marked so as to discourage parking in them. Where access aisles are marked with lines, the width measurements of access aisles and adjacent parking spaces shall be made from the centerline of the markings. EXCEPTION: Where access aisles or parking spaces are not adjacent to another access aisle or parking space, measurements shall be permitted to include the full width of the line defining the access aisle or parking space.
502.3.4 Location. Access aisles shall not overlap the vehicular way. Access aisles shall be permitted to be placed on either side of the parking space except for angled van parking spaces which shall have access aisles located on the passenger side of the parking spaces.		ANSI 502.4.1 Location. Access aisles shall adjoin an accessible route. Two parking spaces shall be permitted to share a common access aisle. Access aisles shall not overlap with the vehicular way. Parking spaces shall be permitted to have access aisles placed on either side of the car or van parking space. Van parking spaces that are angled shall have access aisles located on the passenger side of the parking space.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>502.4 Floor or Ground Surfaces. Parking spaces and access aisles serving them shall comply with 302. Access aisles shall be at the same level as the parking spaces they serve. Changes in level are not permitted.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.</p>	<p>4.6.3 Parking Spaces. Accessible parking spaces shall be at least 96 in (2440 mm) wide. Parking access aisles shall be part of an accessible route to the building or facility entrance and shall comply with 4.3. Two accessible parking spaces may share a common access aisle (see Fig. 9). Parked vehicle overhangs shall not reduce the clear width of an accessible route. Parking spaces and access aisles shall be level with surface slopes not exceeding 1:50 (2%) in all directions.</p>	<p>ANSI 502.5 Floor Surfaces. Parking spaces and access aisles shall comply with Section 302 and have surface slopes not steeper than 1:48. Access aisles shall be at the same level as the parking spaces they serve.</p>
<p>502.5 Vertical Clearance. Parking spaces for vans and access aisles and vehicular routes serving them shall provide a vertical clearance of 98 inches (2490 mm) minimum.</p>	<p>4.6.5 Vertical Clearance. Provide minimum vertical clearance of 114 in (2895 mm) at accessible passenger loading zones and along at least one vehicle access route to such areas from site entrance(s) and exit(s). At parking spaces complying with 4.1.2(5)(b), provide minimum vertical clearance of 98 in (2490 mm) at the parking space and along at least one vehicle access route to such spaces from site entrance(s) and exit(s).</p>	<p>ANSI 502.6 Vertical Clearance. Parking spaces for vans, access aisles serving them, and vehicular routes from an entrance to the van parking spaces, and from the van parking spaces to a vehicular exit serving them shall provide a vertical clearance of 98 inches (2490 mm) minimum.</p>
<p>502.6 Identification. Parking space identification signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Signs identifying van parking spaces shall contain the designation "van accessible." Signs shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground surface measured to the bottom of the sign.</p>	<p>4.6.4 Signage. Accessible parking spaces shall be designated as reserved by a sign showing the symbol of accessibility (see 4.30.7). Spaces complying with 4.1.2(5)(b) shall have an additional sign "Van-Accessible" mounted below the symbol of accessibility. Such signs shall be located so they cannot be obscured by a vehicle parked in the space.</p>	<p>ANSI 502.7 Identification. Where accessible parking spaces are required to be identified by signs, the signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 703.6.3.1. Signs identifying van parking spaces shall contain the designation "van accessible." Such signs shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum above the floor of the parking space, measured to the bottom of the sign.</p>
<p>502.7 Relationship to Accessible Routes.</p>	<p>4.6.3 Parking Spaces. Accessible parking</p>	<p>ANSI 502.8 Relationship to Accessible</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
Parking spaces and access aisles shall be designed so that cars and vans, when parked, cannot obstruct the required clear width of adjacent accessible routes.	spaces shall be at least 96 in (2440 mm) wide. Parking access aisles shall be part of an accessible route to the building or facility entrance and shall comply with 4.3. Two accessible parking spaces may share a common access aisle (see Fig. 9). Parked vehicle overhangs shall not reduce the clear width of an accessible route. Parking spaces and access aisles shall be level with surface slopes not exceeding 1:50 (2%) in all directions.	Routes. Parking spaces and access aisles shall be designed so that cars and vans, when parked, cannot obstruct the required clear width of adjacent accessible routes.
503 Passenger Loading Zones	4.6.6 Passenger Loading Zones. Passenger loading zones shall provide an access aisle at least 60 in (1525 mm) wide and 20 ft (240 in) (6100 mm) long adjacent and parallel to the vehicle pull-up space (see Fig. 10). If there are curbs between the access aisle and the vehicle pull-up space, then a curb ramp complying with 4.7 shall be provided. Vehicle standing spaces and access aisles shall be level with surface slopes not exceeding 1:50 (2%) in all directions. NOTE: Figure 10 indicates an access aisle is required at a passenger loading zone which is 240 inches (6100 mm) minimum, measured parallel to the vehicle pull-up area, and 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum, measured perpendicular to the vehicle area. This aisle must be clear of obstructions and at the same level as the vehicle area.	ANSI 503 Passenger Loading Zones
503.1 General. Passenger loading zones shall comply with 503.		ANSI 503.1 General. Accessible passenger loading zones shall comply with Section 503.
503.2 Vehicle Pull-Up Space. Passenger loading zones shall provide a vehicular pull-up space 96 inches (2440 mm) wide minimum and 20 feet (6100 mm) long minimum.		ANSI 503.2 Vehicle Pull-up Space Size. Passenger loading zones shall provide a vehicular pull-up space 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum in width and 20 feet (6100 mm) minimum in length.
503.3 Access Aisle. Passenger loading zones shall provide access aisles complying with 503 adjacent to the vehicle pull-up space. Access aisles shall adjoin an accessible route and shall not overlap the vehicular way.		ANSI 503.3 Access Aisle. Passenger loading zones shall have an adjacent access aisle complying with Section 503.3.
503.3.1 Width. Access aisles serving vehicle pull-up spaces shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum.		ANSI 503.3.1 Location. Access aisles shall adjoin an accessible route. Access aisles shall not overlap the vehicular way. ANSI 503.3.2 Width. Access aisles serving vehicle pull-up spaces shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
503.3.2 Length. Access aisles shall extend the full length of the vehicle pull-up spaces they serve.		ANSI 503.3.3 Length. Access aisles shall be 20 feet (6100 mm) minimum in length.
503.3.3 Marking. Access aisles shall be marked so as to discourage parking in them.		ANSI 503.3.4 Marking. Access aisles shall be marked so as to discourage parking in them.
503.4 Floor and Ground Surfaces. Vehicle pull-up spaces and access aisles serving them shall comply with 302. Access aisles shall be at the same level as the vehicle pull-up space they serve. Changes in level are not permitted. EXCEPTION: Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.		ANSI 503.4 Floor Surfaces. Vehicle pull-up spaces and access aisles serving them shall comply with Section 302 and shall have slopes not steeper than 1:48. Access aisles shall be at the same level as the vehicle pull-up space they serve.
503.5 Vertical Clearance. Vehicle pull-up spaces, access aisles serving them, and a vehicular route from an entrance to the passenger loading zone, and from the passenger loading zone to a vehicular exit shall provide a vertical clearance of 114 inches (2895 mm) minimum.		ANSI 503.5 Vertical Clearance. Vehicle pull-up spaces, access aisles serving them, and a vehicular route from an entrance to the passenger loading zone, and from the passenger loading zone to a vehicular exit serving them, shall provide a vertical clearance of 114 inches (2895 mm) minimum.
504 Stairways	4.9 Stairs.	IBC SECTION 1009 STAIRWAYS AND HANDRAILS
504.1 General. Stairs shall comply with 504.	4.9.1 Minimum Number. Stairs required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.9.	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>IBC 1009.2 Headroom. Stairways shall have a minimum headroom clearance of 80 inches (2032 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the edge of the nosings. Such headroom shall be continuous above the stairway to the point where the line intersects the landing below, one tread depth beyond the bottom riser. The minimum clearance shall be maintained the full width of the stairway and landing.</p> <p>Exception: Spiral stairways complying with Section 1009.9 are permitted a 78-inch (1981 mm) headroom clearance.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>504.2 Treads and Risers. All steps on a flight of stairs shall have uniform riser heights and uniform tread depths. Risers shall be 4 inches (100 mm) high minimum and 7 inches (180 mm) high maximum. Treads shall be 11 inches (280 mm) deep minimum.</p>	<p>4.9.2 Treads and Risers. On any given flight of stairs, all steps shall have uniform riser heights and uniform tread widths. Stair treads shall be no less than 11 in (280 mm) wide, measured from riser to riser (see Fig. 18(a)). Open risers are not permitted.</p>	<p>IBC 1009.3 Stair treads and risers. Stair riser heights shall be 7 inches (178 mm) maximum and 4 inches (102 mm) minimum. Stair tread depths shall be 11 inches (279 mm) minimum. The riser height shall be measured vertically between the leading edges of adjacent treads. The greatest riser height within any flight of stairs shall not exceed the smallest by more than 0.375 inch (9.5 mm). The tread depth shall be measured horizontally between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads and at right angle to the tread's leading edge. The greatest tread depth within any flight of stairs shall not exceed the smallest by more than 0.375 inch (9.5 mm). Winder treads shall have a minimum tread depth of 11 inches (279 mm) measured at a right angle to the tread's leading edge at a point 12 inches (305 mm) from the side where the treads are narrower and a minimum tread depth of 10 inches (254 mm). The greatest winder tread depth at the 12-inch (305 mm) walk line within any flight of stairs shall not exceed the smallest by more than 0.375 inch (9.5 mm).</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>Exceptions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Circular stairways in accordance with Section 1009.7. 2. Winders in accordance with Section 1009.8. 3. Spiral stairways in accordance with Section 1009.9. 4. Aisle stairs in assembly seating areas where the stair pitch or slope is set, for sightline reasons, by the slope of the adjacent seating area in accordance with Section 1024.11.2. 5. In occupancies in Group R-3, as applicable in Section 101.2, within dwelling units in occupancies in Group R-2, as applicable in Section 101.2, and in occupancies in Group U, which are accessory to an occupancy in Group R-3, as applicable in Section 101.2, the maximum riser height shall be 7.75 inches (197 mm) and the minimum tread depth shall be 10 inches (254 mm), the minimum winder tread depth at the walk line shall be 10 inches (254 mm), and the minimum winder tread depth shall be 6 inches (152 mm). A nosing not less than 0.75 inch (19.1 mm) but not more than 1.25 inches (32 mm) shall be provided on stairways with solid risers where the tread depth is less than 11 inches (279 mm). 6. See the <i>International Existing Building Code</i> for the replacement of existing stairways.
		<p>IBC 1009.3.1 Dimensional uniformity. Stair treads and risers shall be of uniform size and shape. The tolerance between the largest and smallest riser or between the largest and smallest tread shall not exceed 0.375 inch (9.5 mm) in any flight of stairs.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>1. Nonuniform riser dimensions of aisle stairs complying with Section 1024.11.2.</p> <p>2. Consistently shaped winders, complying with Section 1009.8, differing from rectangular treads in the same stairway flight.</p> <p>Where the bottom or top riser adjoins a sloping public way, walkway or driveway having an established grade and serving as a landing, the bottom or top riser is permitted to be reduced along the slope to less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height with the variation in height of the bottom or top riser not to exceed one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope) of stairway width. The nosings or leading edges of treads at such nonuniform height risers shall have a distinctive marking stripe, different from any other nosing marking provided on the stair flight. The distinctive marking stripe shall be visible in descent of the stair and shall have a slip-resistant surface. Marking stripes shall have a width of at least 1 inch (25 mm) but not more than 2 inches (51 mm).</p>
<p>504.3 Open Risers. Open risers are not permitted.</p>	<p>See 4.9.2</p>	<p>See IBC 1009.3.2</p>
<p>504.4 Tread Surface. Stair treads shall comply with 302. Changes in level are not permitted.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Treads shall be permitted to have a slope not steeper than 1:48.</p>	<p>4.5.1* General. Ground and floor surfaces along accessible routes and in accessible rooms and spaces including floors, walks, ramps, stairs, and curb ramps, shall be stable, firm, slip-resistant, and shall comply with 4.5.</p>	<p>IBC 1009.5.1 Stairway walking surface. The walking surface of treads and landings of a stairway shall not be sloped steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in any direction. Stairway treads and landings shall have a solid surface. Finish floor surfaces shall be securely attached.</p> <p>Exception: In Group F, H and S occupancies, other than areas of parking structures</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		accessible to the public, openings in treads and landings shall not be prohibited provided a sphere with a diameter of 1 1/8 inches (29 mm) cannot pass through the opening.
504.5 Nosings. The radius of curvature at the leading edge of the tread shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum. Nosings that project beyond risers shall have the underside of the leading edge curved or beveled. Risers shall be permitted to slope under the tread at an angle of 30 degrees maximum from vertical. The permitted projection of the nosing shall extend 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum over the tread below.	4.9.3 Nosings. The undersides of nosings shall not be abrupt. The radius of curvature at the leading edge of the tread shall be no greater than 1/2 in (13 mm). Risers shall be sloped or the underside of the nosing shall have an angle not less than 60 degrees from the horizontal. Nosings shall project no more than 1-1/2 in (38 mm) (see Fig. 18).	IBC 1009.3.2 Profile. The radius of curvature at the leading edge of the tread shall be not greater than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm). Beveling of nosings shall not exceed 0.5 inch (12.7 mm). Risers shall be solid and vertical or sloped from the underside of the leading edge of the tread above at an angle not more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical. The leading edge (nosings) of treads shall project not more than 1.25 inches (32 mm) beyond the tread below and all projections of the leading edges shall be of uniform size, including the leading edge of the floor at the top of a flight. Exceptions: 1. Solid risers are not required for stairways that are not required to comply with Section 1007.3, provided that the opening between treads does not permit the passage of a sphere with a diameter of 4 inches (102 mm). 2. Solid risers are not required for occupancies in Group I-3.
504.6 Handrails. Stairs shall have handrails complying with 505.	4.9.4 Handrails. Stairways shall have handrails at both sides of all stairs. Handrails shall comply with 4.26 . . .	See IBC 1009.11
504.7 Wet Conditions. Stair treads and landings subject to wet conditions shall be designed to prevent the accumulation of water.	4.9.6 Outdoor Conditions. Outdoor stairs and their approaches shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on walking surfaces.	IBC 1009.5.2 Outdoor conditions. Outdoor stairways and outdoor approaches to stairways shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on walking surfaces. In other than occupancies in Group R-3, and occupancies in Group U that are accessory to

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		an occupancy in Group R-3, treads, platforms and landings that are part of exterior stairways in climates subject to snow or ice shall be protected to prevent the accumulation of same.
	4.9.5 Detectable Warnings at Stairs. (Reserved).	
505 Handrails		
505.1 General. Handrails provided along walking surfaces complying with 403, required at ramps complying with 405, and required at stairs complying with 504 shall comply with 505.		
505.2 Where Required. Handrails shall be provided on both sides of stairs and ramps. EXCEPTION: In assembly areas, handrails shall not be required on both sides of aisle ramps where a handrail is provided at either side or within the aisle width.	<p>4.8.5 Handrails. If a ramp run has a rise greater than 6 in (150 mm) or a horizontal projection greater than 72 in (1830 mm), then it shall have handrails on both sides. Handrails are not required on curb ramps or adjacent to seating in assembly areas. Handrails shall comply with 4.26 and shall have the following features:</p> <p>(1) Handrails shall be provided along both sides of ramp segments. The inside handrail on switchback or dogleg ramps shall always be</p>	<p>*ANSI 505.2 Location. Handrails shall be provided on both sides of stairs and ramps. EXCEPTION: Aisle stairs and aisle ramps provided with a handrail either at the side or within the aisle width.</p>

* The ANSI handrail requirements only apply to ramps in the IBC, as stairs and their handrails are regulated in Chapter 10 of the IBC.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>continuous.</p> <p>4.9.4 Handrails. Stairways shall have handrails at both sides of all stairs. Handrails shall comply with 4.26 and shall have the following features:</p> <p>(1) Handrails shall be continuous along both sides of stairs. The inside handrail on switchback or dogleg stairs shall always be continuous (see Fig. 19(a) and (b)).</p>	<p>IBC 1009.11 [Stair] Handrails. Stairways shall have handrails on each side. Handrails shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.7. Handrails for ramps, where required by Section 1010.8, shall comply with this section.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Aisle stairs complying with Section 1024 provided with a center handrail need not have additional handrails. 2. Stairways within dwelling units, spiral stairways and aisle stairs serving seating only on one side are permitted to have a handrail on one side only. 3. Decks, patios and walkways that have a single change in elevation where the landing depth on each side of the change of elevation is greater than what is required for a landing do not require handrails. 4. In Group R-3 occupancies, a change in elevation consisting of a single riser at an entrance or egress door does not require handrails. 5. Changes in room elevations of only one riser within dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies do not require handrails.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>505.3 Continuity. Handrails shall be continuous within the full length of each stair flight or ramp run. Inside handrails on switchback or dogleg stairs and ramps shall be continuous between flights or runs.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In assembly areas, handrails on ramps shall not be required to be continuous in aisles serving seating.</p>		<p>505.3 Continuity. Handrails shall be continuous within the full length of each stair flight or ramp run. Inside handrails on switchback or dogleg stairs or ramps shall be continuous between flights or runs. Other handrails shall comply with Sections 505.10 and 307.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Handrails in aisles serving seating.</p>
		<p>IBC 1009.11.4 Continuity. Handrail-gripping surfaces shall be continuous, without interruption by newel posts or other obstructions.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Handrails within dwelling units are permitted to be interrupted by a newel post at a stair landing. 2. Within a dwelling unit, the use of a volute, turnout or starting easing is allowed on the lowest tread. 3. Handrail brackets or balusters attached to the bottom surface of the handrail that do not project horizontally beyond the sides of the handrail within 1.5 inches (38 mm) of the bottom of the handrail shall not be considered to be obstructions and provided further that for each 0.5 inch (13 mm) of additional handrail perimeter dimension above 4 inches (102 mm), the vertical clearance dimension of 1.5 inches (38 mm) shall be permitted to be reduced by 0.125 inch (3 mm).

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
505.4 Height. Top of gripping surfaces of handrails shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 38 inches (965 mm) maximum vertically above walking surfaces, stair nosings, and ramp surfaces. Handrails shall be at a consistent height above walking surfaces, stair nosings, and ramp surfaces.	4.8.5(5) Top of [ramp] handrail gripping surfaces shall be mounted between 34 in and 38 in (865 mm and 965 mm) above ramp surfaces. 4.9.4(5) Top of [stair] handrail gripping surface shall be mounted between 34 in and 38 in (865 mm and 965 mm) above stair nosings.	ANSI 505.4 Height. Top of gripping surfaces of handrails shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 38 inches (965 mm) maximum vertically above stair nosings, ramp surfaces and walking surfaces. Handrails shall be at a consistent height above stair nosings, ramp surfaces and walking surfaces.
		IBC 1009.11.1 Height. Handrail height, measured above stair tread nosings, or finish surface of ramp slope, shall be uniform, not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm).
505.5 Clearance. Clearance between handrail gripping surfaces and adjacent surfaces shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.	4.8.5(3) The clear space between the [ramp] handrail and the wall shall be 1 - 1/2 in (38 mm). 4.9.4(3) The clear space between [stair] handrails and wall shall be 1-1/2 in (38 mm).	ANSI 505.5 Clearance. Clearance between handrail gripping surface and adjacent surfaces shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.
		IBC 1009.11.6 Clearance. Clear space between a handrail and a wall or other surface shall be a minimum of 1.5 inches (38 mm). A handrail and a wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>505.6 Gripping Surface. Handrail gripping surfaces shall be continuous along their length and shall not be obstructed along their tops or sides. The bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall not be obstructed for more than 20 percent of their length. Where provided, horizontal projections shall occur 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum below the bottom of the handrail gripping surface.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where handrails are provided along walking surfaces with slopes not steeper than 1:20, the bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall be permitted to be obstructed along their entire length where they are integral to crash rails or bumper guards. 2. The distance between horizontal projections and the bottom of the gripping surface shall be permitted to be reduced by 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) for each 1/2 inch (13 mm) of additional handrail perimeter dimension that exceeds 4 inches (100 mm). 	<p>4.8.5(4) Gripping surfaces shall be continuous [ramp].</p> <p>4.9.4(4) Gripping surfaces shall be uninterrupted by newel posts, other construction elements, or obstructions [stairs].</p>	<p>ANSI 505.6 Gripping Surface. Gripping surfaces shall be continuous, without interruption by newel posts, other construction elements, or obstructions.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Handrail brackets or balusters attached to the bottom surface of the handrail shall not be considered obstructions, provided they comply with the following criteria: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) not more than 20 percent of the handrail length is obstructed, b) horizontal projections beyond the sides of the handrail occur 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum below the bottom of the handrail, and provided that for each 1/2 inch (13 mm) of additional handrail perimeter dimension above 4 inches (100 mm), the vertical clearance dimension of 1 1/2 inch (38 mm) can be reduced by 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), and c) edges shall be rounded. 2. Where handrails are provided along walking surfaces with slopes not steeper than 1:20, the bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall be permitted to be obstructed along their entire length where they are integral to crash rails or bumper guards.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		See IBC 1009.11.4
505.7 Cross Section. Handrail gripping surfaces shall have a cross section complying with 505.7.1 or 505.7.2.	4.26.2 Size and Spacing of Grab Bars and Handrails. The diameter or width of the gripping surfaces of a handrail or grab bar shall be 1-1/4 in to 1-1/2 in (32 mm to 38 mm), or the shape shall provide an equivalent gripping surface. If handrails or grab bars are mounted adjacent to a wall, the space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1-1/2 in (38 mm) (see Fig. 39(a), (b), (c), and (e)). Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is a maximum of 3 in (75 mm) deep and extends at least 18 in (455 mm) above the top of the rail (see Fig. 39(d)).	ANSI 505.7 Cross Section. Handrails shall have a cross section complying with Section 505.7.1 or 505.7.2.
		IBC 1009.11.3 [Stair] Handrail graspability. Handrails with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of at least 1.25 inches (32 mm) and not greater than 2 inches (51 mm) or shall provide equivalent graspability. If the handrail is not circular, it shall have a perimeter dimension of at least 4 inches (102 mm) and not greater than 6.25 inches (160 mm) with a maximum cross-section dimension of 2.25 inches (57 mm). Edges shall have a minimum radius of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm).
505.7.1 Circular Cross Section. Handrail gripping surfaces with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.		ANSI 505.7.1 Circular Cross Section. Handrails with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
505.7.2 Non-Circular Cross Sections. Handrail gripping surfaces with a non-circular cross section shall have a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 6 1/4 inches (160 mm) maximum, and a cross-section dimension of 2 1/4 inches (57 mm) maximum.		ANSI 505.7.2 Noncircular Cross Sections. Handrails with a noncircular cross section shall have a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 6 1/4 inches (160 mm) maximum, and a cross-section dimension of 2 1/4 inches (57 mm) maximum.
505.8 Surfaces. Handrail gripping surfaces and any surfaces adjacent to them shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements and shall have rounded edges.		ANSI 505.8 Surfaces. Handrails, and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to them, shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall be rounded.
		See IBC 1009.11.6
505.9 Fittings. Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.	4.8.5(7) [Ramp] Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings. 4.9.4(7) [Stair] Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.	505.9 Fittings. Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.
505.10 Handrail Extensions. Handrail gripping surfaces shall extend beyond and in the same direction of stair flights and ramp runs in accordance with 505.10. EXCEPTIONS: 1. Extensions shall not be required for continuous handrails at the inside turn of switchback or dogleg stairs and ramps. 2. In assembly areas, extensions shall not be required for ramp handrails in aisles serving seating where the handrails are discontinuous to provide access to seating and to permit		ANSI 505.10 Handrail Extensions. Handrails shall extend beyond and in the same direction of stair flights and ramp runs in accordance with Section 505.10. EXCEPTIONS: 1. Continuous handrails at the inside turn of stairs and ramps. 2. Extensions are not required for handrails in aisles serving seating where the handrails are discontinuous to provide access to seating and to permit crossovers within the aisle.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>crossovers within aisles.</p> <p>.</p>		<p>IBC 1009.11.5 [Stair] Handrail extensions. Handrails shall return to a wall, guard or the walking surface or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight. Where handrails are not continuous between flights, the handrails shall extend horizontally at least 12 inches (305mm) beyond the top riser and continue to slope for the depth of one tread beyond the bottom riser.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Handrails within a dwelling unit that is not required to be accessible need extend only from the top riser to the bottom riser. 2. Aisle handrails in Group A occupancies in accordance with Section 1024.13.
<p>3. In alterations, full extensions of handrails shall not be required where such extensions would be hazardous due to plan configuration</p>	<p>4.1.6(3)(b) Stairs: Full extension of handrails at stairs shall not be required in alterations where such extensions would be hazardous or impossible due to plan configuration.</p>	<p>ANSI 505.10 Exception</p> <p>3. In alterations, full extensions of handrails shall not be required where such extensions would be hazardous due to plan configuration.</p>
<p>505.10.1 Top and Bottom Extension at Ramps. Ramp handrails shall extend horizontally above the landing for 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the top and bottom of ramp runs. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard, or the landing surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent ramp run.</p>	<p>4.8.5(2) If handrails are not continuous, they shall extend at least 12 in (305 mm) beyond the top and bottom of the ramp segment and shall be parallel with the floor or ground surface (see Fig. 17).</p> <p>4.8.5(6) Ends of [ramp] handrails shall be either rounded or returned smoothly to floor, wall, or post.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 17 shows front and side elevations of ramps that provide handrail</p>	<p>ANSI 505.10.1 Top and Bottom Extension at Ramps. Ramp handrails shall extend horizontally above the landing 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the top and bottom of ramp runs. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard, or floor, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent ramp run.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>extensions at the top and bottom that are 12 inches long minimum. The handrails are located between 34 and 38 inches high, measured from the ramp surface. Where a second rail is provided below the handrail, it is less than 27 inches high as measured from the ramp surface. The clear dimension between handrails is shown to be 36 inches minimum.</p> <p>The figure also illustrates four forms of edge protection: 2 inch minimum curbs along both sides of the ramp; walls along both sides of the ramp; rail balustrades; and a ramp surface that extends 12 inches minimum in width beyond both railings.</p>	
505.10.2 Top Extension at Stairs. At the top of a stair flight, handrails shall extend horizontally above the landing for 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beginning directly above the first riser nosing. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard, or the landing surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight.	4.9.4(2) If handrails are not continuous, they shall extend at least 12 in (305 mm) beyond the top riser and at least 12 in (305 mm) plus the width of one tread beyond the bottom riser. At the top, the extension shall be parallel with the floor or ground surface. At the bottom, the handrail shall continue to slope for a distance of the width of one tread from the bottom riser; the remainder of the extension shall be horizontal (see Fig. 19(c) and (d)). Handrail extensions shall comply with 4.4.	See IBC 1009.11.5
505.10.3 Bottom Extension at Stairs. At the bottom of a stair flight, handrails shall extend at the slope of the stair flight for a horizontal distance at least equal to one tread depth beyond the last riser nosing. Extension shall return to a wall, guard, or the landing surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight.	4.9.4(6) Ends of [stair] handrails shall be either rounded or returned smoothly to floor, wall or post.	See IBC 1009.11.5
		IBC 1009.11.7 Stairway projections. Projections into the required width at each handrail shall not exceed 4.5 inches (114 mm)

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		at or below the handrail height. Projections into the required width shall not be limited above the minimum headroom height required in Section 1009.2.
	4.12 Windows. 4.12.1 General. (Reserved). 4.12.2 Window Hardware. (Reserved).	ANSI 506 Windows Accessible windows shall have operable parts complying with Section 309.
CHAPTER 6: PLUMBING ELEMENTS AND FACILITIES		ANSI Chapter 6. Plumbing Elements and Facilities
601 General		ANSI 601 General
601.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 6 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.		ANSI 601.1 Scope. Plumbing elements and facilities required to be accessible by scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 6.
602 Drinking Fountains	4.15 Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers.	ANSI 602 Drinking Fountains
602.1 General. Drinking fountains shall comply with 307 and 602.	4.15.1 Minimum Number. Drinking fountains or water coolers required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.15.	ANSI 602.1 General. Accessible drinking fountains shall comply with Sections 602 and 307.
602.2 Clear Floor Space. Units shall have a clear floor or ground space complying with 305 positioned for a forward approach and centered on the unit. Knee and toe clearance	4.15.5 Clearances. (1) Wall- and post-mounted cantilevered units shall have a clear knee space between the	ANSI 602.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for a forward approach to the drinking fountain, shall be provided. Knee and toe space

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>complying with 306 shall be provided. EXCEPTION: A parallel approach complying with 305 shall be permitted at units for children's use where the spout is 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground and is 3 1/2 inches (90 mm) maximum from the front edge of the unit, including bumpers.</p>	<p>bottom of the apron and the floor or ground at least 27 in (685 mm) high, 30 in (760 mm) wide, and 17 in to 19 in (430 mm to 485 mm) deep (see Fig. 27(a) and (b)). Such units shall also have a minimum clear floor space 30 in by 48 in (760 mm by 1220 mm) to allow a person in a wheelchair to approach the unit facing forward.</p> <p>See also Appendix 4.15.5</p> <p>(2) Free-standing or built-in units not having a clear space under them shall have a clear floor space at least 30 in by 48 in (760 mm by 1220 mm) that allows a person in a wheelchair to make a parallel approach to the unit (see Fig. 27(c) and (d)). This clear floor space shall comply with 4.2.4.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 27(a) indicates that, in addition to clearances discussed in the text, the following knee clearance is required underneath the fountain: 27 inches (685 mm) minimum from the floor to the underside of the fountain which extends 8 inches (205 mm) minimum measured from the front edge underneath the fountain back towards the wall; if a minimum 9 inches (230 mm) of toe clearance is provided, a maximum of 6 inches (150 mm) of the 48 inches (1220 mm) of clear floor space required at the fixture may extend into the toe space. (4.15.2, 4.15.5)</p> <p>Figure 27(b) show a 48 inch (1220 mm) minimum by 30 inch (760 mm) minimum clear floor space is required for a forward approach</p>	<p>complying with Section 306 shall be provided. The clear floor space shall be centered on the drinking fountain.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Drinking fountains for standing persons. 2. Drinking fountains primarily for children's use shall be permitted where the spout is 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the floor, and a parallel approach complying with Section 305, centered on the drinking fountain, is provided. 305, centered on the drinking fountain, shall be permitted. 3. In existing buildings, existing drinking fountains providing a parallel approach complying with Section 305, centered on the drinking fountain, shall be permitted. 4. Where specifically permitted by the administrative authority, a parallel approach complying with Section 305, centered on the drinking fountain, shall be permitted for drinking fountains that replace existing drinking fountains with a parallel approach.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>to a wall-mounted fountain. If the wall-mounted fountain is in an alcove, the minimum width of the alcove is 30 inches (760 mm) and the depth is 24 inches (610 mm) maximum.</p> <p>Figure 27(c) illustrates a free-standing fountain or cooler. A 48 inch (1220 mm) minimum by 30 inch (760 mm) minimum clear floor space is required for a side approach (long side parallel to the front of the fountain or cooler).</p> <p>Figure 27(d) shows a built-in fountain or cooler. A 48 inch (1220 mm) minimum by 30 inch (760 mm) minimum clear floor space is required for a side approach (long side parallel to the front of the fountain or cooler). The recess for the fountain is not to exceed the fountain depth.</p>	
602.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts shall comply with 309.	4.15.4 Controls. Controls shall comply with 4.27.4. Unit controls shall be front mounted or side mounted near the front edge.	ANSI 602.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts shall comply with Section 309.
602.4 Spout Height. Spout outlets shall be 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.	4.15.2 Spout Height. Spouts shall be no higher than 36 in (915 mm), measured from the floor or ground surfaces to the spout outlet (see Fig. 27(a)).	ANSI 602.4 Spout Outlet Height. Spout outlets of wheelchair accessible drinking fountains shall be 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor. Spout outlets of drinking fountains for standing persons shall be 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 43 inches (1090 mm) maximum above the floor.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>602.5 Spout Location. The spout shall be located 15 inches (380 mm) minimum from the vertical support and 5 inches (125 mm) maximum from the front edge of the unit, including bumpers.</p>	<p>4.15.3 Spout Location. The spouts of drinking fountains and water coolers shall be at the front of the unit and shall direct the water flow in a trajectory that is parallel or nearly parallel to the front of the unit. The spout shall provide a flow of water at least 4 in (100 mm) high so as to allow the insertion of a cup or glass under the flow of water. On an accessible drinking fountain with a round or oval bowl, the spout must be positioned so the flow of water is within 3 in (75 mm) of the front edge of the fountain.</p>	<p>ANSI 602.5 Spout Location. The spout shall be located 15 inches (380 mm) minimum from the vertical support and 5 inches (125 mm) maximum from the front edge of the drinking fountain, including bumpers. Where only a parallel approach is provided, the spout shall be located 31/2 inches (89 mm) maximum from the front edge of the drinking fountain, including bumpers.</p>
<p>602.6 Water Flow. The spout shall provide a flow of water 4 inches (100 mm) high minimum and shall be located 5 inches (125 mm) maximum from the front of the unit. The angle of the water stream shall be measured horizontally relative to the front face of the unit. Where spouts are located less than 3 inches (75 mm) of the front of the unit, the angle of the water stream shall be 30 degrees maximum. Where spouts are located between 3 inches (75 mm) and 5 inches (125 mm) maximum from the front of the unit, the angle of the water stream shall be 15 degrees maximum.</p>		<p>ANSI 602.6 Water Flow. The spout shall provide a flow of water 4 inches (102 mm) minimum in height. The angle of the water stream from spouts within 3 inches (76 mm) of the front of the drinking fountain shall be 30 degrees maximum, and from spouts between 3 inches (76 mm) and 5 inches (125 mm) from the front of the drinking fountain shall be 15 degrees maximum, measured horizontally relative to the front face of the drinking fountain.</p>
<p>602.7 Drinking Fountains for Standing Persons. Spout outlets of drinking fountains for standing persons shall be 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 43 inches (1090 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.</p>		
<p>603 Toilet and Bathing Rooms</p>	<p>4.22 Toilet Rooms.</p>	<p>ANSI 603 Toilet and Bathing Rooms</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	4.23 Bathrooms, Bathing Facilities, and Shower Rooms.	
603.1 General. Toilet and bathing rooms shall comply with 603.	4.22.1 Minimum Number. Toilet facilities required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.22. Accessible toilet rooms shall be on an accessible route.	ANSI 603.1 General. Accessible toilet and bathing rooms shall comply with Section 603.
	4.23.1 Minimum Number. Bathrooms, bathing facilities, or shower rooms required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.23 and shall be on an accessible route.	
603.2 Clearances. Clearances shall comply with 603.2.	4.22.3 Clear Floor Space [Toilet Rooms]. The accessible fixtures and controls required in 4.22.4, 4.22.5, 4.22.6, and 4.22.7 shall be on an accessible route. An unobstructed turning space complying with 4.2.3 shall be provided within an accessible toilet room. The clear floor space at fixtures and controls, the accessible route, and the turning space may overlap.	ANSI 603.2 Clearances.
603.2.1 Turning Space. Turning space complying with 304 shall be provided within the room.		ANSI 603.2.1 Turning Space. A turning space complying with Section 304 shall be provided within the room.
603.2.2 Overlap. Required clear floor spaces, clearance at fixtures, and turning space shall be permitted to overlap.	4.23.3 Clear Floor Space [Bathrooms, Bathing Facilities, and Shower Rooms]. The accessible fixtures and controls required in 4.23.4, 4.23.5, 4.23.6, 4.23.7, 4.23.8, and 4.23.9 shall be on an accessible route. An unobstructed turning space complying with 4.2.3 shall be provided within an accessible bathroom. The clear floor spaces at fixtures and controls, the accessible route, and the turning space may overlap.	ANSI 603.2.2 Overlap. Clear floor spaces, clearances at fixtures, and turning spaces shall be permitted to overlap.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>603.2.3 Door Swing. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space or clearance required for any fixture. Doors shall be permitted to swing into the required turning space.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. Doors to a toilet room or bathing room for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use shall be permitted to swing into the clear floor space or clearance provided the swing of the door can be reversed to comply with 603.2.3.</p> <p>2. Where the toilet room or bathing room is for individual use and a clear floor space complying with 305.3 is provided within the room beyond the arc of the door swing, doors shall be permitted to swing into the clear floor space or clearance required for any fixture.</p>	<p>4.22.2 Doors [Toilet Rooms]. All doors to accessible toilet rooms shall comply with 4.13. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space required for any fixture.</p> <p>4.23.2 Doors Space [Bathrooms, Bathing Facilities, and Shower Rooms]. Doors to accessible bathrooms shall comply with 4.13. Doors shall not swing into the floor space required for any fixture.</p>	<p>ANSI 603.2.3 Door Swing. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space or clearance for any fixture.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. Doors to a toilet and bathing room for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use shall be permitted to swing into the clear floor space, provided the swing of the door can be reversed to meet Section 603.2.3.</p> <p>2. Where the room is for individual use and a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided within the room beyond the arc of the door swing.</p>
<p>603.3 Mirrors. Mirrors located above lavatories or countertops shall be installed with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Mirrors not located above lavatories or countertops shall be installed with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 35 inches (890 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.</p>	<p>4.22.6 Lavatories and Mirrors[Toilet Rooms]. If lavatories and mirrors are provided, then at least one of each shall comply with 4.19.</p> <p>4.23.6 Lavatories and Mirrors Space [Bathrooms, Bathing Facilities, and Shower Rooms]. If lavatories and mirrors are provided, then at least one of each shall comply with 4.19.</p>	<p>ANSI 603.3 Mirrors. Mirrors located above lavatories, sinks or counters shall be mounted with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the floor. Mirrors not located above lavatories, sinks or counters shall be mounted with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 35 inches (890 mm) maximum above the floor.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	4.19.6 Mirrors. Mirrors shall be mounted with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface no higher than 40 in (1015 mm) above the finish floor (see Fig. 31).	
603.4 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Coat hooks shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in 308. Shelves shall be located 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finish floor.		ANSI 603.4 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Coat hooks shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in Section 308. Shelves shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor.
604 Water Closets and Toilet Compartments	4.16 Water Closets.	ANSI 604 Water Closets and Toilet Compartments
	4.17 Toilet Stalls.	
604.1 General. Water closets and toilet compartments shall comply with 604.2 through 604.8. EXCEPTION: Water closets and toilet compartments for children's use shall be permitted to comply with 604.9.	4.16.1 General. Accessible water closets shall comply with 4.16.2 through 4.16.6. See also Appendix 4.16.1	ANSI 604.1 General. Accessible water closets and toilet compartments shall comply with Section 604. Compartments containing more than one plumbing fixture shall comply with Section 603. Wheelchair accessible compartments shall comply with Section 604.8. Ambulatory accessible compartments shall comply with Section 604.9. EXCEPTION: Water closets and toilet compartments primarily for children's use shall be permitted to comply with Section 604.10 as applicable.
	4.17.1 Location. Accessible toilet stalls shall be on an accessible route and shall meet the requirements of 4.17.2 through 4.17.6. 4.17.2 Water Closets. Water closets in accessible stalls shall comply with 4.16. See also Appendix 4.17.1	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>604.2 Location. The water closet shall be positioned with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum to 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition, except that the water closet shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition in the ambulatory accessible toilet compartment specified in 604.8.2. Water closets shall be arranged for a left-hand or right-hand approach.</p>	<p>4.16.2 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space for water closets not in stalls shall comply with Fig. 28. Clear floor space may be arranged to allow either a left-handed or right-handed approach.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 28 shows that for a front transfer to the water closet, the minimum clear floor space at the water closet is a minimum 48 inches (1220 mm) in width by a minimum of 66 inches (1675 mm) in length. For a diagonal transfer to the water closet, the minimum clear floor space is a minimum of 48 inches (1220 mm) in width by a minimum of 56 inches (1420 mm) in length. For a side transfer to the water closet, the minimum clear floor space is a minimum of 60 inches (1525 mm) in width by a minimum of 56 inches (1420 mm) in length. (4.16.2, A4.22.3)</p>	<p>ANSI 604.2 Location. The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum to 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition. Water closets located in ambulatory accessible compartments specified in Section 604.9 shall have the centerline of the water closet 17 inches (430 mm) minimum to 19 inches (485 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition.</p>
<p>604.3 Clearance. Clearances around water closets and in toilet compartments shall comply with 604.3.</p>		<p>ANSI 604.3 Clearance.</p>
<p>604.3.1 Size. Clearance around a water closet shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the side wall and 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall.</p>		<p>ANSI 604.3.1 Size. A clearance around a water closet 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum, measured perpendicular from the sidewall, and 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum, measured perpendicular from the rear wall, shall be provided.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>604.3.2 Overlap. The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, dispensers, sanitary napkin disposal units, coat hooks, shelves, accessible routes, clear floor space and clearances required at other fixtures, and the turning space. No other fixtures or obstructions shall be located within the required water closet clearance.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In residential dwelling units, a lavatory complying with 606 shall be permitted on the rear wall 18 inches (455 mm) minimum from the water closet centerline where the clearance at the water closet is 66 inches (1675 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall.</p>		<p>ANSI 604.3.2 Overlap. The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, paper dispensers, sanitary napkin receptacles, coat hooks, shelves, accessible routes, clear floor space at other fixtures and the turning space. No other fixtures or obstructions shall be within the required water closet clearance.</p>
<p>604.4 Seats. The seat height of a water closet above the finish floor shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum measured to the top of the seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A water closet in a toilet room for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use shall not be required to comply with 604.4. 2. In residential dwelling units, the height of water closets shall be permitted to be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the finish floor measured to the top of the seat. 	<p>4.16.3 Height. The height of water closets shall be 17 in to 19 in (430 mm to 485 mm), measured to the top of the toilet seat (see Fig. 29(b)). Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.</p> <p>Note: In Figure 29(b) the top of the seat of the water closet is 17 in to 19 in (430 mm to 485 mm).</p>	<p>ANSI 604.4 Height. The height of water closet seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: A water closet in a toilet room for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, shall not be required to comply with Section 604.4.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>604.5 Grab Bars. Grab bars for water closets shall comply with 609. Grab bars shall be provided on the side wall closest to the water closet and on the rear wall.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a toilet room for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with 604.5. 2. In residential dwelling units, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in toilet or bathrooms provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with 604.5. 3. In detention or correction facilities, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in housing or holding cells that are specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention. 	<p>4.16.4 Grab Bars. Grab bars for water closets not located in stalls shall comply with 4.26 and Fig. 29. The grab bar behind the water closet shall be 36 in (915 mm) minimum.</p>	<p>ANSI 604.5 Grab Bars. Grab bars for water closets shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Sections 604.5.1 and 604.5.2. Grab bars shall be provided on the rear wall and on the side wall closest to the water closet.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Grab bars are not required to be installed in a toilet room for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 604.5. 2. In detention or correction facilities, grab bars are not required to be installed in housing or holding cells or rooms that are specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention. 3. In Type A units, grab bars are not required to be installed where reinforcement complying with Section 1003.11.4 is installed for the future installation of grab bars. 4. In Type B units located in institutional facilities and assisted living facilities, two swing-up grab bars shall be permitted to be installed in lieu of the rear wall and side wall grab bars. Swing-up grab bars shall comply with Sections 604.5.3 and 609. 5. In a Type B unit, where fixtures are located on both sides of the water closet, a swing-up grab bar complying with Sections 604.5.3 and 609 shall be permitted. The swing-up grab bar shall be installed on the side of the water closet with the 18 inch (455 mm) clearance required by Section 1004.11.3.1.2.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>604.5.1 Side Wall. The side wall grab bar shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) long minimum, located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the rear wall and extending 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum from the rear wall.</p>	<p>Note: In Figure 29(a) a 36 inches (915 mm) minimum length grab bar, mounted 33-36 inches (840-915 mm) above the finish floor, is required behind the water closet. The grab bar must extend at least 12 inches (305 mm) from the centerline of the water closet toward the side wall and at least 24 inches (610 mm) from the centerline of the water closet toward the open side.</p> <p>In Figure 29(b) a 42 inch (1065 mm) minimum length grab bar is required to the side of the water closet spaced 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the back wall and extending a minimum of 54 inches (1370 mm) from the back wall at a height between 33 and 36 inches (840-915 mm). The toilet paper dispenser shall be mounted at a minimum height of 19 inches (485 mm). (4.16.3, 4.16.4, 4.16.6)</p>	<p>ANSI 604.5.1 Fixed Side Wall Grab Bars. Fixed sidewall grab bars shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in length, located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the rear wall and extending 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum from the rear wall. In addition, a vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be mounted with the bottom of the bar located between 39 inches (990 mm) and 41 inches (1040 mm) above the floor, and with the center line of the bar located between 39 inches (990 mm) and 41 inches (1040 mm) from the rear wall.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In Type A and Type B units, the vertical grab bar component is not required. 2. In a Type B unit, when a side wall is not available for a 42-inch (1065 mm) grab bar, the sidewall grab bar shall be permitted to be 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length, located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the rear wall and extending 30 inches (760 mm) minimum from the rear wall.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>604.5.2 Rear Wall. The rear wall grab bar shall be 36 inches (915 mm) long minimum and extend from the centerline of the water closet 12 inches (305 mm) minimum on one side and 24 inches (610 mm) minimum on the other side.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rear grab bar shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum, centered on the water closet, where wall space does not permit a length of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum due to the location of a recessed fixture adjacent to the water closet. 2. Where an administrative authority requires flush controls for flush valves to be located in a position that conflicts with the location of the rear grab bar, then the rear grab bar shall be permitted to be split or shifted to the open side of the toilet area. 	<p>NOTE: In Figure 29(a) a 36 inch (915 mm) minimum length grab bar is required behind the water closet mounted at a height between 33 and 36 inches (840-915 mm). The grab bar must extend a minimum of 12 inches (305) beyond the center of the water closet toward the side wall and a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) toward the open side for either a left or right side approach.</p> <p>Figure 30(c) indicates the grab bar on the back wall shall be 36 inches minimum in length, extending from the wall toward the open side of the water closet, 33-36 inches above the finish floor.</p>	<p>ANSI 604.5.2 Rear Wall Grab Bars. The rear wall grab bar shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length, and extend from the centerline of the water closet 12 inches (305 mm) minimum on the side closest to the wall, and 24 inches (610 mm) minimum on the transfer side.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rear grab bar shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, centered on the water closet, where wall space does not permit a grab bar 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length due to the location of a recessed fixture adjacent to the water closet. 2. In a Type A or Type B unit, the rear grab bar shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, centered on the water closet, where wall space does not permit a grab bar 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length. 3. Where an administrative authority requires flush controls for flush valves to be located in a position that conflicts with the location of the rear grab bar, that grab bar shall be permitted to be split or shifted to the open side of the toilet area.
		<p>ANSI 604.5.3 Swing-up Grab Bars. Where swing-up grab bars are installed, a clearance of 18 inches (455 mm) minimum from the centerline of the water closet to any side wall or obstruction shall be provided. A swing-up grab bar shall be installed with the centerline of the grab bar 15³/₄ inches (400 mm) from the centerline of the water closet. Swing-up grab bars shall be 28 inches (710 mm)</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		minimum in length, measured from the wall to the end of the horizontal portion of the grab bar.
604.6 Flush Controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with 309. Flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet except in ambulatory accessible compartments complying with 604.8.2.	4.16.5 Flush Controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic and shall comply with 4.27.4. Controls for flush valves shall be mounted on the wide side of toilet areas no more than 44 in (1120 mm) above the floor.	ANSI 604.6 Flush Controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Section 309. Flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet. EXCEPTION: In ambulatory accessible compartments complying with Section 604.9, flush controls shall be permitted to be located on either side of the water closet.
604.7 Dispensers. Toilet paper dispensers shall comply with 309.4 and shall be 7 inches (180 mm) minimum and 9 inches (230 mm) maximum in front of the water closet measured to the centerline of the dispenser. The outlet of the dispenser shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finish floor and shall not be located behind grab bars. Dispensers shall not be of a type that controls delivery or that does not allow continuous paper flow.	4.16.6 Dispensers. Toilet paper dispensers shall be installed within reach, as shown in Fig. 29(b). Dispensers that control delivery, or that do not permit continuous paper flow, shall not be used. NOTE: In Figure 29(b) the toilet paper dispenser is required to be mounted at a minimum height of 19 inches (485 mm). (4.16.3, 4.16.4, 4.16.6)	ANSI 604.7 Dispensers. Toilet paper dispensers shall comply with Section 309.4 and shall be 7 inches (180 mm) minimum and 9 inches (230 mm) maximum in front of the water closet measured to the centerline of the dispenser. The outlet of the dispenser shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor, and shall not be located behind the grab bars. Dispensers shall not be of a type that control delivery, or do not allow continuous paper flow.
604.8 Toilet Compartments. Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments shall meet the requirements of 604.8.1 and 604.8.3. Compartments containing more than one plumbing fixture shall comply with 603. Ambulatory accessible compartments shall comply with 604.8.2 and 604.8.3.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
604.8.1 Wheelchair Accessible Compartments. Wheelchair accessible compartments shall comply with 604.8.1.		ANSI 604.8 Wheelchair Accessible Compartments.
		ANSI 604.8.1 General. Wheelchair accessible compartments shall comply with Section 604.8.
604.8.1.1 Size. Wheelchair accessible compartments shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum measured perpendicular to the side wall, and 56 inches (1420 mm) deep minimum for wall hung water closets and 59 inches (1500 mm) deep minimum for floor mounted water closets measured perpendicular to the rear wall. Wheelchair accessible compartments for children's use shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum measured perpendicular to the side wall, and 59 inches (1500 mm) deep minimum for wall hung and floor mounted water closets measured perpendicular to the rear wall.	4.17.3 Size and Arrangement. The size and arrangement of the standard toilet stall shall comply with Fig. 30(a), Standard Stall. Standard toilet stalls with a minimum depth of 56 in (1420 mm) (see Fig. 30(a)) shall have wall-mounted water closets. If the depth of a standard toilet stall is increased at least 3 in (75 mm), then a floor-mounted water closet may be used. Arrangements shown for standard toilet stalls may be reversed to allow either a left- or right-hand approach. Additional stalls shall be provided in conformance with 4.22.4. EXCEPTION: In instances of alteration work where provision of a standard stall (Fig. 30(a)) is technically infeasible or where plumbing code requirements prevent combining existing stalls to provide space, either alternate stall (Fig. 30(b)) may be provided in lieu of the standard stall. NOTE: In Figure 30(a), the location of the door is illustrated to be in front of the clear space (next to the water closet), with a maximum stile width of 4 inches (100 mm). An alternate door location is illustrated to be on the side of the toilet stall with a maximum stile width of 4 inches (100 mm). The minimum width of the standard stall shall be 60 inches (1525 mm). The centerline of the water closet shall be 18 inches (455 mm) from the side wall.	ANSI 604.8.2 Size. The minimum area of a wheelchair accessible compartment shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width measured perpendicular to the side wall, and 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum in depth for wall hung water closets, and 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in depth for floor mounted water closets measured perpendicular to the rear wall. The minimum area of a wheelchair accessible compartment for primarily children's use shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width measured perpendicular to the side wall, and 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in depth for wall hung and floor mounted water closets measured perpendicular to the rear wall.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>Figure 30(a-1) indicates that where a standard stall is provided at the end of a row of stalls, the door (if located on the side of the stall) may swing into to the stall, if the length of the stall is extended at least a minimum of 36 inches (915 mm) beyond the required minimum length.</p> <p>In Figure 30(b), two alternate stalls are illustrated; one alternate stall is required to be 36 inches (915 mm) in width. The other alternate stall is required to be a minimum of 48 inches (1220 mm) in width. If a wall mounted water closet is used, the depth of the stall is required to be a minimum of 66 inches (1675 mm). If a floor mounted water closet is used, the depth of the stall is required to be a minimum of 69 inches (1745 mm). The 36 inch wide stall shall have parallel grab bars on the side walls. The 48 inch minimum stall shall have a grab bar behind the water closet and one on the side wall next to the water closet. In each alternate, the centerline of the water closet is 18 inches (455 mm) from a side wall.</p>	
<p>604.8.1.2 Doors. Toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with 404 except that if the approach is to the latch side of the compartment door, clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum. Doors shall be located in the front partition or in the side wall or partition farthest from the water closet. Where located in the front partition, the door opening shall be 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition farthest from the water closet. Where located in the side wall or partition, the</p>	<p>4.17.5 Doors. Toilet stall doors, including door hardware, shall comply with 4.13. If toilet stall approach is from the latch side of the stall door, clearance between the door side of the stall and any obstruction may be reduced to a minimum of 42 in (1065 mm) (Fig. 30).</p>	<p>ANSI 604.8.3 Doors. Toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with Section 404.1, except if the approach is to the latch side of the compartment door clearance between the door side of the stall and any obstruction shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum. Doors shall be located in the front partition or in the side wall or partition farthest from the water closet. Where located in the front partition, the door opening shall be 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition farthest from the water closet. Where located in the side wall or partition, the</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>door opening shall be 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front partition. The door shall be self-closing. A door pull complying with 404.2.7 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Toilet compartment doors shall not swing into the minimum required compartment area.</p>		<p>door opening shall be 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front partition. The door shall be self-closing. A door pull complying with Section 404.2.6 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Toilet compartment doors shall not swing into the required minimum area of the compartment.</p>
<p>604.8.1.3 Approach. Compartments shall be arranged for left-hand or right-hand approach to the water closet.</p>	<p>See 4.17.3</p>	<p>ANSI 604.8.4 Approach. Wheelchair accessible compartments shall be arranged for left-hand or right-hand approach to the water closet.</p>
<p>604.8.1.4 Toe Clearance. The front partition and at least one side partition shall provide a toe clearance of 9 inches (230 mm) minimum above the finish floor and 6 inches (150 mm) deep minimum beyond the compartment-side face of the partition, exclusive of partition support members. Compartments for children's use shall provide a toe clearance of 12 inches (305 mm) minimum above the finish floor.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Toe clearance at the front partition is not required in a compartment greater than 62 inches (1575 mm) deep with a wall-hung water closet or 65 inches (1650 mm) deep with a floor-mounted water closet. Toe clearance at the side partition is not required in a compartment greater than 66 inches (1675 mm) wide. Toe clearance at the front partition is not required in a compartment for children's use that is greater than 65 inches (1650 mm) deep.</p>	<p>4.17.4 Toe Clearances. In standard stalls, the front partition and at least one side partition shall provide a toe clearance of at least 9 in (230 mm) above the floor. If the depth of the stall is greater than 60 in (1525 mm), then the toe clearance is not required.</p>	<p>ANSI 604.8.5 Toe Clearance. The front partition and at least one side partition shall provide a toe clearance of 9 inches (230 mm) minimum above the floor and extending 6 inches (150 mm) beyond the compartment side face of the partition, exclusive of partition support members. Compartments primarily for children's use shall provide a toe clearance of 12 inches (305 mm) minimum above the floor and extending 6 inches (150 mm) beyond the compartment side face of the partition, exclusive of partition support members.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Toe clearance at the front partition is not required in a compartment greater than 62 inches (1575 mm) in depth with a wall-hung water closet, or greater than 65 inches (1650 mm) in depth with a floor-mounted water closet. In a compartment primarily for children's use, greater than 65 inches (1650 mm) in depth, toe clearance at the front partition is not required. 2. Toe clearance at the side partition is not required in a compartment greater than 66

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		inches (1675 mm) in width.
<p>604.8.1.5 Grab Bars. Grab bars shall comply with 609. A side-wall grab bar complying with 604.5.1 shall be provided and shall be located on the wall closest to the water closet. In addition, a rear-wall grab bar complying with 604.5.2 shall be provided.</p>	<p>4.17.6 Grab Bars. Grab bars complying with the length and positioning shown in Fig. 30(a), (b), (c), and (d) shall be provided. Grab bars may be mounted with any desired method as long as they have a gripping surface at the locations shown and do not obstruct the required clear floor area. Grab bars shall comply with 4.26.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 30(c) indicates grab bars located behind the water closet shall be at least 36 inches (915 mm) in length. One end of the grab bar is shown near the corner of the stall closest to the water closet. Figure 30(a) shows this end 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the corner. All grab bars shall be located 33-36 inches (840-915 mm) above the finish floor.</p>	<p>ANSI 604.8.6 Grab Bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609. Side wall grab bars complying with Section 604.5.1 located on the wall closest to the water closet, and a rear wall grab bar complying with Section 604.5.2, shall be provided.</p>
<p>604.8.2 Ambulatory Accessible Compartments. Ambulatory accessible compartments shall comply with 604.8.2.</p>		<p>ANSI 604.9 Ambulatory Accessible Compartments.</p>
		<p>ANSI 604.9.1 General. Ambulatory accessible compartments shall comply with Section 604.9.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
604.8.2.1 Size. Ambulatory accessible compartments shall have a depth of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum and a width of 35 inches (890 mm) minimum and 37 inches (940 mm) maximum.	4.22.4 Water Closets. If toilet stalls are provided, then at least one shall be a standard toilet stall complying with 4.17; where 6 or more stalls are provided, in addition to the stall complying with 4.17.3, at least one stall 36 in (915 mm) wide with an outward swinging, self-closing door and parallel grab bars complying with Fig. 30(d) and 4.26 shall be provided. Water closets in such stalls shall comply with 4.16. If water closets are not in stalls, then at least one shall comply with 4.16.	ANSI 604.9.2 Size. The minimum area of an ambulatory accessible compartment shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in depth and 36 inches (915 mm) in width.
604.8.2.2 Doors. Toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with 404, except that if the approach is to the latch side of the compartment door, clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum. The door shall be self-closing. A door pull complying with 404.2.7 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Toilet compartment doors shall not swing into the minimum required compartment area.		ANSI 604.9.3 Doors. Toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with Section 404, except if the approach is to the latch side of the compartment door the clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum. The door shall be self-closing. A door pull complying with Section 404.2.6 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Compartment doors shall not swing into the required minimum area of the compartment.
604.8.2.3 Grab Bars. Grab bars shall comply with 609. A side-wall grab bar complying with 604.5.1 shall be provided on both sides of the compartment.	NOTE: Figure 30(d) indicates the side grab bar shall be 40-42 inches in length, beginning 12 inches maximum from the rear wall, 33-36 inches above the finish floor.	ANSI 604.9.4 Grab Bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609. Side wall grab bars complying with Section 604.5.1 shall be provided on both sides of the compartment.
604.8.3 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Coat hooks shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in 308. Shelves shall be located 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finish		ANSI 604.11 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Coat hooks provided within toilet compartments shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor. Shelves shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm)

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
floor.		maximum above the floor.
604.9 Water Closets and Toilet Compartments for Children's Use. Water closets and toilet compartments for children's use shall comply with 604.9.	See Appendix 4.16.7 and Appendix 4.17.7	ANSI 604.10 Water Closets and Toilet Compartments for Children's Use.
		ANSI 604.10.1 General. Accessible water closets and toilet compartments primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 604.10.
604.9.1 Location. The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition, except that the water closet shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition in the ambulatory accessible toilet compartment specified in 604.8.2. Compartments shall be arranged for left-hand or right-hand approach to the water closet.		ANSI 604.10.2 Location. The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum to 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition. Water closets located in ambulatory accessible toilet compartments specified in Section 604.9 shall be located as specified in Section 604.2.
604.9.2 Clearance. Clearance around a water closet shall comply with 604.3.		ANSI 604.10.3 Clearance. A clearance around a water closet complying with Section 604.3 shall be provided.
604.9.3 Height. The height of water closets shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum and 17 inches (430 mm) maximum measured to the top of the seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.		ANSI 604.10.4 Height. The height of water closet seats shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum and 17 inches (430 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
604.9.4 Grab Bars. Grab bars for water closets shall comply with 604.5.		ANSI 604.10.5 Grab Bars. Grab bars for water closets shall comply with Section 604.5.
604.9.5 Flush Controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with 309.2 and 309.4 and shall be installed 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor. Flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet except in ambulatory accessible compartments complying with 604.8.2.		ANSI 604.10.6 Flush Controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Sections 309.2 and 309.4 and shall be installed 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor. Flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet. EXCEPTION: In ambulatory accessible compartments complying with Section 604.9, flush controls shall be permitted to be located on either side of the water closet.
604.9.6 Dispensers. Toilet paper dispensers shall comply with 309.4 and shall be 7 inches (180 mm) minimum and 9 inches (230 mm) maximum in front of the water closet measured to the centerline of the dispenser. The outlet of the dispenser shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the finish floor. There shall be a clearance of 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum below the grab bar. Dispensers shall not be of a type that controls delivery or that does not allow continuous paper flow.		ANSI 604.10.7 Dispensers. Toilet paper dispensers shall comply with Section 309.4 and shall be 7 inches (180 mm) minimum and 9 inches (230 mm) maximum in front of the water closet measured to the center line of the dispenser. The outlet of the dispenser shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the floor. There shall be a clearance of 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum below the grab bar. Dispensers shall not be of a type that control delivery or do not allow continuous paper flow.
604.9.7 Toilet Compartments. Toilet compartments shall comply with 604.8.		ANSI 604.10.8 Toilet Compartments. Toilet compartments shall comply with Sections 604.8 and 604.9, as applicable.
605 Urinals	4.18 Urinals.	ANSI 605 Urinals
605.1 General. Urinals shall comply with 605.	4.18.1 General. Accessible urinals shall comply with 4.18.	ANSI 605.1 General. Accessible urinals shall comply with Section 605.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
605.2 Height and Depth. Urinals shall be the stall-type or the wall-hung type with the rim 17 inches (430 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Urinals shall be 13 1/2 inches (345 mm) deep minimum measured from the outer face of the urinal rim to the back of the fixture.	4.18.2 Height. Urinals shall be stall-type or wall-hung with an elongated rim at a maximum of 17 in (430 mm) above the finish floor.	ANSI 605.2 Height. Urinals shall be of the stall type or shall be of the wall hung type with the rim at 17 inches (430 mm) maximum above the floor.
605.3 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 positioned for forward approach shall be provided.	4.18.3 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space 30 in by 48 in (760 mm by 1220 mm) shall be provided in front of urinals to allow forward approach. This clear space shall adjoin or overlap an accessible route and shall comply with 4.2.4. Urinal shields that do not extend beyond the front edge of the urinal rim may be provided with 29 in (735 mm) clearance between them.	ANSI 605.3 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for forward approach, shall be provided.
605.4 Flush Controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with 309.	4.18.4 Flush Controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic, and shall comply with 4.27.4, and shall be mounted no more than 44 in (1120 mm) above the finish floor	ANSI 605.4 Flush Controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Section 309.
606 Lavatories and Sinks	4.19 Lavatories and Mirrors.	ANSI 606 Lavatories and Sinks
	4.24 Sinks.	
606.1 General. Lavatories and sinks shall comply with 606.	4.19.1 General. The requirements of 4.19 shall apply to lavatory fixtures, vanities, and built-in lavatories.	ANSI 606.1 General. Accessible lavatories and sinks shall comply with Section 606.
	4.24.1 General. Sinks required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.24.	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>606.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with 305, positioned for a forward approach, and knee and toe clearance complying with 306 shall be provided.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A parallel approach complying with 305 shall be permitted to a kitchen sink in a space where a cook top or conventional range is not provided and to wet bars. 2. A lavatory in a toilet room or bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use shall not be required to provide knee and toe clearance complying with 306. 3. In residential dwelling units, cabinetry shall be permitted under lavatories and kitchen sinks provided that all of the following conditions are met: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the fixture; (b) the finish floor extends under the cabinetry; and (c) the walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished. 4. A knee clearance of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground shall be permitted at lavatories and sinks used 	<p>4.19.3 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space 30 in by 48 in (760 mm by 1220 mm) complying with 4.2.4 shall be provided in front of a lavatory to allow forward approach. Such clear floor space shall adjoin or overlap an accessible route and shall extend a maximum of 19 in (485 mm) underneath the lavatory (see Fig. 32).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 32 indicates the minimum depth of the lavatory is 17 inches (430 mm). (4.19.3, 4.24.5)</p> <p>4.24.5 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space at least 30 in by 48 in (760 mm by 1220 mm) complying with 4.2.4 shall be provided in front of a sink to allow forward approach. The clear floor space shall be on an accessible route and shall extend a maximum of 19 in (485 mm) underneath the sink (see Fig. 32).</p>	<p>ANSI 606.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305.3, positioned for forward approach, shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. The dip of the overflow shall not be considered in determining knee and toe clearances.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A parallel approach complying with Section 305 shall be permitted to a kitchen sink in a space where a cook top or conventional range is not provided. 2. The requirement for knee and toe clearance shall not apply to a lavatory in a toilet and bathing facility for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use. 3. A knee clearance of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the floor shall be permitted at lavatories and sinks used primarily by children ages 6 through 12 where the rim or counter surface is 31 inches (785 mm) maximum above the floor. 4. A parallel approach complying with Section 305 shall be permitted at lavatories and sinks used primarily by children ages 5 and younger. 5. The requirement for knee and toe clearance

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>primarily by children 6 through 12 years where the rim or counter surface is 31 inches (785 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.</p> <p>5. A parallel approach complying with 305 shall be permitted to lavatories and sinks used primarily by children 5 years and younger.</p> <p>6. The dip of the overflow shall not be considered in determining knee and toe clearances.</p> <p>7. No more than one bowl of a multi-bowl sink shall be required to provide knee and toe clearance complying with 306.</p>	<p>4.24.3 Knee Clearance. Knee clearance that is at least 27 in (685 mm) high, 30 in (760 mm) wide, and 19 in (485 mm) deep shall be provided underneath sinks.</p> <p>See also Appendix 4.19.2 EXCEPTIONS</p>	<p>shall not apply to more than one bowl of a multibowl sink.</p> <p>6. A parallel approach shall be permitted at wet bars.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>606.3 Height. Lavatories and sinks shall be installed with the front of the higher of the rim or counter surface 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. A lavatory in a toilet or bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use shall not be required to comply with 606.3.</p> <p>2. In residential dwelling unit kitchens, sinks that are adjustable to variable heights, 29 inches (735 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum, shall be permitted where rough-in plumbing permits connections of supply and drain pipes for sinks mounted at the height of 29 inches (735 mm).</p>	<p>4.19.2 Height and Clearances. Lavatories shall be mounted with the rim or counter surface no higher than 34 in (865 mm) above the finish floor. Provide a clearance of at least 29 in (735 mm) above the finish floor to the bottom of the apron. Knee and toe clearance shall comply with Fig. 31.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 31 indicates that, in addition to clearances discussed in the text, the following knee clearance is required underneath the lavatory: 27 inches (685 mm) minimum from the floor to the underside of the lavatory which extends 8 inches (205 mm) minimum measured from the front edge underneath the lavatory back towards the wall; if a minimum 9 inches (230 mm) of toe clearance is provided, a maximum of 6 inches (150 mm) of the 48 inches (1220 mm) of clear floor space required at the fixture may extend into the toe space. (4.19.2, 4.19.6). Additionally, the figure shows a vertical clearance of 29 inches (735 mm) to the underside of the lavatory apron.</p>	<p>ANSI 606.3 Height. The front of lavatories and sinks shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the higher of the rim or counter surface.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: A lavatory in a toilet and bathing facility for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, shall not be required to comply with Section 606.3.</p>
	<p>4.24.2 Height. Sinks shall be mounted with the counter or rim no higher than 34 in (865 mm) above the finish floor.</p>	
	<p>4.24.4 Depth. Each sink shall be a maximum of 6-1/2 in (165 mm) deep.</p>	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
606.4 Faucets. Controls for faucets shall comply with 309. Hand-operated metering faucets shall remain open for 10 seconds minimum.	4.19.5 Faucets. Faucets shall comply with 4.27.4. Lever-operated, push-type, and electronically controlled mechanisms are examples of acceptable designs. If self-closing valves are used the faucet shall remain open for at least 10 seconds.	ANSI 606.4 Faucets. Faucets shall comply with Section 309. Hand-operated metering faucets shall remain open for 10 seconds minimum.
	4.24.7 Faucets. Faucets shall comply with 4.27.4. Lever-operated, push-type, touch-type, or electronically controlled mechanisms are acceptable designs.	
606.5 Exposed Pipes and Surfaces. Water supply and drain pipes under lavatories and sinks shall be insulated or otherwise configured to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under lavatories and sinks.	4.19.4 Exposed Pipes and Surfaces. Hot water and drain pipes under lavatories shall be insulated or otherwise configured to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under lavatories.	ANSI 606.6 Exposed Pipes and Surfaces. Water supply and drainpipes under lavatories and sinks shall be insulated or otherwise configured to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under lavatories and sinks.
	4.24.6 Exposed Pipes and Surfaces. Hot water and drain pipes exposed under sinks shall be insulated or otherwise configured so as to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under sinks.	
		ANSI 606.7 Operable Parts. Operable parts on towel dispensers and hand dryers shall comply with Table 606.7.
607 Bathtubs	4.20 Bathtubs.	ANSI 607 Bathtubs
607.1 General. Bathtubs shall comply with 607.	4.20.1 General. Accessible bathtubs shall comply with 4.20.	ANSI 607.1 General. Accessible bathtubs shall comply with Section 607.
607.2 Clearance. Clearance in front of bathtubs shall extend the length of the bathtub	4.20.2 Floor Space. Clear floor space in front of bathtubs shall be as shown in Fig. 33.	ANSI 607.2 Clearance. A clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>and shall be 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum. A lavatory complying with 606 shall be permitted at the control end of the clearance. Where a permanent seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.</p>	<p>NOTE: Figure 33(a) indicates that, if the approach is parallel to the bathtub, a 30 inch (760 mm) minimum width by 60 inch (1525 mm) minimum length clear space is required alongside the bathtub. If the approach is perpendicular to the bathtub, a 48 inch (1220 mm) minimum width by 60 inch (1525 mm) minimum length clear space is required.</p> <p>Figure 33(b) indicates that, if the approach is parallel to the bathtub with a seat at the head end, a 30 inch (760 mm) minimum width by 75 inch (1905 mm) minimum length clear space is required alongside the bathtub. The seat width must be 15 inches (380 mm) and must extend the full width of the bathtub.</p>	<p>and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a permanent seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.</p>
<p>607.3 Seat. A permanent seat at the head end of the bathtub or a removable in-tub seat shall be provided. Seats shall comply with 610.</p>	<p>4.20.3 Seat. An in-tub seat or a seat at the head end of the tub shall be provided as shown in Fig. 33 and 34. The structural strength of seats and their attachments shall comply with 4.26.3. Seats shall be mounted securely and shall not slip during use.</p>	<p>ANSI 607.3 Seat. A permanent seat at the head end of the bathtub or a removable in-tub seat shall be provided. Seats shall comply with Section 610.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>607.4 Grab Bars. Grab bars for bathtubs shall comply with 609 and shall be provided in accordance with 607.4.1 or 607.4.2.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a bathtub located in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with 607.4.</p> <p>2. In residential dwelling units, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in bathtubs located in bathing facilities provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with 607.4.</p>	<p>4.20.4 Grab Bars. Grab bars complying with 4.26 shall be provided as shown in Fig. 33 and 34.</p>	<p>ANSI 607.4 Grab Bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 607.4.1 or 607.4.2.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 607.4.</p> <p>2. In Type A units, grab bars are not required to be installed where reinforcement complying with Section 1003.11.9 is installed for the future installation of grab bars.</p>
<p>607.4.1 Bathtubs With Permanent Seats. For bathtubs with permanent seats, grab bars shall be provided in accordance with 607.4.1.</p>		<p>ANSI 607.4.1 Bathtubs with Permanent Seats. For bathtubs with permanent seats, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.1 shall be provided.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>607.4.1.1 Back Wall. Two grab bars shall be installed on the back wall, one located in accordance with 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be installed 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the head end wall and 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.</p>	<p>NOTE: Figure 34(a) indicates at the foot of the tub, the grab bar shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length measured from the outer edge of the tub. On the back wall, two grab bars are required. The grab bars mounted on the back (long) wall shall be a minimum 24 inches (610 mm) in length located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the foot of the tub and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head of the tub. One grab bar shall be located 9 inches (230 mm) above the rim of the tub. The others shall be 33 to 36 inches (840 mm to 910 mm) above the bathroom floor. At the head of the tub, the grab bar shall be a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) in length measured from the outer edge of the tub.</p>	<p>ANSI 607.4.1.1 Back Wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other 9 inches (230 mm) above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be located 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.</p>
<p>607.4.1.2 Control End Wall. A grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum shall be installed on the control end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.</p>		<p>ANSI 607.4.1.2 Control End Wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.1.2. EXCEPTION: An L-shaped continuous grab bar of equivalent dimensions and positioning shall be permitted to serve the function of separate vertical and horizontal grab bars.</p>
		<p>ANSI 607.4.1.2.1 Horizontal Grab Bar. A horizontal grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.</p>
		<p>ANSI 607.4.1.2.2 Vertical Grab Bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum to 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the bathtub.
607.4.2 Bathtubs Without Permanent Seats. For bathtubs without permanent seats, grab bars shall comply with 607.4.2.	See 4.20.4	ANSI 607.4.2 Bathtubs without Permanent Seats. For bathtubs without permanent seats, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.2 shall be provided.
607.4.2.1 Back Wall. Two grab bars shall be installed on the back wall, one located in accordance with 609.4 and other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum and shall be installed 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.	NOTE: Figure 34(b) indicates at the foot of the tub, the grab bar shall be a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) in length measured from the outer edge of the tub. On the back wall, two grab bars are required. The grab bars mounted on the back wall shall be a minimum of 48 inches (1220 mm) in length located a maximum of 12 inches (305 mm) from the foot of the tub and a maximum of 15 inches (380 mm) from the head of the tub. Heights of grab bars are as described above.	ANSI 607.4.2.1 Back Wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other 9 inches (230 mm) above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, located 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.
607.4.2.2 Control End Wall. A grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum shall be installed on the control end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.		ANSI 607.4.2.2 Control End Wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.2.2. EXCEPTION: An L-shaped continuous grab bar of equivalent dimensions and positioning shall be permitted to serve the function of separate vertical and horizontal grab bars.
		ANSI 607.4.2.2.1 Horizontal Grab Bar. A horizontal grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall beginning near the front edge of the bathtub and extend toward the inside corner of the bathtub.
		ANSI 607.4.2.2.2 Vertical Grab Bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		wall 3 inches (76 mm) minimum to 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (102 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the bathtub.
607.4.2.3 Head End Wall. A grab bar 12 inches (305 mm) long minimum shall be installed on the head end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.	See 4.20.4 NOTE: Figure 34(a) indicates at the foot of the tub, the grab bar shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length measured from the outer edge of the tub. On the back wall, two grab bars are required. The grab bars mounted on the back (long) wall shall be a minimum 24 inches (610 mm) in length located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the foot of the tub and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head of the tub. One grab bar shall be located 9 inches (230 mm) above the rim of the tub. The others shall be 33 to 36 inches (840 mm to 910 mm) above the bathroom floor. At the head of the tub, the grab bar shall be a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) in length measured from the outer edge of the tub.	ANSI 607.4.2.3 Head End Wall. A horizontal grab bar 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the head end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.
607.5 Controls. Controls, other than drain stoppers, shall be located on an end wall. Controls shall be between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Controls shall comply with 309.4.	4.20.5 Controls. Faucets and other controls complying with 4.27.4 shall be located as shown in Fig. 34. NOTE: In figures 34(a) and (b) the control area at the foot of the tub is located on the open side of the tub.	ANSI 607.5 Controls. Controls, other than drain stoppers, shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the midpoint of the width of the bathtub. Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
607.6 Shower Spray Unit and Water. A shower spray unit with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) long minimum that can be used both as a fixed-position shower head and as a hand-held shower shall be provided. The shower spray unit shall have an on/off control with a non-positive shut-off. If an adjustable-height shower head on a vertical bar is used, the bar shall be installed so as not to obstruct the use of grab bars. Bathtub shower spray units shall deliver water that is 120°F (49°C) maximum.	4.20.6 Shower Unit. A shower spray unit with a hose at least 60 in (1525 mm) long that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand-held shower shall be provided.	ANSI 607.6 Hand Shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature. An adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.
		ANSI 607.8 Water Temperature. Bathtubs shall deliver water that is 120 degrees F (49 degrees C) maximum.
607.7 Bathtub Enclosures. Enclosures for bathtubs shall not obstruct controls, faucets, shower and spray units or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto bathtub seats or into bathtubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks installed on the rim of the open face of the bathtub.	4.20.7 Bathtub Enclosures. If provided, enclosures for bathtubs shall not obstruct controls or transfer from wheelchairs onto bathtub seats or into tubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks mounted on their rims.	ANSI 607.7 Bathtub Enclosures. Enclosures for bathtubs shall not obstruct controls or transfer from wheelchairs onto bathtub seats or into bathtubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks installed on the rim of the bathtub.
608 Shower Compartments	4.21 Shower Stalls.	ANSI 608 Shower Compartments
608.1 General. Shower compartments shall comply with 608.	4.21.1 General. Accessible shower stalls shall comply with 4.21.	ANSI 608.1 General. Accessible shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.
608.2 Size and Clearances for Shower Compartments. Shower compartments shall have sizes and clearances complying with 608.2.	4.21.2 Size and Clearances. Except as specified in 9.1.2, shower stall size and clear floor space shall comply with Fig. 35(a) or (b). The shower stall in Fig. 35(a) shall be 36 in by 36 in (915 mm by 915 mm). Shower stalls	ANSI 608.2 Size and Clearances.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>608.2.1 Transfer Type Shower Compartments. Transfer type shower compartments shall be 36 inches (915 mm) by 36 inches (915 mm) clear inside dimensions measured at the center points of opposing sides and shall have a 36 inch (915 mm) wide minimum entry on the face of the shower compartment. Clearance of 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum by 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum measured from the control wall shall be provided.</p>	<p>required by 9.1.2 shall comply with Fig. 57(a) or (b). The shower stall in Fig. 35(b) will fit into the space required for a bathtub.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 35(a) shows that the clear floor space shall be a minimum of 48 inches (1220 mm) in length by a minimum of 36 inches (915 mm) in width and allow for a parallel approach. The clear floor space shall extend 1 foot beyond the shower wall on which the seat is mounted.</p>	<p>ANSI 608.2.1 Transfer-Type Shower Compartments. Transfer-type shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of 36 inches (915 mm) in width and 36 inches (915 mm) in depth, measured at the center point of opposing sides. An entry 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width shall be provided. A clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control wall, and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment.</p>
<p>608.2.2 Standard Roll-In Type Shower Compartments. Standard roll-in type shower compartments shall be 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) deep minimum clear inside dimensions measured at center points of opposing sides and shall have a 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum entry on the face of the shower compartment.</p>	<p>Figure 35(b) shows that the clear floor space alongside the shower shall be a minimum of 60 inches (1220 mm) in length by a minimum of 36 inches (915 mm) in width.</p>	<p>ANSI 608.2.2 Standard Roll-in-Type Shower Compartments. Standard roll-in-type shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, measured at the center point of opposing sides. An entry 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width shall be provided. A clearance of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length adjacent to the 60-inch (1525 mm) width of the open face of the shower compartment, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, shall be provided. A lavatory complying with Section 606 shall be permitted at the end of the clearance opposite the shower compartment side where shower controls are positioned. Where shower controls are located on the back wall and no seat is provided, the lavatory shall be permitted at either end of the clearance.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>608.2.2.1 Clearance. A 30 inch (760 mm) wide minimum by 60 inch (1525 mm) long minimum clearance shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the shower compartment.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: A lavatory complying with 606 shall be permitted on one 30 inch (760 mm) wide minimum side of the clearance provided that it is not on the side of the clearance adjacent to the controls or, where provided, not on the side of the clearance adjacent to the shower seat.</p>		
<p>608.2.3 Alternate Roll-In Type Shower Compartments. Alternate roll-in type shower compartments shall be 36 inches (915 mm) wide and 60 inches (1525 mm) deep minimum clear inside dimensions measured at center points of opposing sides. A 36 inch (915 mm) wide minimum entry shall be provided at one end of the long side of the compartment.</p>	<p>9.1.2 Accessible Units, Sleeping Rooms, and Suites. Accessible sleeping rooms or suites that comply with the requirements of 9.2 (Requirements for Accessible Units, Sleeping Rooms, and Suites) shall be provided in conformance with the table below. In addition, in hotels, of 50 or more sleeping rooms or suites, additional accessible sleeping rooms or suites that include a roll- in shower shall also be provided in conformance with the table below. Such accommodations shall comply with the requirements of 9.2, 4.21, and Figure 57(a) or (b).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 57(a) indicates that where a fixed seat is provided in a 30 inch minimum by 60 inch (716 mm by 1220 mm) minimum shower stall, the controls and spray unit on the back (long) wall shall be located a maximum of 27 inches (685 mm) from the side wall where the seat is attached. (4.21.2, 9.1.2)</p> <p>In Figure 57(b), an alternate 36 inch minimum by 60 inch (915 mm by 1220 mm) minimum shower stall is illustrated. The width of the stall</p>	<p>ANSI 608.2.3 Alternate Roll-in-Type Shower Compartments. Alternate roll-in shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width, and 36 inches (915 mm) in depth, measured at the center point of opposing sides. An entry 36 inches (915) mm minimum in width shall be provided at one end of the 60-inch (1525 mm) width of the compartment. A seat wall, 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum in length, shall be provided on the entry side of the compartment.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>opening stall shall be a minimum of 36 inches (915 mm) clear located on a long wall at the opposite end of the shower from the controls. The shower seat shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length by 16 inches (330 mm) minimum in width and may be rectangular in shape. The seat shall be located next to the opening to the shower and adjacent to the end wall containing the shower head and controls. (4.21.2, 9.1.2, A4.23.3)</p>	
<p>608.3 Grab Bars. Grab bars shall comply with 609 and shall be provided in accordance with 608.3. Where multiple grab bars are used, required horizontal grab bars shall be installed at the same height above the finish floor.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a shower located in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office, and not for common use or public use provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with 608.3. 2. In residential dwelling units, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in showers located in bathing facilities provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with 608.3. 	<p>4.21.4 Grab Bars. Grab bars complying with 4.26 shall be provided as shown in Fig. 37.</p> <p>NOTE: In Figure 37(a), the diagram illustrates an L-shaped grab bar that is located along the full depth of the control wall (opposite the seat) and halfway along the back wall. The grab bar shall be mounted between 33 to 36 inches (840-915 mm) above the shower floor. The bottom of the control area shall be a maximum of 38 inches (965 mm) high and the top of the control area shall be a maximum of 48 inches (1220 mm) high. The controls and spray unit shall be within 18 inches (455 mm) of the front of the shower.</p> <p>In Figure 37(b), the diagram illustrates a U-shaped grab bar that wraps around the stall. The grab bar shall be between 33 to 36 inches (840-915 mm) high. The controls are placed in an area between 38 inches and 48 inches (965 mm and 1220 mm) above the floor. If the controls are located on the back (long) wall they shall be located 27 inches (685 mm) from</p>	<p>ANSI 608.3 Grab Bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 608.3. Where multiple grab bars are used, required horizontal grab bars shall be installed at the same height above the floor.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Grab bars are not required to be installed in a shower facility for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 608.3. 2. In Type A units, grab bars are not required to be installed where reinforcement complying with Section 1003.11.9 is installed for the future installation of grab bars.
<p>608.3.1 Transfer Type Shower Compartments. In transfer type compartments, grab bars shall be provided across the control wall and back wall to a point</p>		<p>ANSI 608.3.1 Transfer-Type Showers. Grab bars for transfer type showers shall comply with Section 608.3.1.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
18 inches (455 mm) from the control wall.	the side wall. The shower head and control area may be located on either side wall.	ANSI 608.3.1.1 Horizontal Grab Bars. Horizontal grab bars shall be provided across the control wall and on the back wall to a point 18 inches (455 mm) from the control wall.
		ANSI 608.3.1.2 Vertical Grab Bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum to 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the shower.
		ANSI 608.3.1.3 Grab Bar Configuration. Grab bars complying with Sections 608.3.1.1 and 608.3.1.2 shall be permitted to be separate bars, a single piece bar, or combination thereof.
608.3.2 Standard Roll-In Type Shower Compartments. Where a seat is provided in standard roll-in type shower compartments, grab bars shall be provided on the back wall and the side wall opposite the seat. Grab bars shall not be provided above the seat. Where a seat is not provided in standard roll-in type shower compartments, grab bars shall be provided on three walls. Grab bars shall be installed 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from adjacent walls.		ANSI 608.3.2 Standard Roll-in-Type Showers. In standard roll-in type showers, grab bars shall be provided on three walls of showers without seats. Where a seat is provided in a standard roll-in type shower, grab bars shall be provided on the back wall and on the wall opposite the seat. Grab bars shall not be provided above the seat. Grab bars shall be 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent wall.
608.3.3 Alternate Roll-In Type Shower Compartments. In alternate roll-in type shower compartments, grab bars shall be provided on the back wall and the side wall farthest from the compartment entry. Grab bars shall not be provided above the seat. Grab	See 9.1.2	ANSI 608.3.3 Alternate Roll-in-Type Showers. In alternate roll-in type showers, grab bars shall be provided on the back wall and the end wall adjacent to the seat. Grab bars shall not be provided above the seat. Grab bars shall be 6 inches (150 mm)

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
bars shall be installed 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from adjacent walls.		maximum from the adjacent wall.
<p>608.4 Seats. A folding or non-folding seat shall be provided in transfer type shower compartments. A folding seat shall be provided in roll-in type showers required in transient lodging guest rooms with mobility features complying with 806.2. Seats shall comply with 610.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In residential dwelling units, seats shall not be required in transfer type shower compartments provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls so as to permit the installation of seats complying with 608.4.</p>	<p>4.21.3 Seat. A seat shall be provided in shower stalls 36 in by 36 in (915 mm by 915 mm) and shall be as shown in Fig. 36. The seat shall be mounted 17 in to 19 in (430 mm to 485 mm) from the bathroom floor and shall extend the full depth of the stall. In a 36 in by 36 in (915 mm by 915 mm) shower stall, the seat shall be on the wall opposite the controls. Where a fixed seat is provided in a 30 in by 60 in minimum (760 mm by 1525 mm) shower stall, it shall be a folding type and shall be mounted on the wall adjacent to the controls as shown in Fig. 57. The structural strength of seats and their attachments shall comply with 4.26.3.</p>	<p>ANSI 608.4 Seats. A folding or nonfolding seat shall be provided in transfer-type shower compartments. A seat shall be provided in an alternate roll-in-type shower compartment. In standard and alternate roll-in-type showers where a seat is provided, if the seat extends over the minimum clear inside dimension required by Section 608.2.2 or 608.2.3, the seat shall be a folding seat. Seats shall comply with Section 610.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A shower seat is not required to be installed in a shower facility for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of a shower seat complying with Section 608.4. 2. In Type A units, a shower seat is not required to be installed where reinforcement complying with Section 1003.11.9 is installed for the future installation of a shower seat.
<p>608.5 Controls. Controls, faucets, and shower spray units shall comply with 309.4.</p>	<p>4.21.5 Controls. Faucets and other controls complying with 4.27.4 shall be located as shown in Fig. 37. In shower stalls 36 in by 36 in (915 mm by 915 mm), all controls, faucets, and</p>	<p>ANSI 608.5 Controls and Hand Showers. Controls and hand showers shall comply with Sections 608.5 and 309.4.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
608.5.1 Transfer Type Shower Compartments. In transfer type shower compartments, the controls, faucets, and shower spray unit shall be installed on the side wall opposite the seat 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor and shall be located on the control wall 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat toward the shower opening.	the shower unit shall be mounted on the side wall opposite the seat.	ANSI 608.5.1 Transfer-Type Showers. In transfer-type showers, the controls and hand shower shall be located on the control wall opposite the seat, 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, within 15 inches (380 mm), left or right, of the centerline of the seat.
608.5.2 Standard Roll-In Type Shower Compartments. In standard roll-in type shower compartments, the controls, faucets, and shower spray unit shall be located above the grab bar, but no higher than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the shower floor. Where a seat is provided, the controls, faucets, and shower spray unit shall be installed on the back wall adjacent to the seat wall and shall be located 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the seat wall.		ANSI 608.5.2 Standard Roll-in Showers. In standard roll-in showers, the controls and hand shower shall be located 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor. In standard roll-in showers with seats, the controls and hand shower shall be located on the back wall, no more than 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the end wall behind the seat.
608.5.3 Alternate Roll-In Type Shower Compartments. In alternate roll-in type shower compartments, the controls, faucets, and shower spray unit shall be located above the grab bar, but no higher than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the shower floor. Where a seat is provided, the controls, faucets, and shower spray unit shall be located on the side wall adjacent to the seat 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the side wall behind the seat or shall be located on the back wall opposite the seat 15 inches (380 mm) maximum, left or right, of the centerline of the seat. Where a seat is not provided, the controls, faucets, and	See 9.1.2	ANSI 608.5.3 Alternate Roll-in Showers. In alternate roll-in showers, the controls and hand shower shall be located 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor. In alternate roll-in showers with controls and hand shower located on the end wall adjacent to the seat, the controls and hand shower shall be 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the seat wall. In alternate roll-in showers with the controls and hand shower located on the back wall opposite the seat, the controls and hand shower shall be located within 15 inches (380 mm), left or right, of the centerline of the seat.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
shower spray unit shall be installed on the side wall farthest from the compartment entry.		EXCEPTION: A fixed shower head with the controls and shower head located on the back wall opposite the seat shall be permitted.
<p>608.6 Shower Spray Unit and Water. A shower spray unit with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) long minimum that can be used both as a fixed-position shower head and as a hand-held shower shall be provided. The shower spray unit shall have an on/off control with a non-positive shut-off. If an adjustable-height shower head on a vertical bar is used, the bar shall be installed so as not to obstruct the use of grab bars. Shower spray units shall deliver water that is 120°F (49°C) maximum.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: A fixed shower head located at 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor shall be permitted instead of a hand-held spray unit in facilities that are not medical care facilities, long-term care facilities, transient lodging guest rooms, or residential dwelling units.</p>	<p>4.21.6 Shower Unit. A shower spray unit with a hose at least 60 in (1525 mm) long that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand-held shower shall be provided.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In unmonitored facilities where vandalism is a consideration, a fixed shower head mounted at 48 in (1220 mm) above the shower floor may be used in lieu of a hand-held shower head.</p>	<p>ANSI 608.6 Hand Showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature. An adjustable-height shower head mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: A fixed shower head shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower where the scoping provisions of the administrative authority require a fixed shower head.</p> <p>ANSI 608.9 Water Temperature. Showers shall deliver water that is 120 degrees F (49 degrees C) maximum.</p>
<p>608.7 Thresholds. Thresholds in roll-in type shower compartments shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) high maximum in accordance with 303. In transfer type shower compartments, thresholds 1/2 inch (13 mm) high maximum shall be beveled, rounded, or vertical.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: A threshold 2 inches (51 mm) high maximum shall be permitted in transfer type shower compartments in existing facilities where provision of a 1/2 inch (13 mm) high</p>	<p>4.21.7 Curbs. If provided, curbs in shower stalls 36 in by 36 in (915 mm by 915 mm) shall be no higher than 1/2 in (13 mm). Shower stalls that are 30 in by 60 in (760 mm by 1525 mm) minimum shall not have curbs.</p>	<p>ANSI 608.7 Thresholds. Thresholds in roll-in-type shower compartment shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum in height in accordance with Section 303. In transfer-type shower compartments, thresholds 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum in height shall be beveled, rounded, or vertical.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In existing facilities, in transfer-type shower compartments where provision of a threshold 1/2 inch (13 mm) in height would</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
threshold would disturb the structural reinforcement of the floor slab.		disturb the structural reinforcement of the floor slab, a threshold 2 inches (51 mm) maximum in height shall be permitted.
608.8 Shower Enclosures. Enclosures for shower compartments shall not obstruct controls, faucets, and shower spray units or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto shower seats.	4.21.8 Shower Enclosures. If provided, enclosures for shower stalls shall not obstruct controls or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto shower seats.	ANSI 608.8 Shower Enclosures. Shower compartment enclosures for shower compartments shall not obstruct controls or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto shower seats.
609 Grab Bars	4.26 Handrails, Grab Bars, and Tub and Shower Seats.	ANSI 609 Grab Bars
609.1 General. Grab bars in toilet facilities and bathing facilities shall comply with 609.	4.26.1 General. All handrails, grab bars, and tub and shower seats required to be accessible by 4.1, 4.8, 4.9, 4.16, 4.17, 4.20 or 4.21 shall comply with 4.26.	ANSI 609.1 General. Grab bars in accessible toilet or bathing facilities shall comply with Section 609.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>609.2 Cross Section. Grab bars shall have a cross section complying with 609.2.1 or 609.2.2.</p>	<p>4.26.2 Size and Spacing of Grab Bars and Handrails. The diameter or width of the gripping surfaces of a handrail or grab bar shall be 1-1/4 in to 1-1/2 in (32 mm to 38 mm), or the shape shall provide an equivalent gripping surface. If handrails or grab bars are mounted adjacent to a wall, the space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1-1/2 in (38 mm) (see Fig. 39(a), (b), (c), and (e)). Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is a maximum of 3 in (75 mm) deep and extends at least 18 in (455 mm) above the top of the rail (see Fig. 39(d)).</p>	<p>ANSI 609.2 Cross Section. Grab bars shall have a cross section complying with Section 609.2.1 or 609.2.2.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>609.2.1 Circular Cross Section. Grab bars with circular cross sections shall have an outside diameter of 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.</p>	<p>NOTE: In Figure 39(b), the handrail shape has a rounded gripping surface shaped from a rectangular stock. Spacing between handrail and the adjacent wall shall be 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Handrail gripping surface shall be 1-1/4 to 1-1/2 inches diameter (32 - 38 mm).</p>	<p>ANSI 609.2.1 Circular Cross Section. Grab bars with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of 1 1/4 inch (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.</p>
<p>609.2.2 Non-Circular Cross Section. Grab bars with non-circular cross sections shall have a cross-section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 4.8 inches (120 mm) maximum.</p>	<p>NOTE: Figure 39(c) shows a rounded gripping surface provided on top of a rectangular railing supported from a bottom bracket attached to a side wall. Spacing between handrail and the adjacent wall shall be 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Rounded handrail surface shall be 1-1/4 to 1-1/2 inches diameter (32 - 38 mm).</p>	<p>ANSI 609.2.2 Noncircular Cross Section. Grab bars with a noncircular cross section shall have a cross section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum, and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (102 mm) minimum and 4.8 inches (122 mm) maximum.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars above shall be permitted to be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.</p>	<p>NOTE: Figure 39(a) indicates spacing between handrail and the adjacent wall shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm). Handrail shall be 1-1/4 to 1-1/2 inches diameter (32 - 38 mm). Support for the handrail is from below.</p> <p>Figure 39(d) illustrates a handrail mounted into a recessed section of a wall. The bottom of the recessed section is not more than 3 inches wide where the handrail is located. The recessed section shown extends vertically approximately 6 inches and then angles to a point on the flush wall a minimum of 18 inches (455 mm) above the grab bar. This profile is provided to permit grasping from a standing position. Spacing between handrail and the adjacent wall shall be 1- 1/2 inches (38 mm). Handrail shall be 1-1/4 to 1-1/2 inches diameter (32 - 38 mm). Support for the handrail is from below.</p> <p>In Figure 39(e), the round grab bar surface is 1-1/4 to 1-1/2 inches diameter (32 - 38 mm). Spacing from the face of the grab bar to the wall is 1- 1/2 inches (38 mm).</p>	<p>ANSI 609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the grab bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars above the grab bar shall be permitted to be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. 2. Swing-up grab bars shall not be required to comply with Section 609.3.
<p>609.4 Position of Grab Bars. Grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor measured to the top of the gripping surface, except that at water closets for children's use complying with 604.9, grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position 18 inches (455 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum</p>		<p>ANSI 609.4 Position of Grab Bars. Grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. At water closets primarily for children's use complying with Section 604.10, grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position 18 inches (455 mm) minimum to 27 inches (685 mm)</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
above the finish floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. The height of the lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with 607.4.1.1 or 607.4.2.1.		maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. EXCEPTIONS: 1. The lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub required by Section 607.4.1.1 or 607.4.2.1. 2. Vertical grab bars required by Sections 604.5.1, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2.2, and 608.3.1.2.
609.5 Surface Hazards. Grab bars and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to grab bars shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements and shall have rounded edges.	4.26.4 Eliminating Hazards. A handrail or grab bar and any wall or other surface adjacent to it shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall have a minimum radius of 1/8 in (3.2 mm).	ANSI 609.5 Surface Hazards. Grab bars, and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to grab bars, shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall be rounded.
609.6 Fittings. Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.	4.26.3(5) Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.	ANSI 609.6 Fittings. Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.
609.7 Installation. Grab bars shall be installed in any manner that provides a gripping surface at the specified locations and that does not obstruct the required clear floor space.		ANSI 609.7 Installation. Grab bars shall be installed in any manner that provides a gripping surface at the locations specified in this standard and does not obstruct the clear floor space.
609.8 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used when a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the grab bar, fastener, mounting device, or supporting structure.	4.26.3 Structural Strength. The structural strength of grab bars, tub and shower seats, fasteners, and mounting devices shall meet the following specification: (1) Bending stress in a grab bar or seat induced by the maximum bending moment from the application of 250 lbf (1112N) shall be less than the allowable stress for the material of the grab bar or seat.	ANSI 609.8 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the grab bar, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>(2) Shear stress induced in a grab bar or seat by the application of 250 lbf (1112N) shall be less than the allowable shear stress for the material of the grab bar or seat. If the connection between the grab bar or seat and its mounting bracket or other support is considered to be fully restrained, then direct and torsional shear stresses shall be totaled for the combined shear stress, which shall not exceed the allowable shear stress.</p> <p>(3) Shear force induced in a fastener or mounting device from the application of 250 lbf (1112N) shall be less than the allowable lateral load of either the fastener or mounting device or the supporting structure, whichever is the smaller allowable load.</p> <p>(4) Tensile force induced in a fastener by a direct tension force of 250 lbf (1112N) plus the maximum moment from the application of 250 lbf (1112N) shall be less than the allowable withdrawal load between the fastener and the supporting structure.</p>	
610 Seats		ANSI 610 Seats
610.1 General. Seats in bathtubs and shower compartments shall comply with 610.		ANSI 610.1 General. Seats in accessible bathtubs and shower compartments shall comply with Section 610.
610.2 Bathtub Seats. The top of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom finish floor. The depth of a		ANSI 610.2 Bathtub Seats. The height of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum to 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>removable in-tub seat shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum. The seat shall be capable of secure placement. Permanent seats at the head end of the bathtub shall be 15 inches (380 mm) deep minimum and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub.</p>		<p>of the seat. Removable in-tub seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. Removable in-tub seats shall be capable of secure placement. Permanent seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum in depth and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub. Permanent seats shall be positioned at the head end of the bathtub.</p>
<p>610.3 Shower Compartment Seats. Where a seat is provided in a standard roll-in shower compartment, it shall be a folding type, shall be installed on the side wall adjacent to the controls, and shall extend from the back wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. Where a seat is provided in an alternate roll-in type shower compartment, it shall be a folding type, shall be installed on the front wall opposite the back wall, and shall extend from the adjacent side wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. In transfer-type showers, the seat shall extend from the back wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. The top of the seat shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom finish floor. Seats shall comply with 610.3.1 or 610.3.2.</p>		<p>ANSI 610.3 Shower Compartment Seats. Where a seat is provided in a standard roll-in shower compartment, it shall be a folding type and shall be on the wall adjacent to the controls. The height of the seat shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat. In transfer-type and alternate roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend along the seat wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. In standard roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend from the control wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. Seats shall comply with Section 610.3.1 or 610.3.2.</p>
<p>610.3.1 Rectangular Seats. The rear edge of a rectangular seat shall be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The side edge of</p>		<p>ANSI 610.3.1 Rectangular Seats. The rear edge of a rectangular seat shall be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum to 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
the seat shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the adjacent wall.		side edge of the seat shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the back wall of a transfer-type shower and 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the control wall of a roll-in-type shower.
610.3.2 L-Shaped Seats. The rear edge of an L-shaped seat shall be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The rear edge of the "L" portion of the seat shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the wall and the front edge shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the wall. The end of the "L" shall be 22 inches (560 mm) minimum and 23 inches maximum (585 mm) from the main seat wall.	NOTE: In Figure 36, the diagram illustrates an L-shaped shower seat extending the full depth of the stall. The seat shall be located 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the wall. The front of the seat (nearest to the opening) shall extend a maximum 16 inches (330 mm) from the wall. The back of the seat (against the back wall) shall extend a maximum of 23 inches (582 mm) from the side wall and shall be a maximum of 15 inches (305 mm) deep.	ANSI 610.3.2 L-Shaped Seats. The rear edge of an L-shaped seat shall be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum to 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The rear edge of the "L" portion of the seat shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the wall and the front edge shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the wall. The end of the "L" shall be 22 inches (560 mm) minimum and 23 inches (585 mm) maximum from the main seat wall.
610.4 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used when a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener, mounting device, or supporting structure.	See 4.26.3	ANSI 610.4 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.
611 Washing Machines and Clothes Dryers		ANSI 611 Washing Machines and Clothes Dryers
611.1 General. Washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with 611.		ANSI 611.1 General. Accessible washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with Section 611.
611.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 positioned for parallel approach shall be provided. The		ANSI 611.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for parallel approach, shall be provided. The

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
clear floor or ground space shall be centered on the appliance		clear floor space shall be centered on the appliance.
611.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts, including doors, lint screens, and detergent and bleach compartments shall comply with 309.		ANSI 611.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts, including doors, lint screens, detergent and bleach compartments, shall comply with Section 309.
611.4 Height. Top loading machines shall have the door to the laundry compartment located 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor. Front loading machines shall have the bottom of the opening to the laundry compartment located 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor.		ANSI 611.4 Height. Top loading machines shall have the door to the laundry compartment 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor. Front loading machines shall have the bottom of the opening to the laundry compartment 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor.
612 Saunas and Steam Rooms	See Appendix 4.36	
612.1 General. Saunas and steam rooms shall comply with 612.		
612.2 Bench. Where seating is provided in saunas and steam rooms, at least one bench shall comply with 903. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space required by 903.2. EXCEPTION: A readily removable bench shall be permitted to obstruct the turning space required by 612.3 and the clear floor or ground space required by 903.2.		
612.3 Turning Space. A turning space complying with 304 shall be provided within saunas and steam rooms.		
CHAPTER 7: COMMUNICATION ELEMENTS		ANSI Chapter 7. Communication Elements

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
AND FEATURES		and Features
701 General		ANSI 701 General
701.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 7 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.		ANSI 701.1 Scope. Communications elements and features required to be accessible by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 7.
702 Fire Alarm Systems	4.28 Alarms.	ANSI 702 Alarms
<p>702.1 General. Fire alarm systems shall have permanently installed audible and visible alarms complying with NFPA 72 (1999 or 2002 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1), except that the maximum allowable sound level of audible notification appliances complying with section 4-3.2.1 of NFPA 72 (1999 edition) shall have a sound level no more than 110 dB at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance. In addition, alarms in guest rooms required to provide communication features shall comply with sections 4-3 and 4-4 of NFPA 72 (1999 edition) or sections 7.4 and 7.5 of NFPA 72 (2002 edition).</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Fire alarm systems in medical care facilities shall be permitted to be provided</p>	<p>4.28.1 General. Alarm systems required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.28. At a minimum, visual signal appliances shall be provided in buildings and facilities in each of the following areas: restrooms and any other general usage areas (e.g., meeting rooms), hallways, lobbies, and any other area for common use.</p> <p>4.28.2 Audible Alarms. If provided, audible emergency alarms shall produce a sound that exceeds the prevailing equivalent sound level in the room or space by at least 15 dbA or exceeds any maximum sound level with a duration of 60 seconds by 5 dbA, whichever is louder. Sound levels for alarm signals shall not exceed 120 dbA.</p>	<p>ANSI 702.1 General. Accessible audible and visual alarms and notification appliances shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 72 listed in Section 105.2.2, be powered by a commercial light and power source, be permanently connected to the wiring of the premises electric system, and be permanently installed.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
in accordance with industry practice.	<p>4.28.3 Visual Alarms. Visual alarm signal appliances shall be integrated into the building or facility alarm system. If single station audible alarms are provided then single station visual alarm signals shall be provided. Visual alarm signals shall have the following minimum photometric and location features:</p>	
	<p>(1) The lamp shall be a xenon strobe type or equivalent.</p> <p>(2) The color shall be clear or nominal white (i.e., unfiltered or clear filtered white light).</p> <p>(3) The maximum pulse duration shall be two-tenths of one second (0.2 sec) with a maximum duty cycle of 40 percent. The pulse duration is defined as the time interval between initial and final points of 10 percent of maximum signal.</p> <p>(4) The intensity shall be a minimum of 75 candela.</p> <p>(5) The flash rate shall be a minimum of 1 Hz and a maximum of 3 Hz.</p> <p>(6) The appliance shall be placed 80 in (2030 mm) above the highest floor level within the space or 6 in (152 mm) below the ceiling, whichever is lower.</p> <p>(7) In general, no place in any room or space required to have a visual signal appliance shall be more than 50 ft (15 m) from the signal (in</p>	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>the horizontal plane). In large rooms and spaces exceeding 100 ft (30 m) across, without obstructions 6 ft (2 m) above the finish floor, such as auditoriums, devices may be placed around the perimeter, spaced a maximum 100 ft (30 m) apart, in lieu of suspending appliances from the ceiling.</p> <p>(8) No place in common corridors or hallways in which visual alarm signalling appliances are required shall be more than 50 ft (15 m) from the signal.</p>	
703 Signs	4.30 Signage.	ANSI 703 Signs
703.1 General. Signs shall comply with 703. Where both visual and tactile characters are required, either one sign with both visual and tactile characters, or two separate signs, one with visual, and one with tactile characters, shall be provided.	4.30.1 General. Signage required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with the applicable provisions of 4.30.	ANSI 703.1 General. Accessible signs shall comply with Section 703.
703.2 Raised Characters. Raised characters shall comply with 703.2 and shall be duplicated in braille complying with 703.3. Raised characters shall be installed in accordance with 703.4.	4.30.4 Raised and Brailled Characters and Pictorial Symbol Signs (Pictograms). Letters and numerals shall be raised 1/32 in (0.8 mm) minimum, upper case, sans serif or simple serif type and shall be accompanied with Grade 2 Braille. Raised characters shall be at least 5/8 in (16 mm) high, but no higher than 2 in (50 mm). Pictograms shall be accompanied by the equivalent verbal description placed directly below the pictogram. The border dimension of the pictogram shall be 6 in (152 mm) minimum in height.	ANSI 703.3 Tactile Characters.
703.2.1 Depth. Raised characters shall be 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) minimum above their background.		ANSI 703.3.1 General. Tactile characters shall comply with Section 703.3, and shall be duplicated in braille complying with Section 703.4.
		ANSI 703.3.2 Depth. Tactile characters shall be raised 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) minimum above their background.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
703.2.2 Case. Characters shall be uppercase.		ANSI 703.3.3 Case. Characters shall be uppercase.
703.2.3 Style. Characters shall be sans serif. Characters shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or of other unusual forms.		ANSI 703.3.4 Style. Characters shall be sans serif. Characters shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or of other unusual forms.
703.2.4 Character Proportions. Characters shall be selected from fonts where the width of the uppercase letter "O" is 55 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter "I".	4.30.2 Character Proportion. Letters and numbers on signs shall have a width-to-height ratio between 3:5 and 1:1 and a stroke-width-to-height ratio between 1:5 and 1:10.	ANSI 703.3.6 Character Width. The uppercase letter "O" shall be used to determine the allowable width of all characters of a font. The width of the uppercase letter "O" of the font shall be 55 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase "I" of the font.
703.2.5 Character Height. Character height measured vertically from the baseline of the character shall be 5/8 inch (16 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum based on the height of the uppercase letter "I". EXCEPTION: Where separate raised and visual characters with the same information are provided, raised character height shall be permitted to be 1/2 inch (13 mm) minimum.	4.30.3 Character Height. Characters and numbers on signs shall be sized according to the viewing distance from which they are to be read. The minimum height is measured using an upper case X. Lower case characters are permitted. <div> <div>Height Above Finished Floor</div> <div>Minimum Character Height</div> <div>Suspended or Projected Overhead in compliance with 4.4.2</div> <div>3 in (75 mm) minimum</div> </div>	ANSI 703.3.5 Character Height. The uppercase letter "I" shall be used to determine the allowable height of all characters of a font. The height of the uppercase letter "I" of the font, measured vertically from the baseline of the character, shall be 5/8 inch (16 mm) minimum, and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum. EXCEPTION: Where separate tactile and visual characters with the same information are provided, the height of the tactile uppercase letter "I" shall be permitted to be 1/2 inch (13 mm) minimum.
703.2.6 Stroke Thickness. Stroke thickness of the uppercase letter "I" shall be 15 percent maximum of the height of the character.	See 4.30.2	ANSI 703.3.7 Stroke Width. Tactile character stroke width shall comply with Section 703.3.7. The uppercase letter "I" of the font shall be used to determine the allowable stroke width of all characters of a font.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>ANSI 703.3.7.1 Maximum. The stroke width shall be 15 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter “I” measured at the top surface of the character, and 30 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter “I” measured at the base of the character.</p> <p>ANSI 703.3.7.2 Minimum. When characters are both visual and tactile, the stroke width shall be 10 percent minimum of the height of the uppercase letter “I”.</p>
<p>703.2.7 Character Spacing. Character spacing shall be measured between the two closest points of adjacent raised characters within a message, excluding word spaces. Where characters have rectangular cross sections, spacing between individual raised characters shall be 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) minimum and 4 times the raised character stroke width maximum. Where characters have other cross sections, spacing between individual raised characters shall be 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) minimum and 4 times the raised character stroke width maximum at the base of the cross sections, and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) minimum and 4 times the raised character stroke width maximum at the top of the cross sections. Characters shall be separated from raised borders and decorative elements 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) minimum.</p>		<p>ANSI 703.3.8 Character Spacing. Character spacing shall be measured between the two closest points of adjacent tactile characters within a message, excluding word spaces. Spacing between individual tactile character shall be 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) minimum measured at the top surface of the characters, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) minimum measured at the base of the characters, and four times the tactile character stroke width maximum. Characters shall be separated from raised borders and decorative elements 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) minimum.</p>
<p>703.2.8 Line Spacing. Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of raised characters within a message shall be 135 percent minimum and 170 percent maximum of the raised character height.</p>		<p>ANSI 703.3.9 Line Spacing. Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of tactile characters within a message shall be 135 percent minimum and 170 percent maximum of the tactile character height.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
703.3 Braille. Braille shall be contracted (Grade 2) and shall comply with 703.3 and 703.4.		ANSI 703.4 Braille.
		ANSI 703.4.1 General. Braille shall be contracted (Grade 2) braille and shall comply with Section 703.4.
703.3.1 Dimensions and Capitalization. Braille dots shall have a domed or rounded shape and shall comply with Table 703.3.1. The indication of an uppercase letter or letters shall only be used before the first word of sentences, proper nouns and names, individual letters of the alphabet, initials, and acronyms.		ANSI 703.4.3 Dimensions. Braille dots shall have a domed or rounded shape and shall comply with Table 703.4.3.
		ANSI 703.4.2 Uppercase Letters. The indication of an uppercase letter or letters shall only be used before the first word of sentences, proper nouns and names, individual letters of the alphabet, initials, or acronyms.

New ADAAG 703.3.1 Braille Dimensions

Measurement Range	Minimum in Inches Maximum in Inches
Dot base diameter	0.059 (1.5 mm) to 0.063 (1.6 mm)
Distance between two dots in the same cell ¹	0.090 (2.3 mm) to 0.100 (2.5 mm)
Distance between corresponding dots in adjacent cells ¹	0.241 (6.1 mm) to 0.300 (7.6 mm)
Dot height	0.025 (0.6 mm) to 0.037 (0.9 mm)
Distance between corresponding dots	0.395 (10 mm)

from one cell directly below ¹	to 0.400 (10.2 mm)
---	-----------------------

1. Measured center to center.

ANSI Table 703.4.3— Braille Dimensions

Measurement range	Minimum in inches Maximum in inches
Dot base diameter	0.059 (1.5 mm) to 0.063 (1.6 mm)
Distance between two dots in the same cell	0.090 (2.3 mm) to 0.100 (2.5 mm)
Distance between corresponding dots in adjacent cells ¹	0.241 (6.1 mm) to 0.300 (7.6 mm)
Dot height	0.025 (0.6 mm) to 0.037 (0.9 mm)
Distance between corresponding dots from one cell directly below ¹	0.395 (10.0 mm) to 0.400 (10.2 mm)

¹Measured center to center

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>703.3.2 Position. Braille shall be positioned below the corresponding text. If text is multi-lined, braille shall be placed below the entire text. Braille shall be separated 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) minimum from any other tactile characters and 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) minimum from raised borders and decorative elements.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Braille provided on elevator car controls shall be separated 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) minimum and shall be located either directly below or adjacent to the corresponding raised characters or symbols.</p>		<p>ANSI 703.4.4 Position. Braille shall be below the corresponding text. If text is multilined, braille shall be placed below entire text. Braille shall be separated 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) minimum from any other tactile characters and 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) minimum from raised borders and decorative elements. Braille provided on elevator car controls shall be separated 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) minimum either directly below or adjacent to the corresponding raised characters or symbols.</p>
<p>703.4 Installation Height and Location. Signs with tactile characters shall comply with</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
703.4.		
<p>703.4.1 Height Above Finish Floor or Ground. Tactile characters on signs shall be located 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground surface, measured from the baseline of the lowest tactile character and 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground surface, measured from the baseline of the highest tactile character.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Tactile characters for elevator car controls shall not be required to comply with 703.4.1.</p>	<p>4.30.6 Mounting Location and Height. Where permanent identification is provided for rooms and spaces, signs shall be installed on the wall adjacent to the latch side of the door. Where there is no wall space to the latch side of the door, including at double leaf doors, signs shall be placed on the nearest adjacent wall. Mounting height shall be 60 in (1525 mm) above the finish floor to the centerline of the sign. Mounting location for such signage shall be so that a person may approach within 3 in (76 mm) of signage without encountering protruding objects or standing within the swing of a door.</p>	<p>ANSI 703.3.10 Height above Floor. Tactile characters shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum above the floor, measured to the baseline of the lowest tactile character and 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the baseline of the highest tactile character.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Tactile characters for elevator car controls shall not be required to comply with Section 703.3.10.</p>
		<p>ANSI 703.4.5 Mounting Height. Braille shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the baseline of the braille cells.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Elevator car controls shall not be required to comply with Section 703.4.5.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>703.4.2 Location. Where a tactile sign is provided at a door, the sign shall be located alongside the door at the latch side. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors with one active leaf, the sign shall be located on the inactive leaf. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors with two active leaves, the sign shall be located to the right of the right hand door. Where there is no wall space at the latch side of a single door or at the right side of double doors, signs shall be located on the nearest adjacent wall. Signs containing tactile characters shall be located so that a clear floor space of 18 inches (455 mm) minimum by 18 inches (455 mm) minimum, centered on the tactile characters, is provided beyond the arc of any door swing between the closed position and 45 degree open position.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Signs with tactile characters shall be permitted on the push side of doors with closers and without hold-open devices.</p>		<p>ANSI 703.3.11 Location. Where a tactile sign is provided at a door, the sign shall be alongside the door at the latch side. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors with one active leaf, the sign shall be located on the inactive leaf. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors with two active leaves, the sign shall be to the right of the right-hand door. Where there is no wall space on the latch side of a single door, or to the right side of double doors, signs shall be on the nearest adjacent wall. Signs containing tactile characters shall be located so that a clear floor area 18 inches (455 mm) minimum by 18 inches (455 mm) minimum, centered on the tactile characters, is provided beyond the arc of any door swing between the closed position and 45 degree open position.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Signs with tactile characters shall be permitted on the push side of doors with closers and without hold-open devices.</p>
<p>703.5 Visual Characters. Visual characters shall comply with 703.5.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where visual characters comply with 703.2 and are accompanied by braille complying with 703.3, they shall not be required to comply with 703.5.2 through 703.5.9.</p>		<p>ANSI 703.2 Visual Characters.</p> <p>ANSI 703.2.1 General. Visual characters shall comply with Section 703.2.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Visual characters complying with Section 703.3 shall not be required to comply with Section 703.2.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
703.5.1 Finish and Contrast. Characters and their background shall have a non-glare finish. Characters shall contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.	4.30.5 Finish and Contrast. The characters and background of signs shall be eggshell, matte, or other non-glare finish. Characters and symbols shall contrast with their background -- either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.	ANSI 703.2.10 Finish and Contrast. Characters and their background shall have a nonglare finish. Characters shall contrast with their background, with either light characters on a dark background, or dark characters on a light background.
		ANSI 703.3.12 Finish and Contrast. Characters and their background shall have a nonglare finish. Characters shall contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background, or dark characters on a light background. EXCEPTION: Where separate tactile characters and visual characters with the same information are provided, tactile characters are not required to have nonglare finish or to contrast with their background.
703.5.2 Case. Characters shall be uppercase or lowercase or a combination of both.		ANSI 703.2.2 Case. Characters shall be uppercase, lowercase, or a combination of both.
703.5.3 Style. Characters shall be conventional in form. Characters shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or of other unusual forms.		ANSI 703.2.3 Style. Characters shall be conventional in form. Characters shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or of other unusual forms.
703.5.4 Character Proportions. Characters shall be selected from fonts where the width of the uppercase letter "O" is 55 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter "I".		ANSI 703.2.5 Character Width. The uppercase letter "O" shall be used to determine the allowable width of all characters of a font. The width of the uppercase letter "O" of the font shall be 55 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase "I" of the font.
703.5.5 Character Height. Minimum character	4.30.3 Character Height. Characters and	ANSI 703.2.4 Character Height. The

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
height shall comply with Table 703.5.5. Viewing distance shall be measured as the horizontal distance between the character and an obstruction preventing further approach towards the sign. Character height shall be based on the uppercase letter "I".	numbers on signs shall be sized according to the viewing distance from which they are to be read. The minimum height is measured using an upper case X. Lower case characters are permitted.	uppercase letter "I" shall be used to determine the allowable height of all characters of a font. The uppercase letter "I" of the font shall have a minimum height complying with Table 703.2.4. Viewing distance shall be measured as the horizontal distance between the character and an obstruction preventing further approach towards the sign.

New ADAAG 703.5.5 Visual Character Height

Height to Finish Floor or Ground From Baseline of Character	Horizontal Viewing Distance	Minimum Character Height
40 inches (1015 mm) to less than or equal to 70 inches (1780 mm)	less than 72 inches (1830 mm)	5/8 inch (16 mm)
	72 inches (1830 mm) and greater	5/8 inch (16 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 72 inches (1830 mm)
Greater than 70 inches (1780 mm) to less than or equal to 120 inches (3050 mm)	less than 180 inches (4570 mm)	2 inches (51 mm)
	180 inches (4570 mm) and greater	2 inches (51 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 180 inches (4570 mm)
greater than 120 inches (3050 mm)	less than 21 feet (6400 mm)	3 inches (75 mm)
	21 feet (6400 mm) and greater	3 inches (75 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 21 feet (6400 mm)

DOJ Table 4.30.3

Height Above Finished Floor	Minimum Character Height
Suspended or Projected Overhead in compliance with 4.4.2	3 in (75 mm) minimum

ANSI Table 703.2.4—Visual Character Height

Height above Floor to Baseline of Character	Horizontal Viewing Distance	Minimum Character Height
40 inches (1015 mm) to less than or equal to 70 inches (1780 mm)	Less than 6 feet (1830 mm)	5/8 inch (16 mm)
	6 feet (1830 mm) and greater	5/8 inch (16 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 6 feet (1830 mm)
Greater than 70 inches (1780 mm) to less than or equal to 120 inches (3050 mm)	Less than 15 feet (4570 mm)	2 inches (51 mm)
	15 feet (4570 mm) and greater	2 inches (51 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 15 feet (4570 mm)
Greater than 120 inches (3050 mm)	Less than 21 feet (6400 mm)	3 inches (75 mm)
	21 feet (6400 mm) and greater	3 inches (76 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 21 feet (6400 mm)

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>703.5.6 Height From Finish Floor or Ground. Visual characters shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Visual characters indicating elevator car controls shall not be required to comply with 703.5.6.</p>		<p>ANSI 703.2.9 Height Above Floor. Visual characters shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum above the floor of the viewing position, measured to the baseline of the character. Heights shall comply with Table 703.2.4, based on the size of the characters on the sign.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Visual characters indicating elevator car controls shall not be required to comply with Section 703.2.9.</p>
<p>703.5.7 Stroke Thickness. Stroke thickness of the uppercase letter "I" shall be 10 percent minimum and 30 percent maximum of the height of the character.</p>		<p>ANSI 703.2.6 Stroke Width. The uppercase letter "I" shall be used to determine the allowable stroke width of all characters of a font. The stroke width shall be 10 percent minimum and 30 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase "I" of the font.</p>
<p>703.5.8 Character Spacing. Character spacing shall be measured between the two closest points of adjacent characters, excluding word spaces. Spacing between individual characters shall be 10 percent minimum and 35 percent maximum of character height.</p>		<p>ANSI 703.2.7 Character Spacing. Spacing shall be measured between the two closest points of adjacent characters within a message, excluding word spaces. Spacing between individual characters shall be 10 percent minimum and 35 percent maximum of the character height.</p>
<p>703.5.9 Line Spacing. Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of characters within a message shall be 135 percent minimum and 170 percent maximum of the character height.</p>		<p>ANSI 703.2.8 Line Spacing. Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of characters within a message shall be 135 percent minimum to 170 percent maximum of the character height.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
703.6 Pictograms. Pictograms shall comply with 703.6.		ANSI 703.5 Pictograms.
		703.5.1 General. Pictograms shall comply with Section 703.5.
703.6.1 Pictogram Field. Pictograms shall have a field height of 6 inches (150 mm) minimum. Characters and braille shall not be located in the pictogram field.		ANSI 703.5.2 Pictogram Field. Pictograms shall have a field 6 inches (150 mm) minimum in height. Characters or braille shall not be located in the pictogram field.
703.6.2 Finish and Contrast. Pictograms and their field shall have a non-glare finish. Pictograms shall contrast with their field with either a light pictogram on a dark field or a dark pictogram on a light field.		ANSI 703.5.3 Finish and Contrast. Pictograms and their fields shall have a nonglare finish. Pictograms shall contrast with their fields, with either a light pictogram on a dark field or a dark pictogram on a light field.
703.6.3 Text Descriptors. Pictograms shall have text descriptors located directly below the pictogram field. Text descriptors shall comply with 703.2, 703.3 and 703.4.		ANSI 703.5.4 Text Descriptors. Where text descriptors for pictograms are required, they shall be located directly below the pictogram field. Text descriptors shall comply with Sections 703.3 and 703.4.
703.7 Symbols of Accessibility. Symbols of accessibility shall comply with 703.7.	4.30.7 Symbols of Accessibility.	ANSI 703.6 Symbols of Accessibility.
		ANSI 703.6.1 General. Symbols of accessibility shall comply with Section 703.6.
703.7.1 Finish and Contrast. Symbols of accessibility and their background shall have a non-glare finish. Symbols of accessibility shall contrast with their background with either a light symbol on a dark background or a dark symbol on a light background.		ANSI 703.6.2 Finish and Contrast. Symbols of accessibility and their backgrounds shall have a nonglare finish. Symbols of accessibility shall contrast with their backgrounds, with either a light symbol on a dark background or a dark symbol on a light background.
703.7.2 Symbols.		ANSI 703.6.3 Symbols.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>703.7.2.1 International Symbol of Accessibility. The International Symbol of Accessibility shall comply with Figure 703.7.2.1.</p>	<p>4.30.7(1) Facilities and elements required to be identified as accessible by 4.1 shall use the international symbol of accessibility. The symbol shall be displayed as shown in Fig. 43(a) and (b).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 43(a) illustrates the International Symbol of Accessibility on a grid background. Figure 43(b) indicates the symbol contrast shall be light on dark, or dark on light.</p>	<p>ANSI 703.6.3.1 International Symbol of Accessibility. The International Symbol of Accessibility shall comply with Figure 703.6.3.1.</p>
<p>703.7.2.2 International Symbol of TTY. The International Symbol of TTY shall comply with Figure 703.7.2.2.</p>	<p>4.30.7(3) Text Telephones. Text telephones required by 4.1.3(17)(c) shall be identified by the international TDD symbol (Fig 43(c)). In addition, if a facility has a public text telephone), directional signage indicating the location of the nearest text telephone shall be placed adjacent to all banks of telephones which do not contain a text telephone. Such directional signage shall include the international TDD symbol. If a facility has no banks of telephones, the directional signage shall be provided at the entrance (e.g., in a building directory).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 43(c) illustrates the International TDD Symbol, a stylized keyboard with keys and a spacer bar and a telephone handset on top.</p>	<p>ANSI 703.6.3.2 International Symbol of TTY. The International Symbol of TTY shall comply with Figure 703.6.3.2.</p>
<p>703.7.2.3 Volume Control Telephones. Telephones with a volume control shall be identified by a pictogram of a telephone handset with radiating sound waves on a square field such as shown in Figure 703.7.2.3.</p>	<p>(2) Volume Control Telephones. Telephones required to have a volume control by 4.1.3(17)(b) shall be identified by a sign containing a depiction of a telephone handset with radiating sound waves.</p>	<p>ANSI 703.6.3.4 Volume-Controlled Telephones. Telephones with volume controls shall be identified by a pictogram of a telephone handset with radiating sound waves on a square field complying with Figure 703.6.3.4.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
703.7.2.4 Assistive Listening Systems. Assistive listening systems shall be identified by the International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss complying with Figure 703.7.2.4.	(4) Assistive Listening Systems. In assembly areas where permanently installed assistive listening systems are required by 4.1.3(19)(b) the availability of such systems shall be identified with signage that includes the international symbol of access for hearing loss (Fig 43(d)). NOTE: Figure 43(d) illustrates the International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss, a stylized ear with a diagonal slash in the field.	ANSI 703.6.3.3 Assistive Listening Systems. Assistive listening systems shall be identified by the International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss complying with Figure 703.6.3.3.
	4.30.8 Illumination Levels. (Reserved).	
704 Telephones	4.31 Telephones.	ANSI 704 Telephones
704.1 General. Public telephones shall comply with 704.	4.31.1 General. Public telephones required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.31.	ANSI 704.1 General. Accessible public telephones shall comply with Section 704.
704.2 Wheelchair Accessible Telephones. Wheelchair accessible telephones shall comply with 704.2.		ANSI 704.2 Wheelchair Accessible Telephones. Wheelchair accessible public telephones shall comply with Section 704.2.
704.2.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided. The clear floor or ground space shall not be obstructed by bases, enclosures, or seats.	4.31.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space at least 30 in by 48 in (760 mm by 1220 mm) that allows either a forward or parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at telephones (see Fig. 44). The clear floor or ground space shall comply with 4.2.4. Bases, enclosures, and fixed seats shall not impede approaches to telephones by people who use wheelchairs.	ANSI 704.2.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 shall be provided. The clear floor space shall not be obstructed by bases, enclosures, or seats.
704.2.1.1 Parallel Approach. Where a parallel approach is provided, the distance from the edge of the telephone enclosure to the face of the telephone unit shall be 10 inches (255 mm) maximum.	NOTE: Figure 44(a) indicates that if a parallel approach is provided at a telephone in an	ANSI 704.2.1.1 Parallel Approach. Where a parallel approach is provided, the distance from the edge of the telephone enclosure to the face of the telephone shall be 10 inches (255 mm) maximum.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
704.2.1.2 Forward Approach. Where a forward approach is provided, the distance from the front edge of a counter within the telephone enclosure to the face of the telephone unit shall be 20 inches (510 mm) maximum.	<p>enclosure, the wing walls and shelf may extend beyond the face of the telephone a maximum of 10 inches (255 mm).</p> <p>Figure 44(b) indicates that if a front approach is provided at a telephone with an enclosure, the shelf can extend beyond the face of the telephone a maximum of 20 inches (510 mm). A wing wall may extend beyond the face of the telephone a maximum of 24 inches (610 mm). If the wing wall extends more than 24 inches (610 mm) beyond the face of the telephone, an additional 6 inches (150 mm) in width of clear floor space shall be provided.</p>	ANSI 704.2.1.2 Forward Approach. Where a forward approach is provided, the distance from the front edge of a counter within the enclosure to the face of the telephone shall be 20 inches (510 mm) maximum.
704.2.2 Operable Parts. Operable parts shall comply with 309. Telephones shall have push-button controls where such service is available.	4.31.3 Mounting Height. The highest operable part of the telephone shall be within the reach ranges specified in 4.2.5 or 4.2.6.	ANSI 704.2.2 Operable Parts. The highest operable part of the telephone shall comply with Section 308. Telephones shall have push button controls where service for such equipment is available.
	4.31.6 Controls. Telephones shall have pushbutton controls where service for such equipment is available.	
704.2.3 Telephone Directories. Telephone directories, where provided, shall be located in accordance with 309.	4.31.7 Telephone Books. Telephone books, if provided, shall be located in a position that complies with the reach ranges specified in 4.2.5 and 4.2.6.	ANSI 704.2.3 Telephone Directories. Where provided, telephone directories shall comply with Section 309.
704.2.4 Cord Length. The cord from the telephone to the handset shall be 29 inches (735 mm) long minimum.	4.31.8 Cord Length. The cord from the telephone to the handset shall be at least 29 in (735 mm) long.	ANSI 704.2.4 Cord Length. The telephone handset cord shall be 29 inches (735 mm) minimum in length.
	4.31.5 Hearing Aid Compatible and Volume Control Telephones Required by 4.1. (1) Telephones shall be hearing aid	ANSI 704.2.5 Hearing-Aid Compatibility. Telephones shall be hearing aid compatible.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
704.3 Volume Control Telephones. Public telephones required to have volume controls shall be equipped with a receive volume control that provides a gain adjustable up to 20 dB minimum. For incremental volume control, provide at least one intermediate step of 12 dB of gain minimum. An automatic reset shall be provided.	compatible. (2) Volume controls, capable of a minimum of 12 dbA and a maximum of 18 dbA above normal, shall be provided in accordance with 4.1.3. If an automatic reset is provided then 18 dbA may be exceeded.	ANSI 704.3 Volume–Control Telephones. Public telephones required to have volume controls shall be equipped with a receive volume control that provides a gain adjustable up to 20 dB minimum. Incremental volume controls shall provide at least one intermediate step of gain of 12 dB minimum. An automatic reset shall be provided.
704.4 TTYs. TTYs required at a public pay telephone shall be permanently affixed within, or adjacent to, the telephone enclosure. Where an acoustic coupler is used, the telephone cord shall be sufficiently long to allow connection of the TTY and the telephone receiver.	4.31.9 Text Telephones Required by 4.1. (1) Text telephones used with a pay telephone shall be permanently affixed within, or adjacent to, the telephone enclosure. If an acoustic coupler is used, the telephone cord shall be sufficiently long to allow connection of the text telephone and the telephone receiver.	ANSI 704.4 TTY. TTYs required at a public pay telephone shall be permanently affixed within, or adjacent to, the telephone enclosure. Where an acoustic coupler is used, the telephone cord shall be of sufficient length to allow connection of the TTY and the telephone handset.
704.4.1 Height. When in use, the touch surface of TTY keypads shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum above the finish floor. EXCEPTION: Where seats are provided, TTYs shall not be required to comply with 704.4.1.		ANSI 704.5 Height. When in use, the touch surface of TTY keypads shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum above the floor. EXCEPTION: Where seats are provided, TTYs shall not be required to comply with Section 704.5.
704.5 TTY Shelf. Public pay telephones required to accommodate portable TTYs shall be equipped with a shelf and an electrical outlet within or adjacent to the telephone enclosure. The telephone handset shall be capable of being placed flush on the surface of the shelf. The shelf shall be capable of accommodating a TTY and shall have 6 inches (150 mm) minimum vertical clearance above the area where the TTY is to be placed.	(2) Pay telephones designed to accommodate a portable text telephone shall be equipped with a shelf and an electrical outlet within or adjacent to the telephone enclosure. The telephone handset shall be capable of being placed flush on the surface of the shelf. The shelf shall be capable of accommodating a text telephone and shall have 6 in (152 mm) minimum vertical clearance in the area where the text telephone is to be placed.	ANSI 704.6 TTY Shelf. Where pay telephones designed to accommodate a portable TTY are provided, they shall be equipped with a shelf and an electrical outlet within or adjacent to the telephone enclosure. The telephone handset shall be capable of being placed flush on the surface of the shelf. The shelf shall be capable of accommodating a TTY and shall have a vertical clearance 6 inches (150 mm) minimum in height above the area where the TTY is placed.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>(3) Equivalent facilitation may be provided. For example, a portable text telephone may be made available in a hotel at the registration desk if it is available on a 24-hour basis for use with nearby public pay telephones. In this instance, at least one pay telephone shall comply with paragraph 2 of this section. In addition, if an acoustic coupler is used, the telephone handset cord shall be sufficiently long so as to allow connection of the text telephone and the telephone receiver. Directional signage shall be provided and shall comply with 4.30.7.</p>	
	<p>4.31.4 Protruding Objects. Telephones shall comply with 4.4.</p>	<p>ANSI 704.7 Protruding Objects. Telephones, enclosures, and related equipment shall comply with Section 307.</p>
705 Detectable Warnings	<p>4.29 Detectable Warnings.</p>	<p>ANSI 705 Detectable Warnings</p>
	<p>4.29.1 General. Detectable warnings required by 4.1 and 4.7 shall comply with 4.29.</p>	<p>ANSI 705.1 General. Detectable warning surfaces shall comply with Section 705.</p>
705.1 General. Detectable warnings shall consist of a surface of truncated domes and shall comply with 705.	<p>4.29.2 Detectable Warnings on Walking Surfaces. Detectable warnings shall consist of raised truncated domes with a diameter of nominal 0.9 in (23 mm), a height of nominal 0.2 in (5 mm) and a center-to-center spacing of nominal 2.35 in (60 mm) and shall contrast visually with adjoining surfaces, either light-on-dark, or dark-on-light.</p>	<p>ANSI 705.4 Interior Locations. Detectable warning surfaces in interior locations shall differ from adjoining walking surfaces in resiliency or sound-on-cane contact.</p>
	<p>The material used to provide contrast shall be</p>	<p>ANSI 705.5 Truncated Domes. Detectable warning surfaces shall have truncated domes complying with Section 705.5.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
705.1.1 Dome Size. Truncated domes in a detectable warning surface shall have a base diameter of 0.9 inch (23 mm) minimum and 1.4 inches (36 mm) maximum, a top diameter of 50 percent of the base diameter minimum to 65 percent of the base diameter maximum, and a height of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm).	an integral part of the walking surface. Detectable warnings used on interior surfaces shall differ from adjoining walking surfaces in resiliency or sound-on-cane contact.	ANSI 705.5.1 Size. Truncated domes shall have a base diameter of 0.9 inch (23 mm) minimum to 1.4 inch (36 mm) maximum, and a top diameter of 50 percent minimum to 65 percent maximum of the base diameter.
		ANSI 705.5.2 Height. Truncated domes shall have a height of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm).
705.1.2 Dome Spacing. Truncated domes in a detectable warning surface shall have a center-to-center spacing of 1.6 inches (41 mm) minimum and 2.4 inches (61 mm) maximum, and a base-to-base spacing of 0.65 inch (17 mm) minimum, measured between the most adjacent domes on a square grid.		ANSI 705.5.3 Spacing. Truncated domes shall have a center-to-center spacing of 1.6 inches (41 mm) minimum and 2.4 inches (61 mm) maximum, and a base-to-base spacing of 0.65 inch (16.5 mm) minimum, measured between the most adjacent domes on the grid.
705.1.3 Contrast. Detectable warning surfaces shall contrast visually with adjacent walking surfaces either light-on-dark, or dark-on-light.		ANSI 705.3 Contrast. Detectable warning surfaces shall contrast visually with adjacent surfaces, either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.
		ANSI 705.5.4 Alignment. Truncated domes shall be aligned in a square grid pattern.
	4.29.7 Standardization. (Reserved).	ANSI 705.2 Standardization. Detectable warning surfaces shall be standard within a building, facility, site, or complex of buildings. EXCEPTION: In facilities that have both interior and exterior locations, detectable warnings in exterior locations shall not be required to comply with Section 705.4.
	4.29.3 Detectable Warnings on Doors To Hazardous Areas. (Reserved).	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	4.29.4 Detectable Warnings at Stairs. (Reserved).	
	4.29.5 Detectable Warnings at Hazardous Vehicular Areas. If a walk crosses or adjoins a vehicular way, and the walking surfaces are not separated by curbs, railings, or other elements between the pedestrian areas and vehicular areas, the boundary between the areas shall be defined by a continuous detectable warning which is 36 in (915 mm) wide, complying with 4.29.2.	
	4.29.6 Detectable Warnings at Reflecting Pools. The edges of reflecting pools shall be protected by railings, walls, curbs, or detectable warnings complying with 4.29.2.	
705.2 Platform Edges. Detectable warning surfaces at platform boarding edges shall be 24 inches (610 mm) wide and shall extend the full length of the public use areas of the platform.	<p>10.3.1 New Construction. New stations in rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, intercity bus, intercity rail, high speed rail, and other fixed guideway systems (e.g., automated guideway transit, monorails, etc.) shall comply with the following provisions, as applicable:</p> <p>(8) Platform edges bordering a drop-off and not protected by platform screens or guard rails shall have a detectable warning. Such detectable warnings shall comply with 4.29.2 and shall be 24 inches wide running the full length of the platform drop-off.</p>	
706 Assistive Listening Systems	4.33.7 Types of Listening Systems. Assistive listening systems (ALS) are intended to	ANSI 706 Assistive Listening Systems

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
706.1 General. Assistive listening systems required in assembly areas shall comply with 706.	augment standard public address and audio systems by providing signals which can be received directly by persons with special receivers or their own hearing aids and which eliminate or filter background noise. The type of assistive listening system appropriate for a particular application depends on the characteristics of the setting, the nature of the program, and the intended audience. Magnetic induction loops, infra-red and radio frequency systems are types of listening systems which are appropriate for various applications.	ANSI 706.1 General. Accessible assistive listening systems in assembly areas shall comply with Section 706.
706.2 Receiver Jacks. Receivers required for use with an assistive listening system shall include a 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) standard mono jack.		ANSI 706.2 Receiver Jacks. Receivers required for use with an assistive listening system shall include a 1/8-inch (3.2 mm) standard mono jack.
706.3 Receiver Hearing-Aid Compatibility. Receivers required to be hearing-aid compatible shall interface with telecoils in hearing aids through the provision of neckloops.		ANSI 706.3 Receiver Hearing-Aid Compatibility. Receivers required to be hearing aid compatible shall interface with telecoils in hearing aids through the provision of neck loops.
706.4 Sound Pressure Level. Assistive listening systems shall be capable of providing a sound pressure level of 110 dB minimum and 118 dB maximum with a dynamic range on the volume control of 50 dB.		ANSI 706.4 Sound Pressure Level. Assistive listening systems shall be capable of providing a sound pressure level of 110 dB minimum and 118 dB maximum, with a dynamic range on the volume control of 50 dB.
706.5 Signal-to-Noise Ratio. The signal-to-noise ratio for internally generated noise in assistive listening systems shall be 18 dB minimum.		ANSI 706.5 Signal-to-Noise Ratio. The signal-to-noise ratio for internally generated noise in assistive listening systems shall be 18 dB minimum.
706.6 Peak Clipping Level. Peak clipping shall not exceed 18 dB of clipping relative to the peaks of speech.		ANSI 706.6 Peak Clipping Level. Peak clipping shall not exceed 18 dB of clipping relative to the peaks of speech.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	4.33.6 Placement of Listening Systems. If the listening system provided serves individual fixed seats, then such seats shall be located within a 50 ft (15 m) viewing distance of the stage or playing area and shall have a complete view of the stage or playing area.	
707 Automatic Teller Machines and Fare Machines	4.34 Automated Teller Machines.	ANSI 707 Automatic Teller Machines (ATMs) and Fare Machines
707.1 General. Automatic teller machines and fare machines shall comply with 707.	4.34.1 General. Each automated teller machine required to be accessible by 4.1.3 shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with 4.34.	ANSI 707.1 General. Accessible automatic teller machines and fare machines shall comply with Section 707.
707.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided. EXCEPTION: Clear floor or ground space shall not be required at drive-up only automatic teller machines and fare machines.	4.34.2 Clear Floor Space. The automated teller machine shall be located so that clear floor space complying with 4.2.4 is provided to allow a person using a wheelchair to make a forward approach, a parallel approach, or both, to the machine.	ANSI 707.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 shall be provided in front of the machine. EXCEPTION: Clear floor space is not required at drive up only automatic teller machines and fare machines.
707.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts shall comply with 309. Unless a clear or correct key is provided, each operable part shall be able to be differentiated by sound or touch, without activation. EXCEPTION: Drive-up only automatic teller machines and fare machines shall not be required to comply with 309.2 and 309.3.	4.34.3 Reach Ranges. (1) Forward Approach Only. If only a forward approach is possible, operable parts of all controls shall be placed within the forward reach range specified in 4.2.5. (2) Parallel Approach Only. If only a parallel approach is possible, operable parts of controls shall be placed as follows:	ANSI 707.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts shall comply with Section 309. Each operable part shall be able to be differentiated by sound or touch, without activation. EXCEPTION: Drive up only automatic teller machines and fare machines shall not be required to comply with Section 309.2 or 309.3.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>(a) Reach Depth Not More Than 10 in (255 mm). Where the reach depth to the operable parts of all controls as measured from the vertical plane perpendicular to the edge of the unobstructed clear floor space at the farthest protrusion of the automated teller machine or surround is not more than 10 in (255 mm), the maximum height above the finished floor or grade shall be 54 in (1370 mm).</p> <p>(b) Reach Depth More Than 10 in (255 mm). Where the reach depth to the operable parts of any control as measured from the vertical plane perpendicular to the edge of the unobstructed clear floor space at the farthest protrusion of the automated teller machine or surround is more than 10 in (255 mm), the maximum height above the finished floor or grade shall be as follows: [see table below]</p> <p>(3) Forward and Parallel Approach. If both a forward and parallel approach are possible, operable parts of controls shall be placed within at least one of the reach ranges in paragraphs (1) or (2) of this section.</p>	
	<p>(4) Bins. Where bins are provided for envelopes, waste paper, or other purposes, at least one of each type provided shall comply with the applicable reach ranges in paragraph (1), (2), or (3) of this section.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where a function can be performed in a substantially equivalent manner by using an alternate control, only one of the</p>	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	controls needed to perform that function is required to comply with this section. If the controls are identified by tactile markings, such markings shall be provided on both controls.	

DOJ Table for 4.34.3(2)(b)

Reach Depth		Maximum Height	
inches	millimeters	inches	millimeters
10	255	54	1370
11	280	53 ½	1360
12	305	53	1345
13	330	52 ½	1335
14	355	51 ½	1310
15	380	51	1295
16	405	50 ½	1285
17	430	50	1270
18	455	49 ½	1255
19	485	49	1245
20	510	48 ½	1230
21	535	47 ½	1205
22	560	47	1195
23	585	46 ½	1180
24	610	46	1170

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	4.34.4 Controls. Controls for user activation shall comply with 4.27.4.	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>707.4 Privacy. Automatic teller machines shall provide the opportunity for the same degree of privacy of input and output available to all individuals.</p>	<p>4.34.5 Equipment for Persons with Vision Impairments. Instructions and all information for use shall be made accessible to and independently usable by persons with vision impairments.</p>	<p>ANSI 707.4 Privacy. Automatic teller machines shall provide the opportunity for the same degree of privacy of input and output available to all individuals.</p>
<p>707.5 Speech Output. Machines shall be speech enabled. Operating instructions and orientation, visible transaction prompts, user input verification, error messages, and all displayed information for full use shall be accessible to and independently usable by individuals with vision impairments. Speech shall be delivered through a mechanism that is readily available to all users, including but not limited to, an industry standard connector or a telephone handset. Speech shall be recorded or digitized human, or synthesized.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Audible tones shall be permitted instead of speech for visible output that is not displayed for security purposes, including but not limited to, asterisks representing personal identification numbers. 2. Advertisements and other similar information shall not be required to be audible unless they convey information that can be used in the transaction being conducted. 3. Where speech synthesis cannot be supported, dynamic alphabetic output shall not be required to be audible. 		<p>ANSI 707.8 Speech Output. Machines shall be speech enabled. Operating instructions and orientation, visible transaction prompts, user input verification, error messages, and all displayed information for full use shall be accessible to and independently usable by individuals with vision impairments. Speech shall be delivered through a mechanism that is readily available to all users including, but not limited to, an industry standard connector or a telephone handset. Speech shall be recorded or digitized human, or synthesized.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Audible tones shall be permitted in lieu of speech for visible output that is not displayed for security purposes, including but not limited to, asterisks representing personal identification numbers. 2. Advertisements and other similar information shall not be required to be audible unless they convey information that can be used in the transaction being conducted. 3. Where speech synthesis cannot be supported, dynamic alphabetic output shall not be required to be audible.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>707.5.1 User Control. Speech shall be capable of being repeated or interrupted. Volume control shall be provided for the speech function.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Speech output for any single function shall be permitted to be automatically interrupted when a transaction is selected.</p>		<p>ANSI 707.8.1 User Control. Speech shall be capable of being repeated and interrupted by the user. There shall be a volume control for the speech function.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Speech output for any single function shall be permitted to be automatically interrupted when a transaction is selected.</p>
<p>707.5.2 Receipts. Where receipts are provided, speech output devices shall provide audible balance inquiry information, error messages, and all other information on the printed receipt necessary to complete or verify the transaction.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Machine location, date and time of transaction, customer account number, and the machine identifier shall not be required to be audible. 2. Information on printed receipts that duplicates information available on-screen shall not be required to be presented in the form of an audible receipt. 3. Printed copies of bank statements and checks shall not be required to be audible. 		<p>ANSI 707.8.2 Receipts. Where receipts are provided, speech output devices shall provide audible balance inquiry information, error messages, and all other information on the printed receipt necessary to complete or verify the transaction.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Machine location, date and time of transaction, customer account number, and the machine identifier shall not be required to be audible. 2. Information on printed receipts that duplicates audible information available on-screen shall not be required to be presented in the form of an audible receipt. 3. Printed copies of bank statements and checks shall not be required to be audible.
<p>707.6 Input. Input devices shall comply with 707.6.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
707.6.1 Input Controls. At least one tactilely discernible input control shall be provided for each function. Where provided, key surfaces not on active areas of display screens, shall be raised above surrounding surfaces. Where membrane keys are the only method of input, each shall be tactilely discernable from surrounding surfaces and adjacent keys.		ANSI 707.9 Input Controls. At least one tactually discernible input control shall be provided for each function. Where provided, key surfaces not on active areas of display screens shall be raised above surrounding surfaces. Where membrane keys are the only method of input, each shall be tactually discernable from surrounding surfaces and adjacent keys.
707.6.2 Numeric Keys. Numeric keys shall be arranged in a 12-key ascending or descending telephone keypad layout. The number five key shall be tactilely distinct from the other keys.		ANSI 707.5 Numeric Keys. Numeric keys shall be arranged in a 12-key ascending or descending telephone keypad layout. The number Five key shall have a single raised dot.
707.6.3 Function Keys. Function keys shall comply with 707.6.3.		ANSI 707.6 Function Keys. Function keys shall comply with Section 707.6.
707.6.3.1 Contrast. Function keys shall contrast visually from background surfaces. Characters and symbols on key surfaces shall contrast visually from key surfaces. Visual contrast shall be either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. EXCEPTION: Tactile symbols required by 707.6.3.2 shall not be required to comply with 707.6.3.1.		ANSI 707.6.2 Contrast. Function keys shall contrast visually from background surfaces. Characters and symbols on key surfaces shall contrast visually from key surfaces. Visual contrast shall be either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. EXCEPTION: Tactile symbols required by Section 707.6.1 shall not be required to comply with Section 707.6.2.
707.6.3.2 Tactile Symbols. Function key surfaces shall have tactile symbols as follows: Enter or Proceed key: raised circle; Clear or Correct key: raised left arrow; Cancel key: raised letter ex; Add Value key: raised plus sign; Decrease Value key: raised minus sign.		ANSI 707.6.1 Tactile Symbols. Function key surfaces shall have raised tactile symbols as shown in Table 707.6.1.

ANSI Table 707.6.1—Tactile Symbols

Key Function	Description of Tactile Symbol	Tactile Symbol
Enter or Proceed:	CIRCLE	Not replicated here
Clear or Correct:	LEFT ARROW	
Cancel:	"X"	
Add Value:	PLUS SIGN	
Decrease Value:	MINUS SIGN	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>707.7 Display Screen. The display screen shall comply with 707.7.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Drive-up only automatic teller machines and fare machines shall not be required to comply with 707.7.1.</p>		<p>ANSI 707.7 Display Screen. The display screen shall comply with Section 707.7.</p>
<p>707.7.1 Visibility. The display screen shall be visible from a point located 40 inches (1015 mm) above the center of the clear floor space in front of the machine.</p>		<p>707.7.1 Visibility. The display screen shall be visible from a point located 40 inches (1015 mm) above the center of the clear floor space in front of the machine.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Drive up only automatic teller machines and fare machines shall not be required to comply with Section 707.7.1.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
707.7.2 Characters. Characters displayed on the screen shall be in a sans serif font. Characters shall be 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) high minimum based on the uppercase letter "I". Characters shall contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.		ANSI 707.7.2 Characters. Characters displayed on the screen shall be in a sans serif font. The uppercase letter "I" shall be used to determine the allowable height of all characters of the font. The uppercase letter "I" of the font shall be 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) minimum in height. Characters shall contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background, or dark characters on a light background.
707.8 Braille Instructions. Braille instructions for initiating the speech mode shall be provided. Braille shall comply with 703.3.		ANSI 707.10 Braille Instructions. Braille instructions for initiating the speech mode shall be provided. Braille shall comply with Section 703.4.
708 Two-Way Communication Systems		ANSI 708 Two-Way Communication Systems
708.1 General. Two-way communication systems shall comply with 708.		ANSI 708.1 General. Accessible two-way communication systems shall comply with Section 708.
708.2 Audible and Visual Indicators. The system shall provide both audible and visual signals.		ANSI 708.2 Audible and Visual Indicators. The system shall provide both visual and audible signals.
708.3 Handsets. Handset cords, if provided, shall be 29 inches (735 mm) long minimum.		ANSI 708.3 Handsets. Handset cords, if provided, shall be 29 inches (735 mm) minimum in length.
708.4 Residential Dwelling Unit Communication Systems. Communications systems between a residential dwelling unit and a site, building, or floor entrance shall comply with 708.4.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
708.4.1 Common Use or Public Use System Interface. The common use or public use system interface shall include the capability of supporting voice and TTY communication with the residential dwelling unit interface.		
708.4.2 Residential Dwelling Unit Interface. The residential dwelling unit system interface shall include a telephone jack capable of supporting voice and TTY communication with the common use or public use system interface.		
CHAPTER 8: SPECIAL ROOMS, SPACES, AND ELEMENTS		ANSI Chapter 8. Special Rooms and Spaces
801 General		ANSI 801 General
801.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 8 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.		ANSI 801.1 Scope. Special rooms and spaces required to be accessible by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 8.
802 Wheelchair Spaces, Companion Seats, and Designated Aisle Seats	4.33 Assembly Areas.	ANSI 802 Assembly Areas
802.1 Wheelchair Spaces. Wheelchair spaces shall comply with 802.1.	4.33.1 Minimum Number. Assembly and associated areas required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.33.	ANSI 802.1 General. Wheelchair spaces and wheel chair space locations in assembly areas with spectator seating shall comply with Section 802.
802.1.1 Floor or Ground Surface. The floor or ground surface of wheelchair spaces shall comply with 302. Changes in level are not permitted.	4.33.4 Surfaces. The ground or floor at wheelchair locations shall be level and shall comply with 4.5.	ANSI 802.2 Floor Surfaces. The floor surface of wheelchair space locations shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48 and shall comply with Section 302.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
EXCEPTION: Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.		
802.1.2 Width. A single wheelchair space shall be 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum. Where two adjacent wheelchair spaces are provided, each wheelchair space shall be 33 inches (840 mm) wide minimum.	4.33.2 Size of Wheelchair Locations. Each wheelchair location shall provide minimum clear ground or floor spaces as shown in Fig. 46. NOTE: Figure 46(a) indicates that if seating space for two wheelchair users is accessed from the front or rear, the minimum space required is 48 inches (1220 mm) deep by 66 inches (1675 mm) wide. Figure 46(b) indicates that if seating space for two wheelchair users is accessed from the side, the minimum space required is 60 inches (1525 mm) deep by 66 inches (1675 mm) wide.	ANSI 802.3 Width. A single wheelchair space shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width. Where two adjacent wheelchair spaces are provided, each wheelchair space shall be 33 inches (840 mm) minimum in width.
802.1.3 Depth. Where a wheelchair space can be entered from the front or rear, the wheelchair space shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) deep minimum. Where a wheelchair space can be entered only from the side, the wheelchair space shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) deep minimum.		ANSI 802.4 Depth. Where a wheelchair space location can be entered from the front or rear, the wheelchair space shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in depth. Where a wheelchair space location can only be entered from the side, the wheelchair space shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in depth.
802.1.4 Approach. Wheelchair spaces shall adjoin accessible routes. Accessible routes shall not overlap wheelchair spaces.		ANSI 802.5 Approach. The wheelchair space location shall adjoin an accessible route. The accessible route shall not overlap the wheelchair space location.
802.1.5 Overlap. Wheelchair spaces shall not overlap circulation paths.	4.33.3 Placement of Wheelchair Locations. Wheelchair areas shall be an integral part of any fixed seating plan and shall be provided so as to provide people with physical	ANSI 802.5.1 Overlap. A wheelchair space location shall not overlap the required width of an aisle.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>802.2 Lines of Sight. Lines of sight to the screen, performance area, or playing field for spectators in wheelchair spaces shall comply with 802.2.</p>	<p>disabilities a choice of admission prices and lines of sight comparable to those for members of the general public. They shall adjoin an accessible route that also serves as a means of egress in case of emergency. At least one companion fixed seat shall be provided next to each wheelchair seating area. When the seating capacity exceeds 300, wheelchair spaces shall be provided in more than one location. Readily removable seats may be installed in wheelchair spaces when the spaces are not required to accommodate wheelchair users.</p>	<p>ANSI 802.9 Lines of Sight. Where spectators are expected to remain seated for purposes of viewing events, spectators in wheelchair space locations shall be provided with a line of sight in accordance with Section 802.9.1. Where spectators in front of the wheelchair space locations will be expected to stand at their seats for purposes of viewing events, spectators in wheelchair space locations shall be provided with a line of sight in accordance with Section 802.9.2.</p>
<p>802.2.1 Lines of Sight Over Seated Spectators. Where spectators are expected to remain seated during events, spectators in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight complying with 802.2.1.</p>	<p>EXCEPTION: Accessible viewing positions may be clustered for bleachers, balconies, and other areas having sight lines that require slopes of greater than 5 percent. Equivalent accessible viewing positions may be located on levels having accessible egress.</p>	<p>ANSI 802.9.1 Line of Sight over Seated Spectators. Where spectators are expected to remain seated during events, spectators seated in wheelchair space locations shall be provided with lines of sight to the performance area or playing field comparable to that provided to spectators in closest proximity to the wheelchair space location. Where seating provides lines of sight over heads, spectators in wheelchair space locations shall be afforded lines of sight complying with Section 802.9.1.1. Where wheelchair space locations provide lines of sight over the shoulder and between heads, spectators in wheelchair space locations shall be afforded lines of sight complying with Section 802.9.1.2.</p>
<p>802.2.1.1 Lines of Sight Over Heads. Where spectators are provided lines of sight over the heads of spectators seated in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the heads of seated spectators in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.</p>		<p>ANSI 802.9.1.1 Lines of Sight over Heads. Spectators seated in wheelchair space locations shall be afforded lines of sight over the heads of seated individuals in the first row in front of the wheelchair space location.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>802.2.1.2 Lines of Sight Between Heads. Where spectators are provided lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of spectators seated in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of seated spectators in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.</p>		<p>ANSI 802.9.1.2 Lines of Sight between Heads. Spectators seated in wheelchair space locations shall be afforded lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of seated individuals in the first row in front of the wheelchair space location.</p>
<p>802.2.2 Lines of Sight Over Standing Spectators. Where spectators are expected to stand during events, spectators in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight complying with 802.2.2.</p>		<p>ANSI 802.9.2 Line of Sight over Standing Spectators. Wheelchair space locations required to provide a line of sight over standing spectators shall comply with Section 802.9.2.</p>
		<p>ANSI 802.9.2.1 Distance from Adjacent Seating. The front of the wheelchair space location shall be 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the back of the chair or bench in front.</p>
<p>802.2.2.1 Lines of Sight Over Heads. Where standing spectators are provided lines of sight over the heads of spectators standing in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the heads of standing spectators in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.</p>		<p>ANSI 802.9.2.2 Elevation. The elevation of the tread on which a wheelchair space location is located shall comply with Table 802.9.2.2. For riser heights other than those provided, interpolations shall be permitted.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
802.2.2.2 Lines of Sight Between Heads. Where standing spectators are provided lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of spectators standing in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of standing spectators in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.		

ANSI Table 802.9.2.2 Required Wheelchair Space Location Elevation Over Standing Spectators

Riser height		Minimum height of the wheelchair space location based on row spacing ¹	
	Rows less than 33 inches (840 mm) ²	Rows 33 inches (840 mm) to 44 inches (1120 mm) ²	Rows over 44 inches (1120 mm) ²
0 inch (0 mm)	16 inch (405 mm)	16 inch (405 mm)	16 inch (405 mm)
4 inch (102 mm)	22 inch (560 mm)	21 inch (535 mm)	21 inch (535 mm)
8 inch (205 mm)	31 inch (785 mm)	30 inch (760 mm)	28 inch (710 mm)
12 inch (305 mm)	40 inch (1015 mm)	37 inch (940 mm)	35 inch (890 mm)
16 inch (406 mm)	49 inch (1245 mm)	45 inch (1145 mm)	42 inch (1065 mm)
20 inch (510 mm) ³	58 inch (1475 mm)	53 inch (1345 mm)	49 inch (1245 mm)
24 inch (610 mm)	N/A	61 inch (1550 mm)	56 inch (1420 mm)
28 inch (710 mm) ⁴	N/A	69 inch (1750 mm)	63 inch (1600 mm)
32 inch (815 mm)	N/A	N/A	70 inch (1780 mm)
36 inch (915 mm) and higher	N/A	N/A	77 inch (1955 mm)

(continued)

¹The height of the wheelchair space location is the vertical distance from the tread of the row of seats directly in front of the wheelchair space location to the tread of the wheelchair space location.

²The row spacing is the back-to-back horizontal distance between the rows of seats in front of the wheelchair space location.

³Seating treads less than 33 inches (840 mm) in depth are not permitted with risers greater than 18 inches (455 mm) in height.

⁴Seating treads less than 44 inches (1120 mm) in depth are not permitted with risers greater than 27 inches (685 mm) in height.

NOTE: Table 802.8.9 is based on providing a spectator in a wheelchair a line of sight over the head of a spectator two rows in front of the

wheelchair space location using average anthropometrical data. The table is based on the following calculation: $[(2X+34)(Y-2.25)/X]+(20.2-Y)$ where Y is the riser height of the rows in front of the wheelchair space location and X is the tread depth of the rows in front of the wheelchair space location. The calculation is based on the front of the wheelchair space location being located 12 inches (305 mm) from the back of the seating tread directly in front and the eye of the standing spectator being set back 8 inches (205 mm) from the riser.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
802.3 Companion Seats. Companion seats shall comply with 802.3.		ANSI 802.7 Companion Seat. A companion seat, complying with Section 802.7, shall be provided beside each wheelchair space.
802.3.1 Alignment. In row seating, companion seats shall be located to provide shoulder alignment with adjacent wheelchair spaces. The shoulder alignment point of the wheelchair space shall be measured 36 inches (915 mm) from the front of the wheelchair space. The floor surface of the companion seat shall be at the same elevation as the floor surface of the wheelchair space.		ANSI 802.7.2 Companion Seat Alignment. In row seating, the companion seat shall be located to provide shoulder alignment with the wheelchair space occupant. The shoulder of the wheelchair space occupant is considered to be 36 inches (915 mm) from the front of the wheelchair space. The floor surface for the companion seat shall be at the same elevation as the wheelchair space floor surface.
802.3.2 Type. Companion seats shall be equivalent in size, quality, comfort, and amenities to the seating in the immediate area. Companion seats shall be permitted to be movable.		ANSI 802.7.1 Companion Seat Type. The companion seat shall be comparable in size and quality to assure equivalent comfort to the seats within the seating area adjacent to the wheelchair space location. Companion seats shall be permitted to be moveable.
802.4 Designated Aisle Seats. Designated aisle seats shall comply with 802.4.		ANSI 802.8 Designated Aisle Seats. Designated aisle seats shall comply with Section 802.8.
802.4.1 Armrests. Where armrests are provided on the seating in the immediate area, folding or retractable armrests shall be provided on the aisle side of the seat.		ANSI 802.8.1 Armrests. Where armrests are provided on seating in the immediate area of designated aisle seats, folding or retractable armrests shall be provided on the aisle side of

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		the designated aisle seat.
802.4.2 Identification. Each designated aisle seat shall be identified by a sign or marker.	4.1.3(19)(a) In addition, one percent, but not less than one, of all fixed seats shall be aisle seats with no armrests on the aisle side, or removable or folding armrests on the aisle side. Each such seat shall be identified by a sign or marker. Signage notifying patrons of the availability of such seats shall be posted at the ticket office. Aisle seats are not required to comply with 4.33.4.	ANSI 802.8.2 Identification. Each designated aisle seat shall be identified by a sign or marker.
803 Dressing, Fitting, and Locker Rooms	4.35 Dressing, Fitting, and Locker Rooms.	ANSI 803 Dressing, Fitting, and Locker Rooms
803.1 General. Dressing, fitting, and locker rooms shall comply with 803.	4.35.1 General. Dressing, fitting, and locker rooms required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.35 and shall be on an accessible route.	ANSI 803.1 General. Accessible dressing, fitting, and locker rooms shall comply with Section 803.
803.2 Turning Space. Turning space complying with 304 shall be provided within the room.	4.35.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space allowing a person using a wheelchair to make a 180-degree turn shall be provided in every accessible dressing room entered through a swinging or sliding door. No door shall swing into any part of the turning space. Turning space shall not be required in a private dressing room entered through a curtained opening at least 32 in (815 mm) wide if clear floor space complying with section 4.2 renders the dressing room usable by a person using a wheelchair.	ANSI 803.2 Turning Space. A turning space complying with Section 304 shall be provided within the room.
803.3 Door Swing. Doors shall not swing into the room unless a clear floor or ground space complying with 305.3 is provided beyond the	4.35.3 Doors. All doors to accessible dressing rooms shall be in compliance with section	ANSI 803.3 Door Swing. Doors shall not swing into the room unless a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided within

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
arc of the door swing.	4.13.	the room, beyond the arc of the door swing.
803.4 Benches. A bench complying with 903 shall be provided within the room.	<p>4.35.4 Bench. Every accessible dressing room shall have a 24 in by 28 in (610 mm by 1220 mm) bench fixed to the wall along the longer dimension. The bench shall be mounted 17 in to 19 in (430 mm to 485 mm) above the finish floor. Clear floor space shall be provided alongside the bench to allow a person using a wheelchair to make a parallel transfer onto the bench. The structural strength of the bench and attachments shall comply with 4.26.3. Where installed in conjunction with showers, swimming pools, or other wet locations, water shall not accumulate upon the surface of the bench and the bench shall have a slip-resistant surface.</p> <p>See also Appendix 4.35.4.</p>	ANSI 803.4 Benches. A bench complying with Section 903 shall be provided within the room.
803.5 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Coat hooks provided within the room shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in 308. Shelves shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.		ANSI 803.5 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Accessible coat hooks provided within the room shall accommodate a forward reach or side reach complying with Section 308. Where provided, a shelf shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor.
	4.35.5 Mirror. Where mirrors are provided in dressing rooms of the same use, then in an accessible dressing room, a full-length mirror, measuring at least 18 in wide by 54 in high (460 mm by 1370 mm), shall be mounted in a position affording a view to a person on the bench as well as to a person in a standing	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	position.	
804 Kitchens and Kitchenettes		ANSI 804 Kitchens and Kitchenettes
804.1 General. Kitchens and kitchenettes shall comply with 804.		ANSI 804.1 General. Accessible kitchens and kitchenettes shall comply with Section 804.
804.2 Clearance. Where a pass through kitchen is provided, clearances shall comply with 804.2.1. Where a U-shaped kitchen is provided, clearances shall comply with 804.2.2. EXCEPTION: Spaces that do not provide a cooktop or conventional range shall not be required to comply with 804.2.		ANSI 804.2 Clearance. Where a pass-through kitchen is provided, clearances shall comply with Section 804.2.1. Where a U-shaped kitchen is provided, clearances shall comply with Section 804.2.2. EXCEPTION: Spaces that do not provide a cooktop or conventional range shall not be required to comply with Section 804.2.
804.2.1 Pass Through Kitchen. In pass through kitchens where counters, appliances or cabinets are on two opposing sides, or where counters, appliances or cabinets are opposite a parallel wall, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, counter tops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum. Pass through kitchens shall have two entries.		ANSI 804.2.1 Pass-through Kitchens. In pass-through kitchens where counters, appliances or cabinets are on two opposing sides, or where counters, appliances or cabinets are opposite a parallel wall, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, counter tops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum. Pass-through kitchens shall have two entries.
804.2.2 U-Shaped. In U-shaped kitchens enclosed on three contiguous sides, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, counter tops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.		ANSI 804.2.2 U-Shaped Areas. In kitchens enclosed on three contiguous sides, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.
804.3 Kitchen Work Surface. In residential dwelling units required to comply with 809, at least one 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
section of counter shall provide a kitchen work surface that complies with 804.3.		
<p>804.3.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor space complying with 305 positioned for a forward approach shall be provided. The clear floor or ground space shall be centered on the kitchen work surface and shall provide knee and toe clearance complying with 306.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Cabinetry shall be permitted under the kitchen work surface provided that all of the following conditions are met:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the kitchen work surface; (b) the finish floor extends under the cabinetry; and (c) the walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished. 		
<p>804.3.2 Height. The kitchen work surface shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: A counter that is adjustable to provide a kitchen work surface at variable heights, 29 inches (735 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum, shall be permitted.</p>		<p>ANSI 804.3 Work Surface. Work surfaces shall comply with Section 902.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Spaces that do not provide a cooktop or conventional range shall not be required to provide an accessible work surface.</p>
<p>804.3.3 Exposed Surfaces. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under the work surface counters.</p>		
<p>804.4 Sinks. Sinks shall comply with 606.</p>		<p>ANSI 804.4 Sinks. Sinks shall comply with Section 606.</p>
<p>804.5 Storage. At least 50 percent of shelf</p>		<p>ANSI 804.5 Storage. At least 50 percent of</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
space in storage facilities shall comply with 811.		shelf space in cabinets shall comply with Section 905.
804.6 Appliances. Where provided, kitchen appliances shall comply with 804.6.		ANSI 804.6 Appliances. Where provided, kitchen appliances shall comply with Section 804.6.
804.6.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided at each kitchen appliance. Clear floor or ground spaces shall be permitted to overlap.		ANSI 804.6.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 shall be provided at each kitchen appliance. Clear floor spaces are permitted to overlap.
804.6.2 Operable Parts. All appliance controls shall comply with 309. EXCEPTIONS: 1. Appliance doors and door latching devices shall not be required to comply with 309.4. 2. Bottom-hinged appliance doors, when in the open position, shall not be required to comply with 309.3.		ANSI 804.6.2 Operable Parts. All appliance controls shall comply with Section 309. EXCEPTIONS: 1. Appliance doors and door latching devices shall not be required to comply with Section 309.4. 2. Bottom-hinged appliance doors, when in the open position, shall not be required to comply with Section 309.3.
804.6.3 Dishwasher. Clear floor or ground space shall be positioned adjacent to the dishwasher door. The dishwasher door, in the open position, shall not obstruct the clear floor or ground space for the dishwasher or the sink.		ANSI 804.6.3 Dishwasher. A clear floor space, positioned adjacent to the dishwasher door, shall be provided. The dishwasher door in the open position shall not obstruct the clear floor space for the dishwasher or an adjacent sink.
804.6.4 Range or Cooktop. Where a forward approach is provided, the clear floor or ground space shall provide knee and toe clearance complying with 306. Where knee and toe space is provided, the underside of the range or cooktop shall be insulated or otherwise configured to prevent burns, abrasions, or		ANSI 804.6.4 Range or Cooktop. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the space for a range or cooktop, shall be provided. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a forward approach, knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. Where knee and toe space is

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
electrical shock. The location of controls shall not require reaching across burners.		provided, the underside of the range or cooktop shall be insulated or otherwise configured to prevent burns, abrasions, or electrical shock. The location of controls shall not require reaching across burners.
804.6.5 Oven. Ovens shall comply with 804.6.5.		ANSI 804.6.5 Oven. Ovens shall comply with Section 804.6.5.
804.6.5.1 Side-Hinged Door Ovens. Side-hinged door ovens shall have the work surface required by 804.3 positioned adjacent to the latch side of the oven door.		ANSI 804.6.5.1 Side-Hinged Door Ovens. Side-hinged door ovens shall have a work surface complying with Section 804.3 positioned adjacent to the latch side of the oven door.
804.6.5.2 Bottom-Hinged Door Ovens. Bottom-hinged door ovens shall have the work surface required by 804.3 positioned adjacent to one side of the door.		ANSI 804.6.5.2 Bottom-Hinged Door Ovens. Bottom-hinged door ovens shall have a work surface complying with Section 804.3 positioned adjacent to one side of the door.
804.6.5.3 Controls. Ovens shall have controls on front panels.		ANSI 804.6.5.3 Controls. Ovens shall have controls on front panels.
804.6.6 Refrigerator/Freezer. Combination refrigerators and freezers shall have at least 50 percent of the freezer space 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. The clear floor or ground space shall be positioned for a parallel approach to the space dedicated to a refrigerator/freezer with the centerline of the clear floor or ground space offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the dedicated space.		ANSI 804.6.6 Refrigerator/Freezer. Combination refrigerators and freezers shall have at least 50 percent of the freezer compartment shelves, including the bottom of the freezer, 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor when the shelves are installed at the maximum heights possible in the compartment. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel approach to the space dedicated to a refrigerator/freezer, shall be provided. The centerline of the clear floor space shall be offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the dedicated space.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
805 Medical Care and Long-Term Care Facilities	6. MEDICAL CARE FACILITIES.	
805.1 General. Medical care facility and long-term care facility patient or resident sleeping rooms required to provide mobility features shall comply with 805.	6.3 Patient Bedrooms. Provide accessible patient bedrooms in compliance with section 4. Accessible patient bedrooms shall comply with the following:	
805.2 Turning Space. Turning space complying with 304 shall be provided within the room.	(2) Each bedroom shall have adequate space to provide a maneuvering space that complies with 4.2.3. In rooms with two beds, it is preferable that this space be located between beds.	
805.3 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor space complying with 305 shall be provided on each side of the bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.	(3) Each bedroom shall have adequate space to provide a minimum clear floor space of 36 in (915 mm) along each side of the bed and to provide an accessible route complying with 4.3.3 to each side of each bed.	
805.4 Toilet and Bathing Rooms. Toilet and bathing rooms that are provided as part of a patient or resident sleeping room shall comply with 603. Where provided, no fewer than one water closet, one lavatory, and one bathtub or shower shall comply with the applicable requirements of 603 through 610.	6.4 Patient Toilet Rooms. Where toilet/bathrooms are provided as a part of a patient bedroom, each patient bedroom that is required to be accessible shall have an accessible toilet/bathroom that complies with 4.22 or 4.23 and shall be on an accessible route.	
806 Transient Lodging Guest Rooms	9.2 Requirements for Accessible Units, Sleeping Rooms and Suites.	ANSI 1002 Accessible Units
806.1 General. Transient lodging guest rooms shall comply with 806. Guest rooms required to provide mobility features shall comply with		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
806.2. Guest rooms required to provide communication features shall comply with 806.3.		
806.2 Guest Rooms with Mobility Features. Guest rooms required to provide mobility features shall comply with 806.2.	9.2.1 General. Units, sleeping rooms, and suites required to be accessible by 9.1 shall comply with 9.2.	ANSI 1002.1 General. Accessible units shall comply with Section 1002.
	4.3.2(4) An accessible route shall connect at least one accessible entrance of each accessible dwelling unit with those exterior and interior spaces and facilities that serve the accessible dwelling unit.	ANSI 1002.2 Primary Entrance. The accessible primary entrance shall be on an accessible route from public and common areas. The primary entrance shall not be to a bedroom.
	9.2.2 Minimum Requirements. An accessible unit, sleeping room or suite shall be on an accessible route complying with 4.3 and have the following accessible elements and spaces.	
		ANSI 1002.3 Accessible Route. Accessible routes within Accessible units shall comply with Section 1002.3. Exterior spaces less than 30 inches (760 mm) in depth or width shall comply with Sections 1002.3.1, 1002.3.3, 302, and 303.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	9.2.2(2) An accessible route complying with 4.3 shall connect all accessible spaces and elements, including telephones, within the unit, sleeping room, or suite. This is not intended to require an elevator in multi-story units as long as the spaces identified in 9.2.2(6) and (7) are on accessible levels and the accessible sleeping area is suitable for dual occupancy.	ANSI 1002.3.1 Location. At least one accessible route shall connect all spaces and elements that are a part of the unit. Where only one accessible route is provided, it shall not pass through bathrooms and toilet rooms, closets, or similar spaces. EXCEPTION: An accessible route is not required to unfinished attics and unfinished basements that are part of the unit.
806.2.1 Living and Dining Areas. Living and dining areas shall be accessible.	9.2.2(6) Where provided as part of an accessible unit, sleeping room, or suite, the following spaces shall be accessible and shall be on an accessible route: (a) the living area.	
	(b) the dining area.	
806.2.2 Exterior Spaces. Exterior spaces, including patios, terraces and balconies that serve the guest room shall be accessible.	(d) patios, terraces, or balconies. EXCEPTION: The requirements of 4.13.8 and 4.3.8 do not apply where it is necessary to utilize a higher door threshold or a change in level to protect the integrity of the unit from wind/water damage. Where this exception results in patios, terraces or balconies that are not at an accessible level, equivalent facilitation shall be provided (e.g., equivalent facilitation at a hotel patio or balcony might consist of providing raised decking or a ramp to provide accessibility).	
		ANSI 1002.3.3 Components. Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following elements: walking surfaces with a slope not steeper than 1:20, ramps, elevators,

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		and platform lifts.
		1002.4 Walking Surfaces. Walking surfaces that are part of an accessible route shall comply with Section 403.
	9.2.2(3) Doors and doorways designed to allow passage into and within all sleeping rooms, suites or other covered units shall comply with 4.13.	ANSI 1002.5 Doors and Doorways. The primary entrance door to the unit, and all other doorways intended for user passage, shall comply with Section 404. EXCEPTION: Existing doors to hospital patient sleeping rooms shall be exempt from the requirement for space at the latch side provided the door is 44 inches (1120 mm) minimum in width.
		ANSI 1002.6 Ramps. Ramps shall comply with Section 405.
		ANSI 1002.7 Elevators. Elevators within the unit shall comply with Section 407, 408, or 409.
		ANSI 1002.8 Platform Lifts. Platform lifts within the unit shall comply with Section 410.
	9.2.2(5) All controls in accessible units, sleeping rooms, and suites shall comply with 4.27.	ANSI 1002.9 Operable Parts. Lighting controls, electrical switches and receptacle outlets, environmental controls, appliance controls, operating hardware for operable windows, plumbing fixture controls, and user controls for security or intercom systems shall comply with Section 309. EXCEPTIONS: 1. Receptacle outlets serving a dedicated use. 2. One receptacle outlet shall not be required to comply with Section 309 where all of the

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>following conditions are met:</p> <p>(a) the receptacle outlet is above a length of countertop that is uninterrupted by a sink or appliance;</p> <p>(b) at least one receptacle outlet complying with Section 1002.9 is provided for that length of countertop; and</p> <p>(c) all other receptacle outlets provided for that length of countertop comply with Section 1002.9.</p> <p>3. Floor receptacle outlets.</p> <p>4. HVAC diffusers.</p> <p>5. Controls mounted on ceiling fans.</p> <p>6. Where redundant controls other than light switches are provided for a single element, one control in each space shall not be required to be accessible.</p>
	9.2.2(6)(c) at least one sleeping area.	
<p>806.2.3 Sleeping Areas. At least one sleeping area shall provide a clear floor space complying with 305 on both sides of a bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where a single clear floor space complying with 305 positioned for parallel approach is provided between two beds, a clear floor or ground space shall not be required on both sides of a bed.</p>	<p>9.2.2(1) Accessible sleeping rooms shall have a 36 in (915 mm) clear width maneuvering space located along both sides of a bed, except that where two beds are provided, this requirement can be met by providing a 36 in (915 mm) wide maneuvering space located between the two beds.</p>	<p>IBC E104.1 General. Transient lodging facilities shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections E104.2 and E104.3. Group I-3 occupancies shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections E104.3 and E104.4.</p>
		<p>IBC E104.2 Accessible beds. In rooms or spaces having more than 25 beds, five percent of the beds shall have a clear floor space complying with ICC A117.1.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>IBC E104.2.1 Sleeping areas. A clear floor space complying with ICC A117.1 shall be provided on both sides of the accessible bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.</p> <p>Exception: This requirement shall not apply where a single clear floor space complying with ICC A117.1 positioned for parallel approach is provided between two beds.</p>
<p>806.2.4 Toilet and Bathing Facilities. At least one bathroom that is provided as part of a guest room shall comply with 603. No fewer than one water closet, one lavatory, and one bathtub or shower shall comply with 603 through 610. In addition, required roll-in shower compartments shall comply with 608.2.2 or 608.2.3. Toilet and bathing fixtures required to comply with 603 through 610 shall be permitted to be located in more than one toilet or bathing area, provided that travel between fixtures does not require travel between other parts of the guest room.</p>	<p>9.2.2(6)</p> <p>(e) at least one full bathroom (i.e., one with a water closet, a lavatory, and a bathtub or shower).</p> <p>(f) if only half baths are provided, at least one half bath.</p>	<p>ANSI 1002.11 Toilet and Bathing Facilities. Toilet and bathing facilities shall comply with Sections 603 through 610.</p>
<p>806.2.4.1 Vanity Counter Top Space. If vanity counter top space is provided in non-accessible guest toilet or bathing rooms, comparable vanity counter top space, in terms of size and proximity to the lavatory, shall also be provided in accessible guest toilet or bathing rooms.</p>		<p>ANSI 1002.11.1 Vanity Counter Top Space. If vanity counter top space is provided in nonaccessible dwelling or sleeping units within the same facility, equivalent vanity counter top space, in terms of size and proximity to the lavatory, shall also be provided in Accessible units.</p>
<p>806.2.5 Kitchens and Kitchenettes. Kitchens and kitchenettes shall comply with 804.</p>	<p>9.2.2(7) Kitchens, Kitchenettes, or Wet Bars. When provided as accessory to a sleeping room or suite, kitchens, kitchenettes, wet bars, or similar amenities shall be accessible. Clear floor space for a front or parallel approach to</p>	<p>ANSI 1002.12 Kitchens. Kitchens shall comply with Section 804. At least one work surface, 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in length, shall comply with Section 902.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	cabinets, counters, sinks, and appliances shall be provided to comply with 4.2.4. Countertops and sinks shall be mounted at a maximum height of 34 in (865 mm) above the floor. At least fifty percent of shelf space in cabinets or refrigerator/freezers shall be within the reach ranges of 4.2.5 or 4.2.6 and space shall be designed to allow for the operation of cabinet and/or appliance doors so that all cabinets and appliances are accessible and usable. Controls and operating mechanisms shall comply with 4.27.	
806.2.6 Turning Space. Turning space complying with 304 shall be provided within the guest room.		ANSI 1002.3.2 Turning Space. All rooms served by an accessible route shall provide a turning space complying with Section 304.
		ANSI 1002.10 Laundry Equipment. Washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with Section 611.
		ANSI 1002.13 Windows. Where operable windows are provided, at least one window in each sleeping, living, or dining space shall have operable parts complying with Section 1002.9. Each required operable window shall have operable parts complying with Section 1002.9.
	9.2.2(4) If fixed or built-in storage facilities such as cabinets, shelves, closets, and drawers are provided in accessible spaces, at least one of each type provided shall contain storage space complying with 4.25. Additional storage may be provided outside of the dimensions required by 4.25.	ANSI 1002.14 Storage Facilities. Where storage facilities are provided, they shall comply with Section 905. Kitchen cabinets shall comply with Section 804.5.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
806.3 Guest Rooms with Communication Features. Guest rooms required to provide communication features shall comply with 806.3.	9.3 Visual Alarms, Notification Devices and Telephones.	IBC E104.3 Communication features. Communication features complying with ICC A117.1 shall be provided in accordance with Sections E104.3.1 through E104.3.4.
806.3.1 Alarms. Where emergency warning systems are provided, alarms complying with 702 shall be provided.	9.3.1 General. In sleeping rooms required to comply with this section, auxiliary visual alarms shall be provided and shall comply with 4.28.4. Visual notification devices shall also be provided in units, sleeping rooms and suites to alert room occupants of incoming telephone calls and a door knock or bell. Notification devices shall <i>not</i> be connected to auxiliary visual alarm signal appliances. Permanently installed telephones shall have volume controls complying with 4.31.5; an accessible electrical outlet within 4 ft (1220 mm) of a telephone connection shall be provided to facilitate the use of a text telephone.	IBC 907.9.1.3 Groups I-1 and R-1. Group I-1 and R-1 sleeping units in accordance with Table 907.9.1.3 shall be provided with a visible alarm notification appliance, activated by both the in-room smoke alarm and the building fire alarm system.
806.3.2 Notification Devices. Visible notification devices shall be provided to alert room occupants of incoming telephone calls and a door knock or bell. Notification devices shall not be connected to visible alarm signal appliances. Telephones shall have volume controls compatible with the telephone system and shall comply with 704.3. Telephones shall be served by an electrical outlet complying with 309 located within 48 inches (1220 mm) of the telephone to facilitate the use of a TTY.		IBC E104.3.4 Notification devices. Visual notification devices shall be provided to alert room occupants of incoming telephone calls and a door knock or bell. Notification devices shall not be connected to visual alarm signal appliances. Permanently installed telephones shall have volume controls and an electrical outlet complying with ICC A117.1 located within 48 inches (1219 mm) of the telephone to facilitate the use of a TTY.
	9.3.2 Equivalent Facilitation. For purposes of this section, equivalent facilitation shall include the installation of electrical outlets (including outlets connected to a facility's central alarm system) and telephone wiring in sleeping rooms and suites to enable persons with hearing impairments to utilize portable visual alarms and communication devices provided by the operator of the facility.	
807 Holding Cells and Housing Cells	See Appendix 12.5	ANSI 806 Holding Cells and Housing Cells

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
807.1 General. Holding cells and housing cells shall comply with 807.		806.1 General. Holding cells and housing cells shall comply with Section 806.
807.2 Cells with Mobility Features. Cells required to provide mobility features shall comply with 807.2.	See Appendix 12.5.2	ANSI 806.2 Features for People Using Wheelchairs or Other Mobility Aids. Cells required to have features for people using wheelchairs or other mobility aids shall comply with Section 806.2.
807.2.1 Turning Space. Turning space complying with 304 shall be provided within the cell.		ANSI 806.2.1 Turning Space. Turning space complying with Section 304 shall be provided within the cell.
807.2.2 Benches. Where benches are provided, at least one bench shall comply with 903.		ANSI 806.2.2 Benches. Where benches are provided, at least one bench shall comply with Section 903.
807.2.3 Beds. Where beds are provided, clear floor space complying with 305 shall be provided on at least one side of the bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.		ANSI 806.2.3 Beds. Where beds are provided, clear floor space complying with Section 305 shall be provided on at least one side of the bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.
807.2.4 Toilet and Bathing Facilities. Toilet facilities or bathing facilities that are provided as part of a cell shall comply with 603. Where provided, no fewer than one water closet, one lavatory, and one bathtub or shower shall comply with the applicable requirements of 603 through 610.		ANSI 806.2.4 Toilet and Bathing Facilities. Toilet facilities or bathing facilities provided as part of a cell shall comply with Section 603.
807.3 Cells with Communication Features. Cells required to provide communication features shall comply with 807.3.	See Appendix 12.6	ANSI 806.3 Communication Features. Cells required to have communication features shall comply with Section 806.3.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>807.3.1 Alarms. Where audible emergency alarm systems are provided to serve the occupants of cells, visible alarms complying with 702 shall be provided.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Visible alarms shall not be required where inmates or detainees are not allowed independent means of egress.</p>		<p>ANSI 806.3.1 Alarms. Where audible emergency alarm systems are provided to serve the occupants of cells, visual alarms complying with Section 702 shall be provided.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In cells where inmates or detainees are not allowed independent means of egress, visual alarms shall not be required.</p>
<p>807.3.2 Telephones. Telephones, where provided within cells, shall have volume controls complying with 704.3.</p>		<p>ANSI 806.3.2 Telephones. Where provided, telephones within cells shall have volume controls complying with Section 704.3.</p>
808 Courtrooms	See Appendix 11.2.1	ANSI 807 Courtrooms
<p>808.1 General. Courtrooms shall comply with 808.</p>		<p>ANSI 807.1 General. Courtrooms shall comply with Section 807.</p>
<p>808.2 Turning Space. Where provided, areas that are raised or depressed and accessed by ramps or platform lifts with entry ramps shall provide unobstructed turning space complying with 304.</p>		<p>ANSI 807.2 Turning Space. Where provided, each area that is raised or depressed and accessed by ramps or platform lifts with entry ramps shall provide an unobstructed turning space complying with Section 304.</p>
<p>808.3 Clear Floor Space. Each jury box and witness stand shall have, within its defined area, clear floor space complying with 305.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In alterations, wheelchair spaces are not required to be located within the defined area of raised jury boxes or witness stands and shall be permitted to be located outside these spaces where ramp or platform lift access poses a hazard by restricting or projecting into a means of egress required by the appropriate administrative authority.</p>		<p>ANSI 807.3 Clear Floor Space. Within the defined area of each jury box and witness stand, a clear floor space complying with Section 305 shall be provided.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In alterations, wheelchair spaces are not required to be located within the defined area of raised jury boxes or witness stands and shall be permitted to be located outside these spaces where ramps or platform lifts restrict or project into the means of egress required by the administrative authority.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
808.4 Judges' Benches and Courtroom Stations. Judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations, court reporters' stations and litigants' and counsel stations shall comply with 902.		ANSI 807.4 Judges' Benches and Courtroom Stations. Judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations, court reporters' stations and litigants' and counsel stations shall comply with Section 902.
809 Residential Dwelling Units		ANSI Chapter 10. Dwelling Units and Sleeping Units
		ANSI 1001 General
		ANSI 1001.1 Scoping. Dwelling units and sleeping units required to be Accessible units, Type A units, Type B units, or units with accessible communication features by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 10.
		ANSI 1003 Type A Units
809.1 General. Residential dwelling units shall comply with 809. Residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features shall comply with 809.2 through 809.4. Residential dwelling units required to provide communication features shall comply with 809.5.		ANSI 1003.1 General. Type A units shall comply with Section 1003.
		ANSI 1003.2 Primary Entrance. The accessible primary entrance shall be on an accessible route from public and common areas. The primary entrance shall not be to a bedroom.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>809.2 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes complying with Chapter 4 shall be provided within residential dwelling units in accordance with 809.2.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Accessible routes shall not be required to or within unfinished attics or unfinished basements.</p>		<p>ANSI 1003.3 Accessible Route. Accessible routes within Type A units shall comply with Section 1003.3. Exterior spaces less than 30 inches (760 mm) in depth or width shall comply with Sections 1003.3.1, 1003.3.3, 302, and 303.</p>
<p>809.2.1 Location. At least one accessible route shall connect all spaces and elements which are a part of the residential dwelling unit. Where only one accessible route is provided, it shall not pass through bathrooms, closets, or similar spaces.</p>		<p>ANSI 1003.3.1 Location. At least one accessible route shall connect all spaces and elements that are a part of the unit. Where only one accessible route is provided, it shall not pass through bathrooms and toilet rooms, closets, or similar spaces.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: An accessible route is not required to unfinished attics and unfinished basements that are part of the unit.</p>
<p>809.2.2 Turning Space. All rooms served by an accessible route shall provide a turning space complying with 304.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Turning space shall not be required in exterior spaces 30 inches (760 mm) maximum in depth or width.</p>		<p>ANSI 1003.3.2 Turning Space. All rooms served by an accessible route shall provide a turning space complying with Section 304.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Toilet rooms and bathrooms that are not required to comply with Section 1003.11.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.3.3 Components. Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following elements: walking surfaces with a slope not steeper than 1:20, ramps, elevators, and platform lifts.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.4 Walking Surfaces. Walking surfaces that are part of an accessible route shall comply with Section 403.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.5 Doors and Doorways. The primary entrance door to the unit, and all other</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>doorways intended for user passage, shall comply with Section 404.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Thresholds at exterior sliding doors shall be permitted to be 3/4 inch (19 mm) maximum in height, provided they are beveled with a slope not greater than 1:2. 2. In toilet rooms and bathrooms not required to comply with Section 1003.11, maneuvering clearances required by Section 404.2.3 are not required on the toilet room or bathroom side of the door.
		ANSI 1003.6 Ramps. Ramps shall comply with Section 405.
		ANSI 1003.7 Elevators. Elevators within the unit shall comply with Section 407, 408, or 409.
		ANSI 1003.8 Platform Lifts. Platform lifts within the unit shall comply with Section 410.
		<p>ANSI 1003.9 Operable Parts. Lighting controls, electrical switches and receptacle outlets, environmental controls, appliance controls, operating hardware for operable windows, plumbing fixture controls, and user controls for security or intercom systems shall comply with Section 309.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receptacle outlets serving a dedicated use. 2. One receptacle outlet is not required to comply with Section 309 where all of the following conditions are met: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the receptacle outlet is above a length of countertop that is uninterrupted by a sink or appliance; and

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>(b) at least one receptacle outlet complying with Section 1003.9 is provided for that length of countertop; and</p> <p>(c) all other receptacle outlets provided for that length of countertop comply with Section 1003.9.</p> <p>3. Floor receptacle outlets.</p> <p>4. HVAC diffusers.</p> <p>5. Controls mounted on ceiling fans.</p> <p>6. Where redundant controls other than light switches are provided for a single element, one control in each space shall not be required to be accessible.</p>
		ANSI 1003.10 Laundry Equipment. Washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with Section 611.
<p>809.3 Kitchen. Where a kitchen is provided, it shall comply with 804.</p> <p>Note: Some of the special features in kitchens, referred to as “adaptable” in earlier editions of that standard, are located as exceptions in section 804 of new ADAAG.</p>		ANSI 1003.12 Kitchens. Kitchens shall comply with Section 1003.12.
		ANSI 1003.12.1 Clearance. Clearance complying with Section 1003.12.1 shall be provided.
		ANSI 1003.12.1.1 Minimum Clearance. Clearance between all opposing base cabinets, counter tops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>ANSI 1003.12.1.2 U-Shaped Kitchens. In kitchens with counters, appliances, or cabinets on three contiguous sides, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.12.2 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor spaces required by Sections 1003.12.3 through 1003.12.6 shall comply with Section 305.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.12.3 Work Surface. At least one section of counter shall provide a work surface 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in length complying with Section 1003.12.3.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.12.3.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space, positioned for a forward approach to the work surface, shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. The clear floor space shall be centered on the work surface.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Cabinetry shall be permitted under the work surface, provided:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the work surface, (b) the floor finish extends under such cabinetry, and (c) the walls behind and surrounding cabinetry are finished.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>ANSI 1003.12.3.2 Height. The work surface shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: A counter that is adjustable to provide a work surface at variable heights 29 inches (735 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor, or that can be relocated within that range without cutting the counter or damaging adjacent cabinets, walls, doors, and structural elements, shall be permitted.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.12.3.3 Exposed Surfaces. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under the exposed portions of work surface counters.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.12.4 Sink. Sinks shall comply with Section 1003.12.4.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>ANSI 1003.12.4.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space, positioned for a forward approach to the sink, shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. The clear floor space shall be centered on the sink bowl.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The requirement for knee and toe clearance shall not apply to more than one bowl of a multi-bowl sink. 2. Cabinetry shall be permitted to be added under the sink, provided: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the sink, (b) the floor finish extends under such cabinetry, and (c) the walls behind and surrounding cabinetry are finished. <p>ANSI 1003.12.4.2 Height. The front of the sink shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the higher of the rim or counter surface.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: A sink and counter that is adjustable to variable heights 29 inches (735 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor, or that can be relocated within that range without cutting the counter or damaging adjacent cabinets, walls, doors and structural elements, provided rough-in plumbing permits connections of supply and drain pipes for sinks mounted at the height of 29 inches (735 mm), shall be permitted.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1003.12.4.3 Faucets. Faucets shall comply with Section 309.
		ANSI 1003.12.4.4 Exposed Pipes and Surfaces. Water supply and drain pipes under sinks shall be insulated or otherwise configured to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under sinks.
		ANSI 1003.12.5 Kitchen Storage. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the kitchen cabinets, shall be provided.
		ANSI 1003.12.6 Appliances. Where provided, kitchen appliances shall comply with Section 1003.12.6.
		ANSI 1003.12.6.1 Operable Parts. All appliance controls shall comply with Section 1003.9. EXCEPTIONS: 1. Appliance doors and door latching devices shall not be required to comply with Section 309.4. 2. Bottom-hinged appliance doors, when in the open position, shall not be required to comply with Section 309.3.
		ANSI 1003.12.6.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach, shall be provided at each kitchen appliance. Clear floor spaces shall be permitted to overlap.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1003.12.6.3 Dishwasher. A clear floor space, positioned adjacent to the dishwasher door, shall be provided. The dishwasher door in the open position shall not obstruct the clear floor space for the dishwasher or an adjacent sink.
		ANSI 1003.12.6.4 Range or Cooktop. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the space for a range or cooktop, shall be provided. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a forward approach, knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. Where knee and toe space is provided, the underside of the range or cooktop shall be insulated or otherwise configured to protect from burns, abrasions, or electrical shock. The location of controls shall not require reaching across burners.
		ANSI 1003.12.6.5 Oven. Ovens shall comply with Section 1003.12.6.5. Ovens shall have controls on front panels, on either side of the door.
		ANSI 1003.12.6.5.1 Side-Hinged Door Ovens. Side-hinged door ovens shall have a countertop positioned adjacent to the latch side of the oven door.
		ANSI 1003.12.6.5.2 Bottom-Hinged Door Ovens. Bottom-hinged door ovens shall have a countertop positioned adjacent to one side of the door.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>ANSI 1003.12.6.6 Refrigerator/Freezer. Combination refrigerators and freezers shall have at least 50 percent of the freezer compartment shelves, including the bottom of the freezer 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor when the shelves are installed at the maximum heights possible in the compartment. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel approach to the space dedicated to a refrigerator/freezer, shall be provided. The centerline of the clear floor space shall be offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the dedicated space.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.12.6.7 Trash Compactor. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the trash compactor, shall be provided.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.13 Windows. Where operable windows are provided, at least one window in each sleeping, living, or dining space shall have operable parts complying with Section 1003.9. Each required operable window shall have operable parts complying with Section 1003.9.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.14 Storage Facilities. Where storage facilities are provided, they shall comply with Section 1003.14. Kitchen cabinets shall comply with Section 1003.12.5.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.14.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for a parallel or forward approach, shall be provided at each storage facility.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1003.14.2 Height. A portion of the storage area of each storage facility shall comply with at least one of the reach ranges specified in Section 308.
		ANSI 1003.14.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts on storage facilities shall comply with Section 309.
809.4 Toilet Facilities and Bathing Facilities. At least one bathroom shall comply with 603. No fewer than one of each type of fixture provided shall comply with applicable requirements of 603 through 610. Toilet and bathing fixtures required to comply with 603 through 610 shall be located in the same toilet and bathing area, such that travel between fixtures does not require travel between other parts of the residential dwelling unit. Note: Many of the special features in ANSI toilet and bathing facilities, referred to as “adaptable” in earlier editions of that standard, are located as exceptions in sections 603 through 610 of new ADAAG.		ANSI 1003.11 Toilet and Bathing Facilities.
		ANSI 1003.11.1 General. All toilet and bathing areas shall comply with Section 1003.11.4. At least one toilet and bathing facility shall comply with Section 1003.11. At least one lavatory, one water closet and either a bathtub or shower within the unit shall comply with Section 1003.11. The accessible toilet and bathing fixtures shall be in a single toilet/bathing area, such that travel between fixtures does not require travel through other parts of the unit.
		ANSI 1003.11.2 Doors. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space or clearance for any fixture. EXCEPTION: Where a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided within the room beyond the arc of the door swing.
		ANSI 1003.11.3 Overlap. Clear floor spaces, clearances at fixtures and turning spaces are permitted to overlap.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>ANSI 1003.11.4 Reinforcement. Reinforcement shall be provided for the future installation of grab bars and shower seats at water closets, bathtubs, and shower compartments. Where walls are located to permit the installation of grab bars and seats complying with Sections 604.5, 607.4, 608.3 and 608.4, reinforcement shall be provided for the future installation of grab bars and seats meeting those requirements.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Reinforcement is not required in a room containing only a lavatory and a water closet, provided the room does not contain the only lavatory or water closet on the accessible level of the dwelling unit.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.11.5 Lavatory. Lavatories shall comply with Section 606.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Cabinetry shall be permitted under the lavatory, provided:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the lavatory; (b) the floor finish extends under such cabinetry; and (c) the walls behind and surrounding cabinetry are finished.
		<p>ANSI 1003.11.6 Mirrors. Mirrors above lavatories shall have the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the floor.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.11.7 Water Closet. Water closets shall comply with Section 1003.11.7.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>ANSI 1003.11.7.1 Location. The water closet shall be positioned with a wall to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the sidewall.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.11.7.2 Clearance. A clearance around the water closet of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum, measured perpendicular from the side wall, and 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum, measured perpendicular from the rear wall, shall be provided.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.11.7.3 Overlap. The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, paper dispensers, coat hooks, shelves, accessible routes, clear floor space required at other fixtures, and the wheelchair turning space. No other fixtures or obstructions shall be located within the required water closet clearance.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: A lavatory complying with Section 1003.11.5 shall be permitted on the rear wall 18 inches (455 mm) minimum from the centerline of the water closet where the clearance at the water closet is 66 inches (1675 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1003.11.7.4 Height. The top of the water closet seat shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1003.11.7.5 Flush Controls. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Section 1003.9. Flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet.
		ANSI 1003.11.8 Bathtub. Bathtubs shall comply with Section 607. EXCEPTIONS: 1. The removable in-tub seat required by Section 607.3 is not required. 2. Counter tops and cabinetry shall be permitted at the control end of the clearance, provided such counter tops and cabinetry can be removed and the floor finish extends under such cabinetry.
		ANSI 1003.11.9 Shower. Showers shall comply with Section 608. EXCEPTION: Counter tops and cabinetry shall be permitted at the control end of the clearance, provided such counter tops and cabinetry can be removed and the floor finish extends under such cabinetry.
809.5 Residential Dwelling Units with Communication Features. Residential dwelling units required to provide communication features shall comply with 809.5.		ANSI 1005 Units with Accessible Communication Features
		ANSI 1005.1 General. Units required to have accessible communication features shall comply with Section 1005.
809.5.1 Building Fire Alarm System. Where a building fire alarm system is provided, the system wiring shall be extended to a point within the residential dwelling unit in the vicinity of the residential dwelling unit smoke detection system.		ANSI 1005.3 Building Fire Alarm System. Where a building fire alarm system is provided, the system wiring shall be extended to a point within the unit in the vicinity of the unit smoke detection system.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
809.5.1.1 Alarm Appliances. Where alarm appliances are provided within a residential dwelling unit as part of the building fire alarm system, they shall comply with 702.		ANSI 1005.4 Visible Notification Appliances. Visible notification appliances, where provided within the unit as part of the unit smoke detection system or the building fire alarm system, shall comply with Section 1005.4. ANSI 1005.4.1 Appliance. Visible notification appliances shall comply with Section 702.
809.5.1.2 Activation. All visible alarm appliances provided within the residential dwelling unit for building fire alarm notification shall be activated upon activation of the building fire alarm in the portion of the building containing the residential dwelling unit.		ANSI 1005.4.2 Activation. All visible notification appliances provided within the unit for smoke detection notification shall be activated upon smoke detection. All visible notification appliances provided within the unit for building fire alarm notification shall be activated upon activation of the building fire alarm in the portion of the building containing the unit.
809.5.2 Residential Dwelling Unit Smoke Detection System. Residential dwelling unit smoke detection systems shall comply with NFPA 72 (1999 or 2002 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1).		ANSI 1005.2 Unit Smoke Detection. Where provided, unit smoke detection shall include audible notification complying with NFPA 72 listed in Section 105.2.2.
809.5.2.2 Activation. All visible alarm appliances provided within the residential dwelling unit for smoke detection notification shall be activated upon smoke detection.		
809.5.3 Interconnection. The same visible alarm appliances shall be permitted to provide notification of residential dwelling unit smoke detection and building fire alarm activation.		ANSI 1005.4.3 Interconnection. The same visible notification appliances shall be permitted to provide notification of unit smoke detection and building fire alarm activation.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
809.5.4 Prohibited Use. Visible alarm appliances used to indicate residential dwelling unit smoke detection or building fire alarm activation shall not be used for any other purpose within the residential dwelling unit.		ANSI 1005.4.4 Prohibited Use. Visible notification appliances used to indicate unit smoke detection or building fire alarm activation shall not be used for any other purpose within the unit.
809.5.5 Residential Dwelling Unit Primary Entrance. Communication features shall be provided at the residential dwelling unit primary entrance complying with 809.5.5.		ANSI 1005.5 Unit Primary Entrance. Communication features shall be provided at the unit primary entrance complying with Section 1005.5.
809.5.5.1 Notification. A hard-wired electric doorbell shall be provided. A button or switch shall be provided outside the residential dwelling unit primary entrance. Activation of the button or switch shall initiate an audible tone and visible signal within the residential dwelling unit. Where visible doorbell signals are located in sleeping areas, they shall have controls to deactivate the signal.		ANSI 1005.5.1 Notification. A hard-wired electric doorbell shall be provided. A button or switch shall be provided on the public side of the unit primary entrance. Activation of the button or switch shall initiate an audible tone within the unit.
809.5.5.2 Identification. A means for visually identifying a visitor without opening the residential dwelling unit entry door shall be provided and shall allow for a minimum 180 degree range of view.		ANSI 1005.5.2 Identification. A means for visually identifying a visitor without opening the unit entry door shall be provided. Peepholes, where used, shall provide a minimum 180-degree range of view.
809.5.6 Site, Building, or Floor Entrance. Where a system, including a closed-circuit system, permitting voice communication between a visitor and the occupant of the residential dwelling unit is provided, the system shall comply with 708.4.		ANSI 1005.6 Site, Building, or Floor Entrance. Where a system permitting voice communication between a visitor and the occupant of the unit is provided at a location other than the unit entry door, the system shall comply with Section 1005.6.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1005.6.1 Public or Common–Use Interface. The public or common–use system interface shall include the capability of supporting voice and TTY communication with the unit interface.
		ANSI 1005.6.2 Unit Interface. The unit system interface shall include a telephone jack capable of supporting voice and TTY communication with the public or common–use system interface.
		ANSI 1005.7 Closed–Circuit Communication Systems. Where a closed–circuit communication system is provided, the public or common–use system interface shall comply with Section 1005.6.1, and the unit system interface in units required to have accessible communication features shall comply with Section 1005.6.2.
		ANSI 1004 Type B Units
		ANSI 1004.1 General. Type B units shall comply with Section 1004.
		ANSI 1004.2 Primary Entrance. The accessible primary entrance shall be on an accessible route from public and common areas. The primary entrance shall not be to a bedroom.
		ANSI 1004.3 Accessible Route. Accessible routes within Type B units shall comply with Section 1004.3.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>ANSI 1004.3.1 Location. At least one accessible route shall connect all spaces and elements that are a part of the unit. Where only one accessible route is provided, it shall not pass through bathrooms and toilet rooms, closets, or similar spaces.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: One of the following is not required to be on an accessible route:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A raised floor area in a portion of a living, dining, or sleeping room; or 2. A sunken floor area in a portion of a living, dining, or sleeping room; or 3. A mezzanine that does not have plumbing fixtures or an enclosed habitable space.
		<p>ANSI 1004.3.2 Components. Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following elements: walking surfaces with a slope not steeper than 1:20, doorways, ramps, elevators, and platform lifts.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1004.4 Walking Surfaces. Walking surfaces that are part of an accessible route shall comply with Section 1004.4.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1004.4.1 Width. Clear width of an accessible route shall comply with Section 403.5.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1004.4.2 Changes in Level. Changes in level shall comply with Section 303.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where exterior deck, patio or balcony surface materials are impervious, the finished exterior impervious surface shall be 4 inches (100 mm) maximum below the floor level of the adjacent interior spaces of the unit.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1004.5 Doors and Doorways. Doors and doorways shall comply with Section 1004.5.
		ANSI 1004.5.1 Primary Entrance Door. The primary entrance door to the unit shall comply with Section 404. EXCEPTION: Maneuvering clearances required by Section 404.2.3 shall not be required on the unit side of the primary entrance door.
		ANSI 1004.5.2 User Passage Doorways. Doorways intended for user passage shall comply with Section 1004.5.2.
		ANSI 1004.5.2.1 Clear Width. Doorways shall have a clear opening of 313/4 inches (810 mm) minimum. Clear opening of swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the door and stop, with the door open 90 degrees.
		ANSI 1004.5.2.2 Thresholds. Thresholds shall comply with Section 303. EXCEPTION: Thresholds at exterior sliding doors shall be permitted to be 3/4 inch (19 mm) maximum in height, provided they are beveled with a slope not steeper than 1:2.
		ANSI 1004.5.2.3 Automatic Doors. Automatic doors shall comply with Section 404.3.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1004.5.2.4 Double Leaf Doorways. Where an inactive leaf with operable parts higher than 48 inches (1220 mm) or lower than 15 inches (380 mm) above the floor is provided, the active leaf shall provide the clearance required by Section 1004.5.2.1.
		ANSI 1004.6 Ramps. Ramps shall comply with Section 405.
		ANSI 1004.7 Elevators. Elevators within the unit shall comply with Section 407, 408, or 409.
		ANSI 1004.8 Platform Lifts. Platform lifts within the unit shall comply with Section 410.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>ANSI 1004.9 Operable Parts. Lighting controls, electrical switches and receptacle outlets, environmental controls, and user controls for security or intercom systems shall comply with Sections 309.2 and 309.3.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receptacle outlets serving a dedicated use. 2. One receptacle outlet is not required to comply with Sections 309.2 and 309.3 where all of the following conditions are met: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the receptacle outlet is above a length of countertop that is uninterrupted by a sink or appliance; and (b) at least one receptacle outlet complying with Section 1004.9 is provided for that length of countertop; and (c) all other receptacle outlets provided for that length of countertop comply with Section 1004.9. 3. Floor receptacle outlets. 4. HVAC diffusers. 5. Controls mounted on ceiling fans. 6. Controls or switches mounted on appliances. 7. Plumbing fixture controls.
		<p>ANSI 1004.10 Laundry Equipment. Washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with Section 1004.10.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1004.10.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305.3, positioned for parallel approach, shall be provided. The clear floor space shall be centered on the appliance.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1004.11 Toilet and Bathing Facilities. Toilet and bathing fixtures shall comply with Section 1004.11. EXCEPTION: Fixtures on levels not required to be accessible.
		ANSI 1004.11.1 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space required by Section 1004.11.3.1 or 1004.11.3.2 shall comply with Sections 1004.11.1 and 305.3.
		ANSI 1004.11.1.1 Doors. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space for any fixture. EXCEPTION: Where a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3, excluding knee and toe clearances under elements, is provided within the room beyond the arc of the door swing.
		ANSI 1004.11.1.2 Knee and Toe Clearance. Clear floor space at fixtures shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearances complying with Section 306.
		ANSI 1004.11.1.3 Overlap. Clear floor spaces shall be permitted to overlap.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>ANSI 1004.11.2 Reinforcement. Reinforcement shall be provided for the future installation of grab bars and shower seats at water closets, bathtubs, and shower compartments. Where walls are located to permit the installation of grab bars and seats complying with Sections 604.5, 607.4, 608.3 and 608.4, reinforcement shall be provided for the future installation of grab bars and seats meeting those requirements.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Reinforcement is not required in a room containing only a lavatory and a water closet, provided the room does not contain the only lavatory or water closet on the accessible level of the unit.</p>
		<p>ANSI 1004.11.3 Toilet and Bathing Rooms. Either all toilet and bathing rooms provided shall comply with Section 1004.11.3.1 (Option A), or one toilet and bathing room shall comply with Section 1004.11.3.2 (Option B).</p>
		<p>ANSI 1004.11.3.1 Option A. Each fixture provided shall comply with Section 1004.11.3.1.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: A lavatory and a water closet in a room containing only a lavatory and water closet, provided the room does not contain the only lavatory or water closet on the accessible level of the unit.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		<p>ANSI 1004.11.3.1.1 Lavatory. A clear floor space complying with Section 305.3, positioned for a parallel approach, shall be provided. The clear floor space shall be centered on the lavatory.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A lavatory complying with Section 606. 2. Cabinetry shall be permitted under the lavatory provided such cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the lavatory, and the floor finish extends under such cabinetry.
		<p>ANSI 1004.11.3.1.2 Water Closet. The lateral distance from the centerline of the water closet to a bathtub or lavatory shall be 18 inches (455 mm) minimum on the side opposite the direction of approach and 15 inches (380 mm) minimum on the other side. The lateral distance from the centerline of the water closet to an adjacent wall shall be 18 inches (455 mm). The lateral distance from the centerline of the water closet to a lavatory or bathtub shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum. The water closet shall be positioned to allow for future installation of a grab bar on the side with 18 inches (455 mm) clearance. Clearance around the water closet shall comply with Section 1004.11.3.1.2.1, 1004.11.3.1.2.2, or 1004.11.3.1.2.3.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1004.11.3.1.2.1 Parallel Approach. A clearance 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum measured from the wall behind the water closet, and 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum measured from a point 18 inches (455 mm) from the centerline of the water closet on the side designated for future installation of grab bars shall be provided. Vanities or lavatories on the wall behind the water closet are permitted to overlap the clearance.
		ANSI 1004.11.3.1.2.2 Forward Approach. A clearance 66 inches (1675 mm) minimum measured from the wall behind the water closet, and 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum measured from a point 18 inches (455 mm) from the centerline of the water closet on the side designated for future installation of grab bars shall be provided. Vanities or lavatories on the wall behind the water closet are permitted to overlap the clearance.
		ANSI 1004.11.3.1.2.3 Parallel or Forward Approach. A clearance 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum measured from the wall behind the water closet, and 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum measured from the centerline of the water closet shall be provided.
		ANSI 1004.11.3.1.3 Bathing Facilities. Where a bathtub or shower compartment is provided it shall conform with Section 1004.11.3.1.3.1, 1004.11.3.1.3.2, or 1004.11.3.1.3.3.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1004.11.3.1.3.1 Parallel Approach Bathtubs. A clearance 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width shall be provided in front of bathtubs with a parallel approach. Lavatories complying with Section 606 shall be permitted in the clearance. A lavatory complying with Section 1004.11.3.1.1 shall be permitted at the control end of the bathtub if a clearance 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width for a parallel approach is provided in front of the bathtub.
		ANSI 1004.11.3.1.3.2 Forward Approach Bathtubs. A clearance 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length and 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in width shall be provided in front of bathtubs with a forward approach. A water closet shall be permitted in the clearance at the control end of the bathtub.
		ANSI 1004.11.3.1.3.3 Shower Compartment. If a shower compartment is the only bathing facility, the shower compartment shall have dimensions of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth. A clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length, measured perpendicular from the shower head wall, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, measured from the face of the shower compartment, shall be provided. Reinforcing for a shower seat is not required in shower compartments larger than 36 inches (915 mm) in width and 36 inches (915 mm) in depth.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1004.11.3.2 Option B. One of each type of fixture provided shall comply with Section 1004.11.3.2. The accessible fixtures shall be in a single toilet/bathing area, such that travel between fixtures does not require travel through other parts of the unit.
		ANSI 1004.11.3.2.1 Lavatory. Lavatories shall comply with Section 1004.11.3.2.1.
		ANSI 1004.11.3.2.1.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305.3, positioned for a parallel approach, shall be provided. EXCEPTIONS: 1. A lavatory complying with Section 606. 2. Cabinetry shall be permitted under the lavatory, provided such cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the lavatory, and the floor finish extends under such cabinetry.
		ANSI 1004.11.3.2.1.2 Position. The clear floor space shall be centered on the lavatory.
		ANSI 1004.11.3.2.1.3 Height. The front of the lavatory shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the higher of the fixture rim or counter surface.
		ANSI 1004.11.3.2.2 Water Closet. The water closet shall comply with Section 1004.11.3.1.2.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1004.11.3.2.3 Bathing Facilities. Where either a bathtub or shower compartment is provided, it shall conform with Section 1004.11.3.2.3.1 or 1004.11.3.2.3.2.
		ANSI 1004.11.3.2.3.1 Bathtub. A clearance 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control end of the bathtub, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width shall be provided in front of bathtubs.
		ANSI 1004.11.3.2.3.2 Shower Compartment. A shower compartment shall comply with Section 1004.11.3.1.3.3.
		ANSI 1004.12 Kitchens. Kitchens shall comply with Section 1004.12.
		ANSI 1004.12.1 Clearance. Clearance complying with Section 1004.12.1 shall be provided.
		ANSI 1004.12.1.1 Minimum Clearance. Clearance between all opposing base cabinets, counter tops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum.
		ANSI 1004.12.1.2 U-Shaped Kitchens. In kitchens with counters, appliances, or cabinets on three contiguous sides, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1004.12.2 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space at appliances shall comply with Sections 1004.12.2 and 305.3.
		ANSI 1004.12.2.1 Sink. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel approach to the sink, shall be provided. The clear floor space shall be centered on the sink bowl. EXCEPTION: Sinks complying with Section 606 shall be permitted to have a clear floor space positioned for a parallel or forward approach.
		ANSI 1004.12.2.2 Dishwasher. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the dishwasher, shall be provided. The clear floor space shall be positioned beyond the swing of the dishwasher door.
		ANSI 1004.12.2.3 Cooktop. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the cooktop, shall be provided. The centerline of the clear floor space shall align with the centerline of the cooktop. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a forward approach, knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. Where knee and toe space is provided, the underside of the range or cooktop shall be insulated or otherwise configured to prevent burns, abrasions, or electrical shock.
		ANSI 1004.12.2.4 Oven. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the oven, shall be provided.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 1004.12.2.5 Refrigerator/Freezer. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the refrigerator/freezer, shall be provided.
		ANSI 1004.12.2.6 Trash Compactor. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the trash compactor, shall be provided.
810 Transportation Facilities		ANSI 805 Transportation Facilities
810.1 General. Transportation facilities shall comply with 810.	10.1 General. Every station, bus stop, bus stop pad, terminal, building or other transportation facility, shall comply with the applicable provisions of 4.1 through 4.35, sections 5 through 9, and the applicable provisions of this section. The exception for elevators in 4.1.3(5), exception 1 and 4.1.6(1)(k) do not apply to a terminal, depot, or other station used for specific transportation, or an airport passenger terminal, or facilities subject to Title II.	ANSI 805.1 General. Transportation facilities shall comply with Section 805.
	10.2 Bus Stops and Terminals	
	10.2.1 New Construction	
810.2 Bus Boarding and Alighting Areas. Bus boarding and alighting areas shall comply with 810.2.	10.2.1(1) Where new bus stop pads are constructed at bus stops, bays or other areas where a lift or ramp is to be deployed, they shall have a firm, stable surface; a minimum clear length of 96 inches (measured from the	IBC E108.2 Bus boarding and alighting areas. Bus boarding and alighting areas shall comply with Sections E108.2.1 through E108.2.4.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	curb or vehicle roadway edge) and a minimum clear width of 60 inches (measured parallel to the vehicle roadway) to the maximum extent allowed by legal or site constraints; and shall be connected to streets, sidewalks or pedestrian paths by an accessible route complying with 4.3 and 4.4. The slope of the pad parallel to the roadway shall, to the extent practicable, be the same as the roadway. For water drainage, a maximum slope of 1:50 (2%) perpendicular to the roadway is allowed.	ANSI 805.2 Bus Boarding and Alighting Areas. Bus boarding and alighting areas shall comply with Section 805.2.
810.2.1 Surface. Bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall have a firm, stable surface.		IBC E108.2.1 Surface. Bus boarding and alighting areas shall have a firm, stable surface.
		ANSI 805.2.1 Surface. Bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall have a firm, stable surface.
810.2.2 Dimensions. Bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall provide a clear length of 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum, measured perpendicular to the curb or vehicle roadway edge, and a clear width of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum, measured parallel to the vehicle roadway.		IBC E108.2.2 Dimensions. Bus boarding and alighting areas shall have a clear length of 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum, measured perpendicular to the curb or vehicle roadway edge, and a clear width of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum, measured parallel to the vehicle roadway.
		ANSI 805.2.2 Dimensions. Bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall have a 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum clear length, measured perpendicular to the curb or vehicle roadway edge, and a 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum clear width, measured parallel to the vehicle roadway.
810.2.3 Connection. Bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall be connected to streets, sidewalks, or pedestrian paths by an accessible route complying with 402.		IBC E108.2.3 Connection. Bus boarding and alighting areas shall be connected to streets, sidewalks or pedestrian paths by an accessible route complying with Section 1104.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
		ANSI 805.2.4 Connection. Bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall be connected to streets, sidewalks, or pedestrian paths by an accessible route complying with Section 402.
810.2.4 Slope. Parallel to the roadway, the slope of the bus stop boarding and alighting area shall be the same as the roadway, to the maximum extent practicable. Perpendicular to the roadway, the slope of the bus stop boarding and alighting area shall not be steeper than 1:48.		IBC E108.2.4 Slope. Parallel to the roadway, the slope of the bus boarding and alighting area shall be the same as the roadway, to the maximum extent practicable. For water drainage, a maximum slope of 1:48 perpendicular to the roadway is allowed.
		ANSI 805.2.3 Slope. The slope of the bus stop boarding and alighting area parallel to the vehicle roadway shall be the same as the roadway, to the maximum extent practicable. The slope of the bus stop boarding and alighting area perpendicular to the vehicle roadway shall be 1:48 maximum.
810.3 Bus Shelters. Bus shelters shall provide a minimum clear floor or ground space complying with 305 entirely within the shelter. Bus shelters shall be connected by an accessible route complying with 402 to a boarding and alighting area complying with 810.2.	10.2.1(2) Where provided, new or replaced bus shelters shall be installed or positioned so as to permit a wheelchair or mobility aid user to enter from the public way and to reach a location, having a minimum clear floor area of 30 inches by 48 inches, entirely within the perimeter of the shelter. Such shelters shall be connected by an accessible route to the boarding area provided under paragraph (1) of this section.	IBC E108.3 Bus shelters. Where provided, new or replaced bus shelters shall provide a minimum clear floor or ground space complying with ICC A117.1, Section 305, entirely within the shelter. Such shelters shall be connected by an accessible route to the boarding area required by Section E108.2.
		ANSI 805.3 Bus Shelters. Bus shelters shall provide a minimum clear floor space complying with Section 305 entirely within the shelter. Bus shelters shall be connected by an accessible route complying with Section 402 to a boarding and alighting area complying with Section 805.2.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>810.4 Bus Signs. Bus route identification signs shall comply with 703.5.1 through 703.5.4, and 703.5.7 and 703.5.8. In addition, to the maximum extent practicable, bus route identification signs shall comply with 703.5.5.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Bus schedules, timetables and maps that are posted at the bus stop or bus bay shall not be required to comply.</p>	<p>10.2.1(3) Where provided, all new bus route identification signs shall comply with 4.30.5. In addition, to the maximum extent practicable, all new bus route identification signs shall comply with 4.30.2 and 4.30.3. Signs that are sized to the maximum dimensions permitted under legitimate local, state or federal regulations or ordinances shall be considered in compliance with 4.30.2 and 4.30.3 for purposes of this section.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Bus schedules, timetables, or maps that are posted at the bus stop or bus bay are not required to comply with this provision.</p>	<p>IBC E108.4 Signs. New bus route identification signs shall have finish and contrast complying with ICC A117.1. Additionally, to the maximum extent practicable, new bus route identification signs shall provide visual characters complying with ICC A117.1.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Bus schedules, timetables and maps that are posted at the bus stop or bus bay are not required to meet this requirement.</p>
		<p>ANSI 805.4 Bus Signs. Bus route identification signs shall have visual characters complying with Sections 703.2.2, 703.2.3, and 703.2.5 through 703.2.8. In addition, bus route identification numbers shall be visual characters complying with Section 703.2.4.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Bus schedules, timetables and maps that are posted at the bus stop or bus bay shall not be required to comply with Section 805.4.</p>
	<p>10.2.2 Bus Stop Siting and Alterations.</p> <p>(1) Bus stop sites shall be chosen such that, to the maximum extent practicable, the areas where lifts or ramps are to be deployed comply with section 10.2.1(1) and (2).</p> <p>(2) When new bus route identification signs are installed or old signs are replaced, they shall comply with the requirements of 10.2.1(3).</p>	<p>E108.5 Bus stop siting. Bus stop sites shall be chosen such that, to the maximum extent practicable, the area where ramps or lifts are to be deployed comply with Sections E108.2 and E108.3.</p>
<p>810.5 Rail Platforms. Rail platforms shall comply with 810.5.</p>		<p>ANSI 805.5 Rail Platforms. Rail platforms shall comply with Section 805.5.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>810.5.1 Slope. Rail platforms shall not exceed a slope of 1:48 in all directions.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where platforms serve vehicles operating on existing track or track laid in existing roadway, the slope of the platform parallel to the track shall be permitted to be equal to the slope (grade) of the roadway or existing track.</p>		<p>ANSI 805.5.1 Slope. Rail platforms shall not exceed a slope of 1:48 in all directions.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where platforms serve vehicles operating on existing track or track laid in existing roadway, the slope of the platform parallel to the track shall be permitted to be equal to the slope (grade) of the roadway or existing track.</p>
<p>810.5.2 Detectable Warnings. Platform boarding edges not protected by platform screens or guards shall have detectable warnings complying with 705 along the full length of the public use area of the platform.</p>	<p>10.3.1(8) Platform edges bordering a drop-off and not protected by platform screens or guard rails shall have a detectable warning. Such detectable warnings shall comply with 4.29.2 and shall be 24 inches wide running the full length of the platform drop-off.</p>	<p>IBC 1109.9 Detectable warnings. Passenger transit platform edges bordering a drop-off and not protected by platform screens or guards shall have a detectable warning.</p> <p>Exception: Detectable warnings are not required at bus stops.</p>
		<p>ANSI 805.5.2 Detectable Warnings. Platform boarding edges not protected by platform screens or guards shall have a detectable warning complying with Section 705, 24 inches (610 mm) in width, along the full length of the public use area of the platform.</p>
<p>810.5.3 Platform and Vehicle Floor Coordination. Station platforms shall be positioned to coordinate with vehicles in accordance with the applicable requirements of 36 CFR Part 1192. Low-level platforms shall be 8 inches (205 mm) minimum above top of rail.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where vehicles are boarded from sidewalks or street-level, low-level platforms shall be permitted to be less than 8 inches (205 mm).</p>	<p>10.3.1(9) In stations covered by this section, rail-to-platform height in new stations shall be coordinated with the floor height of new vehicles so that the vertical difference, measured when the vehicle is at rest, is within plus or minus 5/8 inch under normal passenger load conditions. For rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, high speed rail, and intercity rail systems in new stations, the horizontal gap, measured when the new vehicle is at rest, shall be no greater than 3 inches. For slow moving automated guideway</p>	<p>IBC E109.2.4 Rail-to-platform height. Station platforms shall be positioned to coordinate with vehicles in accordance with the applicable provisions of 36 CFR, Part 1192. Low-level platforms shall be 8 inches (250 mm) minimum above top of rail.</p> <p>Exception: Where vehicles are boarded from sidewalks or street level, low-level platforms shall be permitted to be less than 8 inches (250 mm).</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>"people mover" transit systems, the horizontal gap in new stations shall be no greater than 1 inch.</p> <p>EXCEPTION 1: Existing vehicles operating in new stations may have a vertical difference with respect to the new platform within plus or minus 1-1/2 inches.</p> <p>EXCEPTION 2: In light rail, commuter rail and intercity rail systems where it is not operationally or structurally feasible to meet the horizontal gap or vertical difference requirements, mini-high platforms, car-borne or platform-mounted lifts, ramps or bridge plates, or similar manually deployed devices, meeting the applicable requirements of 36 C.F.R. part 1192, or 49 C.F.R. part 38 shall suffice.</p>	
<p>810.6 Rail Station Signs. Rail station signs shall comply with 810.6.</p> <p>EXCEPTION. Signs shall not be required to comply with 810.6.1 and 810.6.2 where audible signs are remotely transmitted to hand-held receivers, or are user- or proximity-actuated.</p>		<p>IBC E109.2.2 Signs. Signage in fixed transportation facilities and stations shall comply with Sections E109.2.2.1 through E109.2.2.3.</p>
		<p>ANSI 805.6 Rail Station Signs. Rail station signs shall comply with Section 805.6.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Signs shall not be required to comply with Sections 805.6.1 and 805.6.2 where audible signs are remotely transmitted to hand-held receivers, or are user- or proximity-actuated.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>810.6.1 Entrances. Where signs identify a station or its entrance, at least one sign at each entrance shall comply with 703.2 and shall be placed in uniform locations to the maximum extent practicable. Where signs identify a station that has no defined entrance, at least one sign shall comply with 703.2 and shall be placed in a central location.</p>	<p>10.3.1(4) Where signs are provided at entrances to stations identifying the station or the entrance, or both, at least one sign at each entrance shall comply with 4.30.4 and 4.30.6. Such signs shall be placed in uniform locations at entrances within the transit system to the maximum extent practicable.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where the station has no defined entrance, but signage is provided, then the accessible signage shall be placed in a central location.</p>	<p>IBC E109.2.2.1 Tactile signs. Where signs are provided at entrances to stations identifying the station or the entrance, or both, at least one sign at each entrance shall be tactile. A minimum of one tactile sign identifying the specific station shall be provided on each platform or boarding area. Such signs shall be placed in uniform locations at entrances and on platforms or boarding areas within the transit system to the maximum extent practicable. Tactile signs shall comply with ICC A117.1.</p> <p>Exceptions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where the station has no defined entrance but signs are provided, the tactile signs shall be placed in a central location. 2. Signs are not required to be tactile where audible signs are remotely transmitted to hand-held receivers, or are user or proximity actuated. <p>ANSI 805.6.1 Entrances. Where signs identify a station or a station entrance, at least one sign with tactile characters complying with Section 703.3 shall be provided at each entrance.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>810.6.2 Routes and Destinations. Lists of stations, routes and destinations served by the station which are located on boarding areas, platforms, or mezzanines shall comply with 703.5. At least one tactile sign identifying the specific station and complying with 703.2 shall be provided on each platform or boarding area. Signs covered by this requirement shall, to the maximum extent practicable, be placed in uniform locations within the system.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where sign space is limited, characters shall not be required to exceed 3 inches (75 mm).</p>	<p>10.3.1(6) Lists of stations, routes, or destinations served by the station and located on boarding areas, platforms, or mezzanines shall comply with 4.30.1, 4.30.2, 4.30.3, and 4.30.5. A minimum of one sign identifying the specific station and complying with 4.30.4 and 4.30.6 shall be provided on each platform or boarding area. All signs referenced in this paragraph shall, to the maximum extent practicable, be placed in uniform locations within the transit system.</p>	<p>IBC E109.2.2.3 Informational signs. Lists of stations, routes and destinations served by the station which are located on boarding areas, platforms or mezzanines shall provide visual characters complying with ICC A117.1 Signs covered by this provision shall, to the maximum extent practicable, be placed in uniform locations within the transit system.</p> <p>ANSI 805.6.2 Routes and Destinations. Lists of stations, routes and destinations served by the station that are located on boarding areas, platforms, or mezzanines shall have visual characters complying with Section 703.2. A minimum of one tactile sign complying with Section 703.3 shall be provided on each platform or boarding area to identify the specific station.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where sign space is limited, characters shall not be required to exceed 3 inches (76 mm) in height.</p>
<p>810.6.3 Station Names. Stations covered by this section shall have identification signs complying with 703.5. Signs shall be clearly visible and within the sight lines of standing and sitting passengers from within the vehicle on both sides when not obstructed by another vehicle.</p>	<p>10.3.1(5) Stations covered by this section shall have identification signs complying with 4.30.1, 4.30.2, 4.30.3, and 4.30.5. Signs shall be placed at frequent intervals and shall be clearly visible from within the vehicle on both sides when not obstructed by another train. When station identification signs are placed</p>	<p>IBC E109.2.2.2 Identification signs. Stations covered by this section shall have identification signs containing visual characters complying with ICC A117.1. Signs shall be clearly visible and within the sightlines of a standing or sitting passenger from within the train on both sides when not obstructed by another train.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	close to vehicle windows (i.e., on the side opposite from boarding) each shall have the top of the highest letter or symbol below the top of the vehicle window and the bottom of the lowest letter or symbol above the horizontal mid-line of the vehicle window.	ANSI 805.6.3 Station Names. Stations covered by this section shall have identification signs with visual characters complying with Section 703.2. The signs shall be clearly visible and within the sight lines of a standing or sitting passenger from within the vehicle on both sides when not obstructed by another vehicle.
	10.3.1(11) Illumination levels in the areas where signage is located shall be uniform and shall minimize glare on signs. Lighting along circulation routes shall be of a type and configuration to provide uniform illumination.	
810.7 Public Address Systems. Where public address systems convey audible information to the public, the same or equivalent information shall be provided in a visual format.	10.3.1(14) Where public address systems are provided to convey information to the public in terminals, stations, or other fixed facilities, a means of conveying the same or equivalent information to persons with hearing loss or who are deaf shall be provided.	IBC E109.2.7 Public address systems. Where public address systems convey audible information to the public, the same or equivalent information shall be provided in a visual format.
		ANSI 805.7 Public Address Systems. Where public address systems convey audible information to the public, the same or equivalent information shall be provided in a visual format.
810.8 Clocks. Where clocks are provided for use by the public, the clock face shall be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals and digits shall contrast with the background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are installed overhead, numerals and digits shall comply with 703.5.	10.3.1(15) Where clocks are provided for use by the general public, the clock face shall be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals, and/or digits shall contrast with the background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are mounted overhead, numerals and/or digits shall comply with 4.30.3. Clocks shall be placed in uniform locations throughout the facility and system to the maximum extent	IBC E109.2.8 Clocks. Where clocks are provided for use by the general public, the clock face shall be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals and digits shall contrast with the background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are mounted overhead, numerals and digits shall comply with ICC A117.1, Section 703.4.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	practicable.	ANSI 805.8 Clocks. Where clocks are provided for use by the public, the clock face shall be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals and digits shall contrast with the background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are installed overhead, numerals and digits shall be visual characters complying with Section 703.2.
<p>810.9 Escalators. Where provided, escalators shall comply with the sections 6.1.3.5.6 and 6.1.3.6.5 of ASME A17.1 (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1) and shall have a clear width of 32 inches (815 mm) minimum.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Existing escalators in key stations shall not be required to comply with 810.9.</p>	<p>10.3.1(16) Where provided in below grade stations, escalators shall have a minimum clear width of 32 inches. At the top and bottom of each escalator run, at least two contiguous treads shall be level beyond the comb plate before the risers begin to form. All escalator treads shall be marked by a strip of clearly contrasting color, 2 inches in width, placed parallel to and on the nose of each step. The strip shall be of a material that is at least as slip resistant as the remainder of the tread. The edge of the tread shall be apparent from both ascending and descending directions.</p>	<p>ANSI 805.9 Escalators. Where provided, escalators shall have a 32-inch (815 mm) minimum clear width, and shall comply with Requirements 6.1.3.5.6 – Step Demarcations, and 6.1.3.6.5 – Flat Steps of ASME A17.1 listed in Section 105.2.5.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Existing escalators shall not be required to comply with Section 805.9.</p> <p>IBC 3005.2.2 Escalators. Where provided in below-grade transportation stations, escalators shall have a clear width of 32 inches (815 mm) minimum.</p> <p>Exception: The clear width is not required in existing facilities undergoing alterations.</p>
	<p>10.3.1(17) Where provided, elevators shall be glazed or have transparent panels to allow an unobstructed view both in to and out of the car. Elevators shall comply with 4.10.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Elevator cars with a clear floor area in which a 60 inch diameter circle can be inscribed may be substituted for the minimum car dimensions of 4.10, Fig. 22.</p>	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>810.10 Track Crossings. Where a circulation path serving boarding platforms crosses tracks, it shall comply with 402.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Openings for wheel flanges shall be permitted to be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum.</p>	<p>10.3.1(13) Where it is necessary to cross tracks to reach boarding platforms, the route surface shall be level and flush with the rail top at the outer edge and between the rails, except for a maximum 2-1/2 inch gap on the inner edge of each rail to permit passage of wheel flanges. Such crossings shall comply with 4.29.5. Where gap reduction is not practicable, an above-grade or below-grade accessible route shall be provided.</p>	<p>IBC E109.2.6 Track crossings. Where a circulation path serving boarding platforms crosses tracks, an accessible route complying with ICC A117.1 shall be provided.</p> <p>Exception: Openings for wheel flanges shall be permitted to be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum.</p>
		<p>ANSI 805.10 Track Crossings. Where a circulation path serving boarding platforms crosses tracks, it shall comply with Section 402.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Openings for wheel flanges shall be permitted to be 2 1/2 inch (64 mm) maximum.</p>
811 Storage	4.25 Storage.	ANSI 905 Storage Facilities
811.1 General. Storage shall comply with 811.	4.25.1 General. Fixed storage facilities such as cabinets, shelves, closets, and drawers required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.25.	ANSI 905.1 General. Accessible storage facilities shall comply with Section 905.
811.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided.	4.25.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space at least 30 in by 48 in (760 mm by 1220 mm) complying with 4.2.4 that allows either a forward or parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at accessible storage facilities.	ANSI 905.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 shall be provided.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>811.3 Height. Storage elements shall comply with at least one of the reach ranges specified in 308.</p>	<p>4.25.3 Height. Accessible storage spaces shall be within at least one of the reach ranges specified in 4.2.5 and 4.2.6 (see Fig. 5 and Fig. 6). Clothes rods or shelves shall be a maximum of 54 in (1370 mm) above the finish floor for a side approach. Where the distance from the wheelchair to the clothes rod or shelf exceeds 10 in (255 mm) (as in closets without accessible doors) the height and depth to the rod or shelf shall comply with Fig. 38(a) and Fig. 38(b).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 38(a) indicates that if the clear floor space allows a parallel approach by a person in a wheelchair and the distance between the wheelchair and the shelf exceeds 10 inches, the maximum high side reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) above the floor and the low side reach shall be a minimum of 9 inches (230 mm) above the floor. The shelves can be adjustable. The maximum distance from the user to the shelf shall be 21 inches (535 mm).</p> <p>Figure 38(b) indicates that if the clear floor space allows a parallel approach by a person in a wheelchair and the distance between the wheelchair and the clothes rod exceeds 10 inches, the maximum high side reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm). The maximum distance from the user to the clothes rod shall be 21 inches (535 mm).</p>	<p>ANSI 905.3 Height. Accessible storage elements shall comply with at least one of the reach ranges specified in Section 308.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>8.4 Card Catalogs and Magazine Displays. Minimum clear aisle space at card catalogs and magazine displays shall comply with Fig. 55. Maximum reach height shall comply with 4.2, with a height of 48 in (1220 mm) preferred irrespective of approach allowed.</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 55 indicates the lowest shelf of a card catalog shall be 18 inches (455 mm).</p>	
811.4 Operable Parts. Operable parts shall comply with 309.	4.25.4 Hardware. Hardware for accessible storage facilities shall comply with 4.27.4. Touch latches and U-shaped pulls are acceptable.	ANSI 905.4 Operable Parts. Operable parts of storage facilities shall comply with Section 309.
CHAPTER 9: BUILT-IN ELEMENTS		ANSI Chapter 9. Built-In Furnishings and Equipment
901 General		ANSI 901 General
901.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 9 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.		ANSI 901.1 Scope. Built-in furnishings and equipment required to be accessible by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 9.
902 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces	4.32 Fixed or Built-in Seating and Tables.	ANSI 902 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces
<p>902.1 General. Dining surfaces and work surfaces shall comply with 902.2 and 902.3.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Dining surfaces and work surfaces for children's use shall be permitted to comply with 902.4.</p>	<p>4.32.1 Minimum Number. Fixed or built-in seating or tables required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.32.2 through 4.32.4.</p> <p>See also Appendix 4.32.1 EXCEPTION</p>	<p>ANSI 902.1 General. Accessible dining surfaces and work surfaces shall comply with Section 902.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Dining surfaces and work surfaces primarily for children's use shall be permitted to comply with Section 902.4.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
See New ADAAG 206.2.4	5.3 Access Aisles. All accessible fixed tables shall be accessible by means of an access aisle at least 36 in (915 mm) clear between parallel edges of tables or between a wall and the table edges.	
902.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor space complying with 305 positioned for a forward approach shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with 306 shall be provided.	<p>4.32.2 Seating. If seating spaces for people in wheelchairs are provided at fixed tables or counters, clear floor space complying with 4.2.4 shall be provided. Such clear floor space shall not overlap knee space by more than 19 in (485 mm) (see Fig. 45).</p> <p>NOTE: Figure 45 illustrates wheelchair seating locations at tables, with two adjacent to each other on the long side of a rectangular table and two locations on opposing sides of a square table. The width of the seating locations is 30 inches, the length 48 inches, with 19 inches of the length located under the table surface.</p>	ANSI 902.2 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for a forward approach, shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided.
	4.32.3 Knee Clearances. If seating for people in wheelchairs is provided at tables or counters, knee spaces at least 27 in (685 mm) high, 30 in (760 mm) wide, and 19 in (485 mm) deep shall be provided (see Fig. 45).	
902.3 Height. The tops of dining surfaces and work surfaces shall be 28 inches (710 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.	4.32.4 Height of Tables or Counters. The tops of accessible tables and counters shall be from 28 in to 34 in (710 mm to 865 mm) above the finish floor or ground.	ANSI 902.3 Height. The tops of dining surfaces and work surfaces shall be 28 inches (710 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum in height above the floor.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	5.2 Counters and Bars. Where food or drink is served at counters exceeding 34 in (865 mm) in height for consumption by customers seated on stools or standing at the counter, a portion of the main counter which is 60 in (1525 mm) in length minimum shall be provided in compliance with 4.32 or service shall be available at accessible tables within the same area.	
902.4 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces for Children's Use. Accessible dining surfaces and work surfaces for children's use shall comply with 902.4. EXCEPTION: Dining surfaces and work surfaces that are used primarily by children 5 years and younger shall not be required to comply with 902.4 where a clear floor or ground space complying with 305 positioned for a parallel approach is provided.	See Appendix 4.32.5 EXCEPTIONS	ANSI 902.4 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces for Children's Use. Accessible dining surfaces and work surfaces primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 902.4. EXCEPTION: Dining surfaces and work surfaces used primarily by children ages 5 and younger shall not be required to comply with Section 902.4 where a clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for a parallel approach, is provided.
902.4.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor space complying with 305 positioned for forward approach shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with 306 shall be provided, except that knee clearance 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground shall be permitted.		ANSI 902.4.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for forward approach, shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. EXCEPTION: Knee clearance 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the floor shall be permitted.
902.4.2 Height. The tops of tables and counters shall be 26 inches (660 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.		ANSI 902.4.2 Height. The tops of tables and counters shall be 26 inches (660 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the floor.
903 Benches		ANSI 903 Benches

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
903.1 General. Benches shall comply with 903.	See 4.35.4 See also Appendix 4.37	ANSI 903.1 General. Accessible benches shall comply with Section 903.
903.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space. Clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided and shall be positioned at the end of the bench seat and parallel to the short axis of the bench.		ANSI 903.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for parallel approach to an end of the bench seat, shall be provided.
903.3 Size. Benches shall have seats that are 42 inches (1065 mm) long minimum and 20 inches (510 mm) deep minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) deep maximum.		ANSI 903.3 Size. Benches shall have seats 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in length, and 20 inches (510 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum in depth.
903.4 Back Support. The bench shall provide for back support or shall be affixed to a wall. Back support shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) long minimum and shall extend from a point 2 inches (51 mm) maximum above the seat surface to a point 18 inches (455 mm) minimum above the seat surface. Back support shall be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum from the rear edge of the seat measured horizontally.		ANSI 903.4 Back Support. The bench shall provide for back support or shall be affixed to a wall. Back support shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in length and shall extend from a point 2 inches (51 mm) maximum above the seat surface to a point 18 inches (455 mm) minimum above the seat surface. Back support shall be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum from the rear edge of the seat measured horizontally.
903.5 Height. The top of the bench seat surface shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.		ANSI 903.5 Height. The top of the bench seat shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat.
903.6 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used when a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener, mounting device, or supporting structure.		ANSI 903.6 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
903.7 Wet Locations. Where installed in wet locations, the surface of the seat shall be slip resistant and shall not accumulate water.		ANSI 903.7 Wet Locations. Where provided in wet locations the surface of the seat shall be slip resistant and shall not accumulate water.
904 Check-Out Aisles and Sales and Service Counters		ANSI 904 Sales and Service Counters
904.1 General. Check-out aisles and sales and service counters shall comply with the applicable requirements of 904.		ANSI 904.1 General. Accessible sales and service counters shall comply with Section 904 as applicable.
904.2 Approach. All portions of counters required to comply with 904 shall be located adjacent to a walking surface complying with 403.		ANSI 904.2 Approach. All portions of counters required to be accessible shall be located adjacent to a walking surface complying with Section 403.
904.3 Check-Out Aisles. Check-out aisles shall comply with 904.3.	7.3(2) Clear aisle width for accessible check-out aisles shall comply with 4.2.1 and maximum adjoining counter height shall not exceed 38 in (965 mm) above the finish floor. The top of the lip shall not exceed 40 in (1015 mm) above the finish floor.	ANSI 904.4 Checkout Aisles. Checkout aisles shall comply with Section 904.4.
904.3.1 Aisle. Aisles shall comply with 403.		ANSI 904.4.1 Aisle. Aisles shall comply with Section 403.
904.3.2 Counter. The counter surface height shall be 38 inches (965 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. The top of the counter edge protection shall be 2 inches (51 mm) maximum above the top of the counter surface on the aisle side of the check-out counter.		ANSI 904.4.2 Counters. The checkout counter surface shall be 38 inches (965 mm) maximum in height above the floor. The top of the counter edge protection shall be 2 inches (51 mm) maximum above the top of the counter surface on the aisle side of the checkout counter.
904.3.3 Check Writing Surfaces. Where provided, check writing surfaces shall comply with 902.3.		ANSI 904.4.3 Check Writing Surfaces. Where provided, check writing surfaces shall comply with Section 902.3.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>904.4 Sales and Service Counters. Sales counters and service counters shall comply with 904.4.1 or 904.4.2. The accessible portion of the counter top shall extend the same depth as the sales or service counter top.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In alterations, when the provision of a counter complying with 904.4 would result in a reduction of the number of existing counters at work stations or a reduction of the number of existing mail boxes, the counter shall be permitted to have a portion which is 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum complying with 904.4.1 provided that the required clear floor or ground space is centered on the accessible length of the counter.</p>	<p>7.2(1) In areas used for transactions where counters have cash registers and are provided for sales or distribution of goods or services to the public, at least one of each type shall have a portion of the counter which is at least 36 in (915mm) in length with a maximum height of 36 in (915 mm) above the finish floor. It shall be on an accessible route complying with 4.3. Such counters shall include, but are not limited to, counters in retail stores, and distribution centers. The accessible counters must be dispersed throughout the building or facility. In alterations where it is technically infeasible to provide an accessible counter, an auxiliary counter meeting these requirements may be provided.</p>	<p>ANSI 904.3 Sales and Service Counters. Sales and service counters shall comply with Section 904.3.1 or 904.3.2. The accessible portion of the countertop shall extend the same depth as the sales and service countertop.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	<p>7.2(2) In areas used for transactions that may not have a cash register but at which goods or services are sold or distributed including, but not limited to, ticketing counters, teller stations, registration counters in transient lodging facilities, information counters, box office counters and library check-out areas, either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) a portion of the main counter which is a minimum of 36 in (915 mm) in length shall be provided with a maximum height of 36 in (915 mm); or (ii) an auxiliary counter with a maximum height of 36 in (915 mm) in close proximity to the main counter shall be provided; or (iii) equivalent facilitation shall be provided (e.g., at a hotel registration counter, equivalent facilitation might consist of: (1) provision of a folding shelf attached to the main counter on which an individual with a disability can write, and (2) use of the space on the side of the counter or at the concierge desk, for handing materials back and forth). <p>All accessible sales and service counters shall be on an accessible route complying with 4.3.</p>	
<p>904.4.1 Parallel Approach. A portion of the counter surface that is 36 inches (915 mm) long minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) high maximum above the finish floor shall be provided. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be positioned for a parallel approach adjacent to the 36 inch (915 mm) minimum length of counter.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where the provided counter surface is less than 36 inches (915 mm) long, the entire counter surface shall be 36 inches (915 mm) high maximum above the finish floor.</p>		<p>ANSI 904.3.1 Parallel Approach. A portion of the counter surface 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum in height above the floor shall be provided. Where the counter surface is less than 36 inches (915 mm) in length, the entire counter surface shall be 36 inches (915 mm) maximum in height above the floor. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for a parallel approach adjacent to the accessible counter, shall be provided.</p>

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
904.4.2 Forward Approach. A portion of the counter surface that is 30 inches (760 mm) long minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) high maximum shall be provided. Knee and toe space complying with 306 shall be provided under the counter. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be positioned for a forward approach to the counter.		ANSI 904.3.2 Forward Approach. A portion of the counter surface 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum in height above the floor shall be provided. A clear floor space complying with Section 305, positioned for a forward approach to the accessible counter, shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided under the accessible counter.
904.5 Food Service Lines. Counters in food service lines shall comply with 904.5.		ANSI 904.5 Food Service Lines. Counters in food service lines shall comply with Section 904.5.
904.5.1 Self-Service Shelves and Dispensing Devices. Self-service shelves and dispensing devices for tableware, dishware, condiments, food and beverages shall comply with 308.	5.6 Tableware and Condiment Areas. Self-service shelves and dispensing devices for tableware, dishware, condiments, food and beverages shall be installed to comply with 4.2 (see Fig. 54). NOTE: Figure 54 indicates the maximum height is 54 inches (1370 mm).	ANSI 904.5.1 Self-Service Shelves and Dispensing Devices. Self-service shelves and dispensing devices for tableware, dishware, condiments, food and beverages shall comply with Section 308.
904.5.2 Tray Slides. The tops of tray slides shall be 28 inches (710 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.		ANSI 904.5.2 Tray Slides. The tops of tray slides shall be 28 inches (710 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor.
904.6 Security Glazing. Where counters or teller windows have security glazing to separate personnel from the public, a method to facilitate voice communication shall be provided. Telephone handset devices, if provided, shall comply with 704.3.	7.2(3) In public facilities where counters or teller windows have solid partitions or security glazing to separate personnel from the public, at least one of each type shall provide a method to facilitate voice communication. Such methods may include, but are not limited to, grilles, slats, talk-through baffles, intercoms, or telephone handset devices. The method of communication shall be accessible	ANSI 904.6 Security Glazing. Where counters or teller windows have security glazing to separate personnel from the public, a method to facilitate voice communication shall be provided. Telephone handset devices, if provided, shall comply with Section 704.3.

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
	to both individuals who use wheelchairs and individuals who have difficulty bending or stooping. If provided for public use, at least one telephone communication device shall be equipped with volume controls complying with 4.31.5. Hand-operable communications devices, if provided, shall comply with 4.27.	
CHAPTER 10: RECREATION FACILITIES		
1001 General		
1001.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 10 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.		
1002 Amusement Rides	See Appendix 15.1	
1002.1 General. Amusement rides shall comply with 1002.		
1002.2 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes serving amusement rides shall comply with Chapter 4. EXCEPTIONS: 1. In load or unload areas and on amusement rides, where compliance with 405.2 is not structurally or operationally feasible, ramp slope shall be permitted to be 1:8 maximum. 2. In load or unload areas and on amusement rides, handrails provided along walking surfaces complying with 403 and required on ramps complying with 405 shall not be required to comply with 505 where compliance is not structurally or operationally feasible.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
1002.3 Load and Unload Areas. A turning space complying with 304.2 and 304.3 shall be provided in load and unload areas.		
1002.4 Wheelchair Spaces in Amusement Rides. Wheelchair spaces in amusement rides shall comply with 1002.4.		
1002.4.1 Floor or Ground Surface. The floor or ground surface of wheelchair spaces shall be stable and firm.		
1002.4.2 Slope. The floor or ground surface of wheelchair spaces shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48 when in the load and unload position.		
1002.4.3 Gaps. Floors of amusement rides with wheelchair spaces and floors of load and unload areas shall be coordinated so that, when amusement rides are at rest in the load and unload position, the vertical difference between the floors shall be within plus or minus 5/8 inches (16 mm) and the horizontal gap shall be 3 inches (75 mm) maximum under normal passenger load conditions. EXCEPTION: Where compliance is not operationally or structurally feasible, ramps, bridge plates, or similar devices complying with the applicable requirements of 36 CFR 1192.83(c) shall be provided.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1002.4.4 Clearances. Clearances for wheelchair spaces shall comply with 1002.4.4.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where provided, securement devices shall be permitted to overlap required clearances. 2. Wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be mechanically or manually repositioned. 3. Wheelchair spaces shall not be required to comply with 307.4. 		
<p>1002.4.4.1 Width and Length. Wheelchair spaces shall provide a clear width of 30 inches (760 mm) minimum and a clear length of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum measured to 9 inches (230 mm) minimum above the floor surface.</p>		
<p>1002.4.4.2 Side Entry. Where wheelchair spaces are entered only from the side, amusement rides shall be designed to permit sufficient maneuvering clearance for individuals using a wheelchair or mobility aid to enter and exit the ride.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1002.4.4.3 Permitted Protrusions in Wheelchair Spaces. Objects are permitted to protrude a distance of 6 inches (150 mm) maximum along the front of the wheelchair space, where located 9 inches (230 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor or ground surface of the wheelchair space. Objects are permitted to protrude a distance of 25 inches (635 mm) maximum along the front of the wheelchair space, where located more than 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor or ground surface of the wheelchair space.</p>		
<p>1002.4.5 Ride Entry. Openings providing entry to wheelchair spaces on amusement rides shall be 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear.</p>		
<p>1002.4.6 Approach. One side of the wheelchair space shall adjoin an accessible route when in the load and unload position.</p>		
<p>1002.4.7 Companion Seats. Where the interior width of the amusement ride is greater than 53 inches (1345 mm), seating is provided for more than one rider, and the wheelchair is not required to be centered within the amusement ride, a companion seat shall be provided for each wheelchair space.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1002.4.7.1 Shoulder-to-Shoulder Seating. Where an amusement ride provides shoulder-to-shoulder seating, companion seats shall be shoulder-to-shoulder with the adjacent wheelchair space.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where shoulder-to-shoulder companion seating is not operationally or structurally feasible, compliance with this requirement shall be required to the maximum extent practicable.</p>		
<p>1002.5 Amusement Ride Seats Designed for Transfer. Amusement ride seats designed for transfer shall comply with 1002.5 when positioned for loading and unloading.</p>		
<p>1002.5.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided in the load and unload area adjacent to the amusement ride seats designed for transfer.</p>		
<p>1002.5.2 Transfer Height. The height of amusement ride seats designed for transfer shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum measured from the surface of the load and unload area.</p>		
<p>1002.5.3 Transfer Entry. Where openings are provided for transfer to amusement ride seats, the openings shall provide clearance for transfer from a wheelchair or mobility aid to the amusement ride seat.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
1002.5.4 Wheelchair Storage Space. Wheelchair storage spaces complying with 305 shall be provided in or adjacent to unload areas for each required amusement ride seat designed for transfer and shall not overlap any required means of egress or accessible route.		
1002.6 Transfer Devices for Use with Amusement Rides. Transfer devices for use with amusement rides shall comply with 1002.6 when positioned for loading and unloading.		
1002.6.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided in the load and unload area adjacent to the transfer device.		
1002.6.2 Transfer Height. The height of transfer device seats shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum measured from the load and unload surface.		
1002.6.3 Wheelchair Storage Space. Wheelchair storage spaces complying with 305 shall be provided in or adjacent to unload areas for each required transfer device and shall not overlap any required means of egress or accessible route.		
1003 Recreational Boating Facilities	See Appendix 15.2	
1003.1 General. Recreational boating facilities shall comply with 1003.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1003.2 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes serving recreational boating facilities, including gangways and floating piers, shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by the exceptions in 1003.2.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1003.2.1 Boat Slips. Accessible routes serving boat slips shall be permitted to use the exceptions in 1003.2.1.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where an existing gangway or series of gangways is replaced or altered, an increase in the length of the gangway shall not be required to comply with 1003.2 unless required by 202.4. 2. Gangways shall not be required to comply with the maximum rise specified in 405.6. 3. Where the total length of a gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is 80 feet (24 m) minimum, gangways shall not be required to comply with 405.2. 4. Where facilities contain fewer than 25 boat slips and the total length of the gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is 30 feet (9145 mm) minimum, gangways shall not be required to comply with 405.2. 5. Where gangways connect to transition plates, landings specified by 405.7 shall not be required. 6. Where gangways and transition plates connect and are required to have handrails, handrail extensions shall not be required. Where handrail extensions are provided on gangways or transition plates, the handrail extensions shall not be required to be parallel with the ground or floor surface. 7. The cross slope specified in 403.3 and 405.3 for gangways, transition plates, and floating piers that are part of accessible routes shall be measured in the static position. 8. Changes in level complying with 303.3 and 303.4 shall be permitted on the surfaces of gangways and boat launch ramps. 		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1003.2.2 Boarding Piers at Boat Launch Ramps. Accessible routes serving boarding piers at boat launch ramps shall be permitted to use the exceptions in 1003.2.2.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Accessible routes serving floating boarding piers shall be permitted to use Exceptions 1, 2, 5, 6, 7 and 8 in 1003.2.1. 2. Where the total length of the gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is 30 feet (9145 mm) minimum, gangways shall not be required to comply with 405.2. 3. Where the accessible route serving a floating boarding pier or skid pier is located within a boat launch ramp, the portion of the accessible route located within the boat launch ramp shall not be required to comply with 405. 		
<p>1003.3 Clearances. Clearances at boat slips and on boarding piers at boat launch ramps shall comply with 1003.3.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1003.3.1 Boat Slip Clearance. Boat slips shall provide clear pier space 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum and at least as long as the boat slips. Each 10 feet (3050 mm) maximum of linear pier edge serving boat slips shall contain at least one continuous clear opening 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Clear pier space shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum, provided that multiple 36 inch (915 mm) wide segments are separated by segments that are 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) long minimum. 2. Edge protection shall be permitted at the continuous clear openings, provided that it is 4 inches (100 mm) high maximum and 2 inches (51 mm) wide maximum. 3. In existing piers, clear pier space shall be permitted to be located perpendicular to the boat slip and shall extend the width of the boat slip, where the facility has at least one boat slip complying with 1003.3, and further compliance with 1003.3 would result in a reduction in the number of boat slips available or result in a reduction of the widths of existing slips. 		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1003.3.2 Boarding Pier Clearances. Boarding piers at boat launch ramps shall provide clear pier space 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum and shall extend the full length of the boarding pier. Every 10 feet (3050 mm) maximum of linear pier edge shall contain at least one continuous clear opening 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. The clear pier space shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided that multiple 36 inch (915 mm) wide segments are separated by segments that are 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) long minimum.</p> <p>2. Edge protection shall be permitted at the continuous clear openings provided that it is 4 inches (100 mm) high maximum and 2 inches (51 mm) wide maximum.</p>		
1004 Exercise Machines and Equipment	See Appendix 15.7	
<p>1004.1 Clear Floor Space. Exercise machines and equipment shall have a clear floor space complying with 305 positioned for transfer or for use by an individual seated in a wheelchair. Clear floor or ground spaces required at exercise machines and equipment shall be permitted to overlap.</p>		
1005 Fishing Piers and Platforms	See Appendix 15.3	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1005.1 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes serving fishing piers and platforms, including gangways and floating piers, shall comply with Chapter 4.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. Accessible routes serving floating fishing piers and platforms shall be permitted to use Exceptions 1, 2, 5, 6, 7 and 8 in 1003.2.1.</p> <p>2. Where the total length of the gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is 30 feet (9145 mm) minimum, gangways shall not be required to comply with 405.2.</p>		
<p>1005.2 Railings. Where provided, railings, guards, or handrails shall comply with 1005.2.</p>		
<p>1005.2.1 Height. At least 25 percent of the railings, guards, or handrails shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the ground or deck surface.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Where a guard complying with sections 1003.2.12.1 and 1003.2.12.2 of the International Building Code (2000 edition) or sections 1012.2 and 1012.3 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1) is provided, the guard shall not be required to comply with 1005.2.1.</p>		
<p>1005.2.1.1 Dispersion. Railings, guards, or handrails required to comply with 1005.2.1 shall be dispersed throughout the fishing pier or platform.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
1005.3 Edge Protection. Where railings, guards, or handrails complying with 1005.2 are provided, edge protection complying with 1005.3.1 or 1005.3.2 shall be provided.		
1005.3.1 Curb or Barrier. Curbs or barriers shall extend 2 inches (51 mm) minimum above the surface of the fishing pier or platform.		
1005.3.2 Extended Ground or Deck Surface. The ground or deck surface shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of the railing. Toe clearance shall be provided and shall be 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum and 9 inches (230 mm) minimum above the ground or deck surface beyond the railing.		
1005.4 Clear Floor or Ground Space. At each location where there are railings, guards, or handrails complying with 1005.2.1, a clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided. Where there are no railings, guards, or handrails, at least one clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided on the fishing pier or platform.		
1005.5 Turning Space. At least one turning space complying with 304.3 shall be provided on fishing piers and platforms.		
1006 Golf Facilities	See Appendix 15.4	
1006.1 General. Golf facilities shall comply with 1006.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1006.2 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes serving teeing grounds, practice teeing grounds, putting greens, practice putting greens, teeing stations at driving ranges, course weather shelters, golf car rental areas, bag drop areas, and course toilet rooms shall comply with Chapter 4 and shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) wide minimum. Where handrails are provided, accessible routes shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Handrails shall not be required on golf courses. Where handrails are provided on golf courses, the handrails shall not be required to comply with 505.</p>		
<p>1006.3 Golf Car Passages. Golf car passages shall comply with 1006.3.</p>		
<p>1006.3.1 Clear Width. The clear width of golf car passages shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.</p>		
<p>1006.3.2 Barriers. Where curbs or other constructed barriers prevent golf cars from entering a fairway, openings 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum shall be provided at intervals not to exceed 75 yards (69 m).</p>		
<p>1006.4 Weather Shelters. A clear floor or ground space 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum shall be provided within weather shelters.</p>		
<p>1007 Miniature Golf Facilities</p>	See Appendix 15.5	

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
1007.1 General. Miniature golf facilities shall comply with 1007.		
1007.2 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes serving holes on miniature golf courses shall comply with Chapter 4. Accessible routes located on playing surfaces of miniature golf holes shall be permitted to use the exceptions in 1007.2. EXCEPTIONS: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Playing surfaces shall not be required to comply with 302.2. 2. Where accessible routes intersect playing surfaces of holes, a 1 inch (25 mm) maximum curb shall be permitted for a width of 32 inches (815 mm) minimum. 3. A slope not steeper than 1:4 for a 4 inch (100 mm) maximum rise shall be permitted. 4. Ramp landing slopes specified by 405.7.1 shall be permitted to be 1:20 maximum. 5. Ramp landing length specified by 405.7.3 shall be permitted to be 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum. 6. Ramp landing size specified by 405.7.4 shall be permitted to be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum. 7. Handrails shall not be required on holes. Where handrails are provided on holes, the handrails shall not be required to comply with 505. 		
1007.3 Miniature Golf Holes. Miniature golf holes shall comply with 1007.3.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
1007.3.1 Start of Play. A clear floor or ground space 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum with slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided at the start of play.		
1007.3.2 Golf Club Reach Range Area. All areas within holes where golf balls rest shall be within 36 inches (915 mm) maximum of a clear floor or ground space 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum having a running slope not steeper than 1:20. The clear floor or ground space shall be served by an accessible route.		
1008 Play Areas	See Appendix 15.6	
1008.1 General. Play areas shall comply with 1008.		
1008.2 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes serving play areas shall comply with Chapter 4 and 1008.2 and shall be permitted to use the exceptions in 1008.2.1 through 1008.2.3. Where accessible routes serve ground level play components, the vertical clearance shall be 80 inches high (2030 mm) minimum.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1008.2.1 Ground Level and Elevated Play Components. Accessible routes serving ground level play components and elevated play components shall be permitted to use the exceptions in 1008.2.1.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. Transfer systems complying with 1008.3 shall be permitted to connect elevated play components except where 20 or more elevated play components are provided no more than 25 percent of the elevated play components shall be permitted to be connected by transfer systems.</p> <p>2. Where transfer systems are provided, an elevated play component shall be permitted to connect to another elevated play component as part of an accessible route.</p>		
<p>1008.2.2 Soft Contained Play Structures. Accessible routes serving soft contained play structures shall be permitted to use the exception in 1008.2.2.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Transfer systems complying with 1008.3 shall be permitted to be used as part of an accessible route.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1008.2.3 Water Play Components. Accessible routes serving water play components shall be permitted to use the exceptions in 1008.2.3.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where the surface of the accessible route, clear floor or ground spaces, or turning spaces serving water play components is submerged, compliance with 302, 403.3, 405.2, 405.3, and 1008.2.6 shall not be required. 2. Transfer systems complying with 1008.3 shall be permitted to connect elevated play components in water. 		
<p>1008.2.4 Clear Width. Accessible routes connecting play components shall provide a clear width complying with 1008.2.4.</p>		
<p>1008.2.4.1 Ground Level. At ground level, the clear width of accessible routes shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In play areas less than 1000 square feet (93 m²), the clear width of accessible routes shall be permitted to be 44 inches (1120 mm) minimum, if at least one turning space complying with 304.3 is provided where the restricted accessible route exceeds 30 feet (9145 mm) in length. 2. The clear width of accessible routes shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum for a distance of 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum provided that multiple reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) long minimum. 		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1008.2.4.2 Elevated. The clear width of accessible routes connecting elevated play components shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <p>1. The clear width of accessible routes connecting elevated play components shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a distance of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided that reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum.</p> <p>2. The clear width of transfer systems connecting elevated play components shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.</p>		
<p>1008.2.5 Ramps. Within play areas, ramps connecting ground level play components and ramps connecting elevated play components shall comply with 1008.2.5.</p>		
<p>1008.2.5.1 Ground Level. Ramp runs connecting ground level play components shall have a running slope not steeper than 1:16.</p>		
<p>1008.2.5.2 Elevated. The rise for any ramp run connecting elevated play components shall be 12 inches (305 mm) maximum.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1008.2.5.3 Handrails. Where required on ramps serving play components, the handrails shall comply with 505 except as modified by 1008.2.5.3.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Handrails shall not be required on ramps located within ground level use zones. 2. Handrail extensions shall not be required. 		
<p>1008.2.5.3.1 Handrail Gripping Surfaces. Handrail gripping surfaces with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of 0.95 inch (24 mm) minimum and 1.55 inches (39 mm) maximum. Where the shape of the gripping surface is non-circular, the handrail shall provide an equivalent gripping surface.</p>		
<p>1008.2.5.3.2 Handrail Height. The top of handrail gripping surfaces shall be 20 inches (510 mm) minimum and 28 inches (710 mm) maximum above the ramp surface.</p>		
<p>1008.2.6 Ground Surfaces. Ground surfaces on accessible routes, clear floor or ground spaces, and turning spaces shall comply with 1008.2.6.</p>		
<p>1008.2.6.1 Accessibility. Ground surfaces shall comply with ASTM F 1951 (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1). Ground surfaces shall be inspected and maintained regularly and frequently to ensure continued compliance with ASTM F 1951.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
1008.2.6.2 Use Zones. Ground surfaces located within use zones shall comply with ASTM F 1292 (1999 edition or 2004 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1).		
1008.3 Transfer Systems. Where transfer systems are provided to connect to elevated play components, transfer systems shall comply with 1008.3.		
1008.3.1 Transfer Platforms. Transfer platforms shall be provided where transfer is intended from wheelchairs or other mobility aids. Transfer platforms shall comply with 1008.3.1.		
1008.3.1.1 Size. Transfer platforms shall have level surfaces 14 inches (355 mm) deep minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) wide minimum.		
1008.3.1.2 Height. The height of transfer platforms shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum measured to the top of the surface from the ground or floor surface.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
1008.3.1.3 Transfer Space. A transfer space complying with 305.2 and 305.3 shall be provided adjacent to the transfer platform. The 48 inch (1220 mm) long minimum dimension of the transfer space shall be centered on and parallel to the 24 inch (610 mm) long minimum side of the transfer platform. The side of the transfer platform serving the transfer space shall be unobstructed.		
1008.3.1.4 Transfer Supports. At least one means of support for transferring shall be provided.		
1008.3.2 Transfer Steps. Transfer steps shall be provided where movement is intended from transfer platforms to levels with elevated play components required to be on accessible routes. Transfer steps shall comply with 1008.3.2.		
1008.3.2.1 Size. Transfer steps shall have level surfaces 14 inches (355 mm) deep minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) wide minimum.		
1008.3.2.2 Height. Each transfer step shall be 8 inches (205 mm) high maximum.		
1008.3.2.3 Transfer Supports. At least one means of support for transferring shall be provided.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
1008.4 Play Components. Ground level play components on accessible routes and elevated play components connected by ramps shall comply with 1008.4.		
1008.4.1 Turning Space. At least one turning space complying with 304 shall be provided on the same level as play components. Where swings are provided, the turning space shall be located immediately adjacent to the swing.		
1008.4.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space. Clear floor or ground space complying with 305.2 and 305.3 shall be provided at play components.		
1008.4.3 Play Tables. Where play tables are provided, knee clearance 24 inches (610 mm) high minimum, 17 inches deep (430 mm) minimum, and 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum shall be provided. The tops of rims, curbs, or other obstructions shall be 31 inches (785 mm) high maximum. EXCEPTION: Play tables designed and constructed primarily for children 5 years and younger shall not be required to provide knee clearance where the clear floor or ground space required by 1008.4.2 is arranged for a parallel approach.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
1008.4.4 Entry Points and Seats. Where play components require transfer to entry points or seats, the entry points or seats shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the clear floor or ground space. EXCEPTION: Entry points of slides shall not be required to comply with 1008.4.4.		
1008.4.5 Transfer Supports. Where play components require transfer to entry points or seats, at least one means of support for transferring shall be provided.		
1009 Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, and Spas	See Appendix 15.8	
1009.1 General. Where provided, pool lifts, sloped entries, transfer walls, transfer systems, and pool stairs shall comply with 1009.		
1009.2 Pool Lifts. Pool lifts shall comply with 1009.2.		
1009.2.1 Pool Lift Location. Pool lifts shall be located where the water level does not exceed 48 inches (1220 mm). EXCEPTIONS: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Where the entire pool depth is greater than 48 inches (1220 mm), compliance with 1009.2.1 shall not be required. Where multiple pool lift locations are provided, no more than one pool lift shall be required to be located in an area where the water level is 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum. 		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
1009.2.2 Seat Location. In the raised position, the centerline of the seat shall be located over the deck and 16 inches (405 mm) minimum from the edge of the pool. The deck surface between the centerline of the seat and the pool edge shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48.		
1009.2.3 Clear Deck Space. On the side of the seat opposite the water, a clear deck space shall be provided parallel with the seat. The space shall be 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum and shall extend forward 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum from a line located 12 inches (305 mm) behind the rear edge of the seat. The clear deck space shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48.		
1009.2.4 Seat Height. The height of the lift seat shall be designed to allow a stop at 16 inches (405 mm) minimum to 19 inches (485 mm) maximum measured from the deck to the top of the seat surface when in the raised (load) position.		
1009.2.5 Seat Width. The seat shall be 16 inches (405 mm) wide minimum.		
1009.2.6 Footrests and Armrests. Footrests shall be provided and shall move with the seat. If provided, the armrest positioned opposite the water shall be removable or shall fold clear of the seat when the seat is in the raised (load) position. EXCEPTION: Footrests shall not be required on pool lifts provided in spas.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
1009.2.7 Operation. The lift shall be capable of unassisted operation from both the deck and water levels. Controls and operating mechanisms shall be unobstructed when the lift is in use and shall comply with 309.4.		
1009.2.8 Submerged Depth. The lift shall be designed so that the seat will submerge to a water depth of 18 inches (455 mm) minimum below the stationary water level.		
1009.2.9 Lifting Capacity. Single person pool lifts shall have a weight capacity of 300 pounds. (136 kg) minimum and be capable of sustaining a static load of at least one and a half times the rated load.		
1009.3 Sloped Entries. Sloped entries shall comply with 1009.3.		
1009.3.1 Sloped Entries. Sloped entries shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified in 1109.3.1 through 1109.3.3. EXCEPTION: Where sloped entries are provided, the surfaces shall not be required to be slip resistant.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1009.3.2 Submerged Depth. Sloped entries shall extend to a depth of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum below the stationary water level. Where landings are required by 405.7, at least one landing shall be located 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum below the stationary water level.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: In wading pools, the sloped entry and landings, if provided, shall extend to the deepest part of the wading pool.</p>		
<p>1009.3.3 Handrails. At least two handrails complying with 505 shall be provided on the sloped entry. The clear width between required handrails shall be 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 38 inches (965 mm) maximum.</p> <p>EXCEPTIONS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Handrail extensions specified by 505.10.1 shall not be required at the bottom landing serving a sloped entry. 2. Where a sloped entry is provided for wave action pools, leisure rivers, sand bottom pools, and other pools where user access is limited to one area, the handrails shall not be required to comply with the clear width requirements of 1009.3.3. 3. Sloped entries in wading pools shall not be required to provide handrails complying with 1009.3.3. If provided, handrails on sloped entries in wading pools shall not be required to comply with 505. 		
<p>1009.4 Transfer Walls. Transfer walls shall comply with 1009.4.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1009.4.1 Clear Deck Space. A clear deck space of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum with a slope not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided at the base of the transfer wall. Where one grab bar is provided, the clear deck space shall be centered on the grab bar. Where two grab bars are provided, the clear deck space shall be centered on the clearance between the grab bars.</p>		
<p>1009.4.2 Height. The height of the transfer wall shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum measured from the deck.</p>		
<p>1009.4.3 Wall Depth and Length. The depth of the transfer wall shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum. The length of the transfer wall shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum and shall be centered on the clear deck space.</p>		
<p>1009.4.4 Surface. Surfaces of transfer walls shall not be sharp and shall have rounded edges.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1009.4.5 Grab Bars. At least one grab bar complying with 609 shall be provided on the transfer wall. Grab bars shall be perpendicular to the pool wall and shall extend the full depth of the transfer wall. The top of the gripping surface shall be 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above transfer walls. Where one grab bar is provided, clearance shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum on both sides of the grab bar. Where two grab bars are provided, clearance between grab bars shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Grab bars on transfer walls shall not be required to comply with 609.4.</p>		
<p>1009.5 Transfer Systems. Transfer systems shall comply with 1009.5.</p>		
<p>1009.5.1 Transfer Platform. A transfer platform shall be provided at the head of each transfer system. Transfer platforms shall provide 19 inches (485 mm) minimum clear depth and 24 inches (610 mm) minimum clear width.</p>		
<p>1009.5.2 Transfer Space. A transfer space of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum with a slope not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided at the base of the transfer platform surface and shall be centered along a 24 inch (610 mm) minimum side of the transfer platform. The side of the transfer platform serving the transfer space shall be unobstructed.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
1009.5.3 Height. The height of the transfer platform shall comply with 1009.4.2.		
1009.5.4 Transfer Steps. Transfer step height shall be 8 inches (205 mm) maximum. The surface of the bottom tread shall extend to a water depth of 18 inches (455 mm) minimum below the stationary water level.		
1009.5.5 Surface. The surface of the transfer system shall not be sharp and shall have rounded edges.		
1009.5.6 Size. Each transfer step shall have a tread clear depth of 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 17 inches (430 mm) maximum and shall have a tread clear width of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
<p>1009.5.7 Grab Bars. At least one grab bar on each transfer step and the transfer platform or a continuous grab bar serving each transfer step and the transfer platform shall be provided. Where a grab bar is provided on each step, the tops of gripping surfaces shall be 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above each step and transfer platform. Where a continuous grab bar is provided, the top of the gripping surface shall be 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the step nosing and transfer platform. Grab bars shall comply with 609 and be located on at least one side of the transfer system. The grab bar located at the transfer platform shall not obstruct transfer.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Grab bars on transfer systems shall not be required to comply with 609.4.</p>		
<p>1009.6 Pool Stairs. Pool stairs shall comply with 1009.6.</p>		
<p>1009.6.1 Pool Stairs. Pool stairs shall comply with 504.</p> <p>EXCEPTION: Pool step riser heights shall not be required to be 4 inches (100 mm) high minimum and 7 inches (180 mm) high maximum provided that riser heights are uniform.</p>		
<p>1009.6.2 Handrails. The width between handrails shall be 20 inches (510 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum. Handrail extensions required by 505.10.3 shall not be required on pool stairs.</p>		

New ADAAG	DOJ Standards for Accessible Design	International Building Code
1010 Shooting Facilities with Firing Positions	See Appendix 15.7.4	
1010.1 Turning Space. A circular turning space 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter minimum with slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided at shooting facilities with firing positions.		

APPENDIX

This appendix contains requirements that have been added to the Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG) by the U.S. Access Board subsequent to the DOJ adoption of the Standards for Accessible Design in 1994 (column 2 of the analysis) through September 2002. The new material has not been incorporated in the Department of Justice accessibility standards and therefore is not enforceable.

1. PURPOSE.

This document contains scoping and technical requirements for accessibility to buildings and facilities by individuals with disabilities under the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) of 1990. These scoping and technical requirements are to be applied during the design, construction, and alteration of buildings and facilities covered by titles II and III of the ADA to the extent required by regulations issued by Federal agencies, including the Department of Justice and the Department of Transportation, under the ADA.

2.1 Provisions for Adults and Children. The specifications in these guidelines are based upon adult dimensions and anthropometrics. These guidelines also contain alternate specifications based on children's dimensions and anthropometrics for drinking fountains, water closets, toilet stalls, lavatories, sinks, and fixed or built-in seating and tables.

2.3 Incorporation by Reference.

2.3.1 General. The publications listed in 2.3.2 are incorporated by reference in this document. The Director of the Federal Register has approved these materials for incorporation by reference in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 C.F.R. part 51. Copies of the referenced publications may be inspected at the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board, 1331 F Street, NW., Suite 1000, Washington, DC; at the Department of Justice, Civil Rights Division, Disability Rights Section, 1425 New York Avenue, NW., Washington, DC; or at the Office of the Federal Register, 800 North Capitol Street, NW., Suite 700, Washington, DC.

2.3.2 Referenced Publications. The specific edition of the publications listed below are referenced in this document. Where differences occur between this document and the referenced publications, this document applies.

2.3.2.1 American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Standards. Copies of the referenced publications may be obtained from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 100 Bar Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, Pennsylvania 19428 (<http://www.astm.org>).

ASTM F 1292-99 Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment (see 15.6.7.2 Ground Surfaces, Use Zones).

ASTM F 1487-98 Standard Consumer Safety Performance Specification for Playground Equipment for Public Use (see 3.5 Definitions, Use Zone).

ASTM F 1951-99 Standard Specification for Determination of Accessibility of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment (see 15.6.7.1 Ground Surfaces, Accessibility).

2.3.2.2 International Code Council (ICC) Codes. Copies of the referenced publications may be obtained from the International Code Council, 5203 Leesburg Pike, Suite 600, Falls Church, VA 2204-3401 (<http://www.intlcode.org>).

International Building Code 2000 (see 15.3.3.2 Height).

3.5 Definitions.

Amusement Attraction. Any facility, or portion of a facility, located within an amusement park or theme park which provides amusement without the use of an amusement device. Examples include, but are not limited to, fun houses, barrels, and other attractions without seats.

Amusement Ride. A system that moves persons through a fixed course within a defined area for the purpose of amusement.

Amusement Ride Seat. A seat that is built-in or mechanically fastened to an amusement ride intended to be occupied by one or more passengers.

Area of Sport Activity. That portion of a room or space where the play or practice of a sport occurs.

Boarding Pier. A portion of a pier where a boat is temporarily secured for the purpose of embarking or disembarking.

Boat Launch Ramp. A sloped surface designed for launching and retrieving trailered boats and other water craft to and from a body of water.

Boat Slip. That portion of a pier, main pier, finger pier, or float where a boat is moored for the purpose of berthing, embarking, or disembarking.

Catch Pool. A pool or designated section of a pool used as a terminus for water slide flumes.

Elevated Play Component. A play component that is approached above or below grade and that is part of a composite play structure consisting of two or more play components attached or functionally linked to create an integrated unit providing more than one play activity.

Gangway. A variable-sloped pedestrian walkway that links a fixed structure or land with a floating structure. Gangways which connect to vessels are not included.

Golf Car Passage. A continuous passage on which a motorized golf car can operate.

Ground Level Play Component. A play component that is approached and exited at the ground level.

Play Area. A portion of a site containing play components designed and constructed for children.

Play Component. An element intended to generate specific opportunities for play, socialization, or learning. Play components may be manufactured or natural, and may be stand alone or part of a composite play structure.

Private Facility. A place of public accommodation or a commercial facility subject to title III of the ADA and 28 C.F.R. part 36 or a transportation facility subject to title III of the ADA and 49 C.F.R. 37.45.

Public Facility. A facility or portion of a facility constructed by, on behalf of, or for the use of a public entity subject to title II of the ADA and 28 C.F.R. part 35 or to title II of the ADA and 49 C.F.R. 37.41 or 37.43.

Soft Contained Play Structure. A play structure made up of one or more components where the user enters a fully enclosed play environment that utilizes pliable materials (e.g., plastic, netting, fabric).

TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf). See text telephone.

TTY (Tele-Typewriter). See text telephone.

Technically Infeasible. See 4.1.6(1)(j) **EXCEPTION.**

Teeing Ground. In golf, the starting place for the hole to be played.

Transfer Device. Equipment designed to facilitate the transfer of a person from a wheelchair or other mobility device to and from an amusement ride seat.

Transition Plate. A sloping pedestrian walking surface located at the end(s) of a gangway.

Use Zone. The ground level area beneath and immediately adjacent to a play structure or equipment that is designated by ASTM F 1487 Standard Consumer Safety Performance Specification for Playground Equipment for Public Use (incorporated by reference, see 2.3.2) for unrestricted circulation around the equipment and on whose surface it is predicted that a user would land when falling from or exiting the equipment.

4.1.1(5)

(b) Accessibility is not required to or in:

(i) raised areas used primarily for purposes of security or life or fire safety, including, but not limited to, observation or lookout galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers, or fixed life guard stands;

(ii) non-occupiable spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, very narrow passageways, tunnels, or freight (non-passenger) elevators, and frequented only by service personnel for maintenance, repair, or occasional monitoring of equipment; such spaces may include, but are not limited to, elevator pits, elevator penthouses, piping or equipment catwalks, water or sewage treatment pump rooms and stations, electric substations and transformer vaults, and highway and tunnel utility facilities;

(iii) single occupant structures accessed only by a passageway that is below grade or that is elevated above standard curb height, including, but not limited to, toll booths accessed from underground tunnels;

(iv) raised structures used solely for refereeing, judging, or scoring a sport;

(v) water slides;

(vi) animal containment areas that are not for public use; or

(vii) raised boxing or wrestling rings.

4.1.2(2)

(b) Court Sports: An accessible route complying with 4.3 shall directly connect both sides of the court in court sports.

(3) All objects that protrude from surfaces or posts into circulation paths shall comply with 4.4.

EXCEPTION: The requirements of 4.4 shall not apply within an area of sport activity.

(4) Ground surfaces along accessible routes and in accessible spaces shall comply with 4.5.

EXCEPTION 1: The requirements of 4.5 shall not apply within an area of sport activity.

EXCEPTION 2: Animal containment areas designed and constructed for public use shall not be required to provide stable, firm, and slip resistant ground and floor surfaces and shall not be required to comply with 4.5.2.

4.1.3

(1)(a) At least one accessible route complying with 4.3 shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with all accessible spaces and elements within the building or facility.

(b) Court Sports. An accessible route complying with 4.3 shall directly connect both sides of the court in court sports.

(2) All objects that overhang or protrude into circulation paths shall comply with 4.4.

EXCEPTION: The requirements of 4.4 shall not apply within an area of sport activity.

(3) Ground and floor surfaces along accessible routes and in accessible rooms and spaces shall comply with 4.5.

EXCEPTION 1: The requirements of 4.5 shall not apply within an area of sport activity.

EXCEPTION 2: Animal containment areas designed and constructed for public use shall not be required to provide stable, firm, and slip resistant ground and floor surfaces and shall not be required to comply with 4.5.2.

(5) One passenger elevator complying with 4.10 shall serve each level, including mezzanines, in all multi-story buildings and facilities unless exempted below. If more than one elevator is provided, each passenger elevator shall comply with 4.10.

EXCEPTION 1: Elevators are not required in:

(a) private facilities that are less than three stories or that have less than 3000 square feet per story unless the building is a shopping center, a shopping mall, or the professional office of a health care provider, or another type of facility as determined by the Attorney General; or

(b) public facilities that are less than three stories and that are not open to the general public if the story above or below the accessible ground floor houses no more than five persons and is less than 500 square feet. Examples may include, but are not limited to, drawbridge towers and boat traffic towers, lock and dam control stations, and train dispatching towers.

EXCEPTION 4: Platform lifts (wheelchair lifts) complying with 4.11 of this guideline and applicable State or local codes may be used in lieu of an elevator only under the following conditions:

(e) To provide access to raised judges' benches, clerks' stations, speakers' platforms, jury boxes and witness stands or to depressed areas such as the well of a court.

(f) To provide access to player seating areas serving an area of sport activity.

EXCEPTION 5: Elevators located in air traffic control towers are not required to serve the cab and the floor immediately below the cab.

4.1.3(8)(a)

(iv) In detention and correctional facilities subject to section 12, public entrances that are secured shall be accessible as required by 12.2.1.

4.1.3(8)(b)

(iii) In judicial, legislative, and regulatory facilities subject to section 11, restricted and secured entrances shall be accessible in the number required by 11.1.1.

4.1.3(12)

(c) Where lockers are provided in accessible spaces, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of each type of locker shall comply with 4.25.

4.1.3(13)

Controls and operating mechanisms in accessible spaces, along accessible routes, or as parts of accessible elements (for example, light switches and dispenser controls) shall comply with 4.27.

EXCEPTION: The requirements of 4.27 shall not apply to exercise machines.

4.1.3(17)(c)

(i) If four or more public pay telephones (including both interior and exterior telephones) are provided at a site of a private facility, and at least one is in an interior location, then at least one interior public text telephone (TTY) shall be provided. If an interior public pay telephone is provided in a public use area in a building of a public facility, at least one interior public text telephone (TTY) shall be provided in the building in a public use area.

(ii) If an interior public pay telephone is provided in a private facility that is a stadium or arena, a convention center, a hotel with a convention center, or a covered mall, at least one interior public text telephone (TTY) shall be provided in the facility. In stadiums, arenas and convention

centers which are public facilities, at least one public text telephone (TTY) shall be provided on each floor level having at least one interior public pay telephone.

(iv) If an interior public pay telephone is provided in the secured area of a detention or correctional facility subject to section 12, then at least one public text telephone (TTY) shall also be provided in at least one secured area. Secured areas are those areas used only by detainees or inmates and security personnel.

(d) Where a bank of telephones in the interior of a building consists of three or more public pay telephones, at least one public pay telephone in each such bank shall be equipped with a shelf and outlet in compliance with 4.31.9(2).

EXCEPTION: This requirement does not apply to the secured areas of detention or correctional facilities where shelves and outlets are prohibited for purposes of security or safety.

4.1.3(19)

(c) Where a team or player seating area contains fixed seats and serves an area of sport activity, the seating area shall contain the number of wheelchair spaces required by 4.1.3(19)(a), but not less than one wheelchair space. Wheelchair spaces shall comply with 4.33.2, 4.33.3, 4.33.4, and 4.33.5.

EXCEPTION 1: Wheelchair spaces in team or player seating areas shall not be required to provide a choice of admission price or lines of sight comparable to those for members of the general public.

EXCEPTION 2: This provision shall not apply to team or player seating areas serving bowling lanes not required to be accessible by 15.7.3.

4.1.3(21)

Where dressing, fitting, or locker rooms are provided, the rooms shall comply with 4.35.

EXCEPTION: Where dressing, fitting, or locker rooms are provided in a cluster, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of the rooms for each type of use in each cluster shall comply with 4.35.

4.1.3(22)

Where saunas or steam rooms are provided, the rooms shall comply with 4.36.

EXCEPTION: Where saunas or steam rooms are provided in a cluster, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of the rooms for each type of use in each cluster shall comply with 4.36.

4.1.6(1)

(k) **EXCEPTION:**

(i) These guidelines do not require the installation of an elevator in an altered facility that is exempt from the requirement for an elevator under 4.1.3(5).

4.15.5

(1) Wall- and post-mounted cantilevered units shall have a clear knee space between the bottom of the apron and the floor or ground at least 27 in (685 mm) high, 30 in (760 mm) wide, and 17 in to 19 in (430 mm to 485 mm) deep (see Fig. 27(a) and (b)). Such units shall also have a minimum clear floor space 30 in by 48 in (760 mm by 1220 mm) to allow a person in a wheelchair to approach the unit facing forward.

EXCEPTION: These clearances shall not be required at units used primarily by children ages 12 and younger where clear floor space for a parallel approach complying with 4.2.4 is provided and where the spout is no higher than 30 in (760 mm), measured from the floor or ground surface to the spout outlet.

4.16.1 General. Accessible water closets shall comply with 4.16.2 through 4.16.6.

EXCEPTION: Water closets used primarily by children ages 12 and younger shall be permitted to comply with 4.16.7.

4.16.7 Water Closets for Children. Water closets used primarily by children ages 12 and younger shall comply with 4.16.7 as permitted by 4.16.1.

(1) Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space for water closets not in stalls shall comply with Fig. 28 except that the centerline of water closets shall be 12 in minimum to 18 in maximum (305 mm to 455 mm) from the side wall or partition. Clear floor space may be arranged to allow either a left- or right-hand approach.

(2) Height. The height of water closets shall be 11 in minimum to 17 in maximum (280 mm to 430 mm), measured to the top of the toilet seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.

(3) Grab Bars. Grab bars for water closets not located in stalls shall comply with 4.26 and Fig. 29 except that grab bars shall be mounted 18 in minimum to 27 in maximum (455 mm to 685 mm) above the finish floor measured to the grab bar centerline. The grab bar behind the water closet shall be 36 in (915 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTION: If administrative authorities require flush controls for flush valves to be located in a position that conflicts with the location of the rear grab bar, then that grab bar may be split or, at water closets with a centerline placement below 15 in (380 mm), a rear grab bar 24 in (610 mm) minimum on the open side of the toilet area shall be permitted.

(4) Flush Controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic and shall comply with 4.27.4. Controls for flush valves shall be mounted on the wide side of the toilet area no more than 36 in (915 mm) above the floor.

(5) Dispensers. Toilet paper dispensers shall be installed 14 in minimum to 19 in maximum (355 mm to 485 mm) above the finish floor measured to the dispenser centerline. Dispensers that control delivery, or that do not permit continuous paper flow, shall not be used.

4.17.1 Location. Accessible toilet stalls shall be on an accessible route and shall meet the requirements of 4.17.2 through 4.17.6.

EXCEPTION: Toilet stalls used primarily by children ages 12 and younger shall be permitted to comply with 4.17.7.

4.17.7 Toilet Stalls for Children. Toilet stalls used primarily by children ages 12 and younger shall comply with 4.17.7 as permitted by 4.17.1.

(1) Water Closets. Water closets in accessible stalls shall comply with 4.16.7.

(2) **Size and Arrangement.** The size and arrangement of the standard toilet stall shall comply with 4.17.3 and Fig. 30(a), Standard Stall, except that the centerline of water closets shall be 12 in minimum to 18 in maximum (305 mm to 455 mm) from the side wall or partition and the minimum depth for stalls with wall-mounted water closets shall be 59 in (1500 mm). Alternate stalls complying with Fig. 30(b) may be provided where permitted by 4.17.3 except that the stall shall have a minimum depth of 69 in (1745 mm) where wall-mounted water closets are provided.

(3) **Toe Clearances.** In standard stalls, the front partition and at least one side partition shall provide a toe clearance of at least 12 in (305 mm) above the finish floor.

(4) **Doors.** Toilet stall doors shall comply with 4.17.5.

(5) **Grab Bars.** Grab bars shall comply with 4.17.6 and the length and positioning shown in Fig. 30(a), (b), (c), and (d) except that grab bars shall be mounted 18 in minimum to 27 in maximum (455 mm to 685 mm) above the finish floor measured to the grab bar centerline.

EXCEPTION: If administrative authorities require flush controls for flush valves to be located in a position that conflicts with the location of the rear grab bar, then that grab bar may be split or, at water closets with a centerline placement below 15 in (380 mm), a rear grab bar 24 in (610 mm) minimum on the open side of the toilet area shall be permitted.

4.19.2 Height and Clearances. Lavatories shall be mounted with the rim or counter surface no higher than 34 in (865 mm) above the finish floor. Provide a clearance of at least 29 in (735 mm) above the finish floor to the bottom of the apron. Knee and toe clearance shall comply with Fig. 31.

EXCEPTION 1: Lavatories used primarily by children ages 6 through 12 shall be permitted to have an apron clearance and a knee clearance 24 in (610 mm) high minimum provided that the rim or counter surface is no higher than 31 in (760 mm).

EXCEPTION 2: Lavatories used primarily by children ages 5 and younger shall not be required to meet these clearances if clear floor space for a parallel approach complying with 4.2.4 is provided.

4.24.3 Knee Clearance. Knee clearance that is at least 27 in (685 mm) high, 30 in (760 mm) wide, and 19 in (485 mm) deep shall be provided underneath sinks.

EXCEPTION 1: Sinks used primarily by children ages 6 through 12 shall be permitted to have a knee clearance 24 in (610 mm) high minimum provided that the rim or counter surface is no higher than 31 in (760 mm).

EXCEPTION 2: Sinks used primarily by children ages 5 and younger shall not be required to provide knee clearance if clear floor space for a parallel approach complying with 4.2.4 is provided.

4.32.1 Minimum Number. Fixed or built-in seating or tables required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.32.2 through 4.32.4.

EXCEPTION: Fixed or built-in seating or tables used primarily by children ages 12 and younger shall be permitted to comply with 4.32.5.

4.32.5 Children's Fixed or Built-in Seating and Tables. Fixed or built-in seating or tables used primarily by children ages 12 and younger shall comply with 4.32.5 as permitted by 4.32.1.

EXCEPTION: Fixed or built-in seating or tables used primarily by children ages 5 and younger shall not be required to comply with 4.32.5 if clear floor space complying with 4.2.4 parallel to fixed tables or counters is provided.

(1) Seating. If seating spaces for people in wheelchairs are provided at fixed tables or counters, clear floor space complying with 4.2.4 shall be provided. Such clear floor space shall not overlap knee space by more than 19 in (485 mm) (see Fig. 45).

(2) Knee Clearances. If seating for people in wheelchairs is provided at tables or counters, knee spaces at least 24 in (610 mm) high, 30 in (760 mm) wide, and 19 in (485 mm) deep shall be provided (see Fig. 45).

(3) Height of Tables or Counters. The tops of accessible tables and counters shall be from 26 in to 30 in (660 mm to 760 mm) above the finish floor or ground.

4.35.4 Bench. A bench complying with 4.37 shall be provided within the room.

4.36 Saunas and Steam Rooms.

4.36.1 General. Saunas and steam rooms required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.36.

4.36.2 Wheelchair Turning Space. A wheelchair turning space complying with 4.2.3 shall be provided within the room.

EXCEPTION: Wheelchair turning space shall be permitted to be obstructed by readily removable seats.

4.36.3 Sauna and Steam Room Bench. Where seating is provided, at least one bench shall be provided and shall comply with 4.37.

4.36.4 Door Swing. Doors shall not swing into any part of the clear floor or ground space required at a bench complying with 4.37.

4.37 Benches.

4.37.1 General. Benches required to be accessible by 4.1 shall comply with 4.37.

4.37.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space. Clear floor or ground space complying with 4.2.4 shall be provided and shall be positioned for parallel approach to a short end of a bench seat.

EXCEPTION: Clear floor or ground space required by 4.37.2 shall be permitted to be obstructed by readily removable seats in saunas and steam rooms.

4.37.3 Size. Benches shall be fixed and shall have seats that are 20 inches (510 mm) minimum to 24 inches (610 mm) maximum in depth and 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in length (see Fig. 47).

4.37.4 Back Support. Benches shall have back support that is 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in length and that extends from a point 2 inches (51 mm) maximum above the seat to a point 18 inches (455 mm) minimum above the seat (see Fig. 48).

4.37.5 Seat Height. Bench seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum to 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the floor or ground.

4.37.6 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used when a vertical or horizontal force of 250 lbs. (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener, mounting device, or supporting structure.

4.37.7 Wet Locations. The surface of benches installed in wet locations shall be slip-resistant and shall not accumulate water.

11. JUDICIAL, LEGISLATIVE AND REGULATORY FACILITIES.

11.1 General. In addition to the requirements in section 4 and 11.1, judicial facilities shall comply with 11.2 and legislative and regulatory facilities shall comply with 11.3.

11.1.1 Entrances. Where provided, at least one restricted entrance and one secured entrance to the facility shall be accessible in addition to the entrances required to be accessible by 4.1.3(8). Restricted entrances are those entrances used only by judges, public officials, facility personnel or other authorized parties on a controlled basis. Secured entrances are those entrances to judicial facilities used only by detainees and detention officers.

EXCEPTION: At secured entrances, doors and doorways operated only by security personnel shall be exempt from 4.13.9, 4.13.10, 4.13.11 and 4.13.12.

11.1.2 Security Systems. An accessible route complying with 4.3 shall be provided through fixed security barriers at required accessible entrances. Where security barriers incorporate equipment such as metal detectors, fluoroscopes, or other similar devices which cannot be made accessible, an accessible route shall be provided adjacent to such security screening devices to facilitate an equivalent circulation path.

11.1.3 Two-Way Communication Systems. Where a two-way communication system is provided to gain admittance to a facility or to restricted areas within the facility, the system shall provide both visual and audible signals and shall comply with 4.27.

11.2 Judicial Facilities.

11.2.1 Courtrooms.

(1) Where provided, the following elements and spaces shall be on an accessible route complying with 4.3. Areas that are raised or depressed and accessed by ramps or platform lifts with entry ramps shall provide unobstructed turning space complying with 4.2.3.

EXCEPTION: Vertical access to raised judges' benches or courtroom stations need not be installed provided that the requisite areas, maneuvering spaces, and, if appropriate, electrical service are installed at the time of initial construction to allow future installation of a means of vertical access complying with 4.8, 4.10, or 4.11 without requiring substantial reconstruction of the space.

(a) Spectator, Press, and Other Areas with Fixed Seats. Where spectator, press or other areas with fixed seats are provided, each type of seating area shall comply with 4.1.3(19)(a).

(b) Jury Boxes and Witness Stands. Each jury box and witness stand shall have within its defined area clear floor space complying with 4.2.4.

EXCEPTION: In alterations, accessible wheelchair spaces are not required to be located within the defined area of raised jury boxes or witness stands and may be located outside these spaces where ramp or lift access poses a hazard by restricting or projecting into a means of egress required by the appropriate administrative authority.

(c) Judges' Benches and Courtroom Stations. Judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations, court reporters' stations and litigants' and counsel stations shall comply with 4.32.

(2) Permanently installed assistive listening systems complying with 4.33 shall be provided in each courtroom. The minimum number of receivers shall be four percent of the room occupant load, as determined by applicable State or local codes, but not less than two receivers. An informational sign indicating the availability of an assistive listening system and complying with 4.30.1, 4.30.2, 4.30.3, 4.30.5, and 4.30.7(4) shall be posted in a prominent place.

11.2.2 Jury Assembly Areas and Jury Deliberation Areas. Where provided in areas used for jury assembly or deliberation, the following elements or spaces shall be on an accessible route complying with 4.3 and shall comply with the following provisions:

(1) Refreshment Areas. Refreshment areas, kitchenettes and fixed or built-in refreshment dispensers shall comply with the technical provisions of 9.2.2(7).

(2) Drinking Fountains. Where provided in rooms covered under 11.2.2, there shall be a drinking fountain in each room complying with 4.15.

11.2.3 Courthouse Holding Facilities.

(1) Holding Cells - Minimum Number. Where provided, facilities for detainees, including central holding cells and court-floor holding cells, shall comply with the following:

(a) Central Holding Cells. Where separate central holding cells are provided for adult male, juvenile male, adult female, or juvenile female, one of each type shall comply with 11.2.3(2). Where central-holding cells are provided, which are not separated by age or sex, at least one cell complying with 11.2.3(2) shall be provided.

(b) Court-Floor Holding Cells. Where separate court-floor holding cells are provided for adult male, juvenile male, adult female, or juvenile female, each courtroom shall be served by one cell of each type complying with 11.2.3(2). Where court-floor holding cells are provided, which are not separated by age or sex, courtrooms shall be served by at least one cell complying with 11.2.3(2). Cells may serve more than one courtroom.

(2) Requirements for Accessible Cells. Accessible cells shall be on an accessible route complying with 4.3. Where provided, the following elements or spaces serving accessible cells shall be accessible and on an accessible route:

(a) Doors and Doorways. All doors and doorways to accessible spaces and on an accessible route shall comply with 4.13.

EXCEPTION: Doors and doorways operated only by security personnel shall be exempt from 4.13.9, 4.13.10, 4.13.11 and 4.13.12.

(b) Toilet and Bathing Facilities. Toilet facilities shall comply with 4.22 and bathing facilities shall comply with 4.23. Privacy screens shall not intrude on the clear floor space required for fixtures or the accessible route.

(c) Beds. Beds shall have maneuvering space at least 36 in (915 mm) wide along one side. Where more than one bed is provided in a cell, the maneuvering space provided at adjacent beds may overlap.

(d) Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers. Drinking fountains shall be accessible to individuals who use wheelchairs in accordance with 4.15 and shall be accessible to those who have difficulty bending or stooping. This can be accomplished by the use of a "hi-lo" fountain; by providing one fountain accessible to those who use wheelchairs and one fountain at a standard height convenient for those who have difficulty bending; by providing a fountain accessible under 4.15 and a water cooler; or by other such means as would achieve the required accessibility for each group.

(e) Fixed or Built-in Seating and Tables. Fixed or built-in seating, tables or counters shall comply with 4.32.

(f) Fixed Benches. Fixed benches shall be mounted at 17 in to 19 in (430 mm to 485 mm) above the finish floor and provide back support (e.g., attachment to wall). The structural strength of the bench attachments shall comply with 4.26.3.

(3) Visiting Areas. The following elements, where provided, shall be located on an accessible route complying with 4.3 and shall comply with the following provisions:

(a) Cubicles and Counters. Five percent, but not less than one, of fixed cubicles shall comply with 4.32 on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, a portion at least 36 in (915 mm) in length shall comply with 4.32 on both the visitor and detainee sides.

(b) Partitions. Solid partitions or security glazing that separate visitors from detainees shall comply with 7.2(3).

11.3 Legislative and Regulatory Facilities. Assembly areas designated for public use, including public meeting rooms, hearing rooms, and chambers shall comply with 11.3.

11.3.1 Where provided, the following elements and spaces shall be on an accessible route complying with 4.3. Areas that are raised or depressed and accessed by ramps or platform lifts with entry ramps shall provide unobstructed turning space complying with 4.2.3.

(1) Raised Speakers' Platforms. Where raised speakers' platforms are provided, at least one of each type shall be accessible.

(2) Spectator, Press, and Other Areas with Fixed Seats. Where spectator, press or other areas with fixed seats are provided, each type of seating area shall comply with 4.1.3(19)(a).

11.3.2 Each assembly area provided with a permanently installed audio-amplification system shall have a permanently installed assistive listening system. The minimum number of receivers shall be four percent of the room occupant load, as determined by applicable State or local codes, but not less than two receivers. An informational sign indicating the availability of an assistive listening system and complying with 4.30.1, 4.30.2, 4.30.3, 4.30.5, and 4.30.7(4) shall be posted in a prominent place.

12. DETENTION AND CORRECTIONAL FACILITIES.

12.1 General. This section applies to jails, holding cells in police stations, prisons, juvenile detention centers, reformatories, and other institutional occupancies where occupants are under some degree of restraint or restriction for security reasons. Except as specified in this section, detention and correctional facilities shall comply with the applicable requirements of section 4. All common use areas serving accessible cells or rooms and all public use areas are required to be designed and constructed to comply with section 4.

EXCEPTIONS: Requirements for areas of rescue assistance in 4.1.3(9), 4.3.10, and 4.3.11 do not apply. Compliance with requirements for elevators in 4.1.3(5) and stairs 4.1.3(4) is not required in multi-story housing facilities where accessible cells or rooms, all common use areas serving them, and all public use areas are on an accessible route. Compliance with 4.1.3(16) is not required in areas other than public use areas.

12.2 Entrances and Security Systems.

12.2.1 Entrances. Entrances used by the public, including those that are secured, shall be accessible as required by 4.1.3(8).

EXCEPTION: Compliance with 4.13.9, 4.13.10, 4.13.11 and 4.13.12 is not required at entrances, doors, or doorways that are operated only by security personnel or where security requirements prohibit full compliance with these provisions.

12.2.2 Security Systems. Where security systems are provided at public or other entrances required to be accessible by 12.2.1 or 12.2.2, an accessible route complying with 4.3 shall be provided through fixed security barriers. Where security barriers incorporate equipment such as metal detectors, fluoroscopes, or other similar devices which cannot be made accessible, an accessible route shall be provided adjacent to such security screening devices to facilitate an equivalent circulation path.

12.3 Visiting Areas. In non-contact visiting areas where inmates or detainees are separated from visitors, the following elements, where provided, shall be accessible and located on an accessible route complying with 4.3:

(1) Cubicles and Counters. Five percent, but not less than one, of fixed cubicles shall comply with 4.32 on both the visitor and detainee or inmate sides. Where counters are provided, a portion at least 36 in (915 mm) in length shall comply with 4.32 on both the visitor and detainee or inmate sides.

EXCEPTION: At non-contact visiting areas not serving accessible cells or rooms, the requirements of 12.3(1) do not apply to the inmate or detainee side of cubicles or counters.

(2) Partitions. Solid partitions or security glazing separating visitors from inmates or detainees shall comply with 7.2(3).

12.4 Holding and Housing Cells or Rooms: Minimum Number.

12.4.1 Holding Cells and General Housing Cells or Rooms. At least two percent, but not less than one, of the total number of housing or holding cells or rooms provided in a facility shall comply with 12.5.

12.4.2 Special Holding and Housing Cells or Rooms. In addition to the requirements of 12.4.1, where special holding or housing cells or rooms are provided, at least one serving each purpose shall comply with 12.5. An accessible special holding or housing cell or room may serve more than one purpose. Cells or rooms subject to this requirement include, but are not limited to, those used for purposes of orientation, protective custody, administrative or disciplinary detention or segregation, detoxification, and medical isolation.

EXCEPTION: Cells or rooms specially designed without protrusions and to be used solely for purposes of suicide prevention are exempt from the requirement for grab bars at water closets in 4.16.4.

12.4.3 Accessible Cells or Rooms for Persons with Hearing Impairments. In addition to the requirements of 12.4.1, two percent, but not less than one, of general housing or holding cells or rooms equipped with audible emergency warning systems or permanently installed telephones within the cell or room shall comply with the applicable requirements of 12.6.

12.4.4 Medical Care Facilities. Medical care facilities providing physical or medical treatment or care shall comply with the applicable requirements of section 6.1, 6.3 and 6.4, if persons may need assistance in emergencies and the period of stay may exceed 24 hours. Patient bedrooms or cells required to be accessible under 6.1 and 6.3 shall be provided in addition to any medical isolation cells required to be accessible under 12.4.2.

12.4.5 Alterations to Cells or Rooms. (Reserved.)

12.5 Requirements for Accessible Cells or Rooms.

12.5.1 General. Cells or rooms required to be accessible by 12.4 shall comply with 12.5.

12.5.2 Minimum Requirements. Accessible cells or rooms shall be on an accessible route complying with 4.3. Where provided to serve accessible housing or holding cells or rooms, the following elements or spaces shall be accessible and connected by an accessible route.

(1) Doors and Doorways. All doors and doorways on an accessible route shall comply with 4.13.

EXCEPTION: Compliance with 4.13.9, 4.13.10, 4.13.11 and 4.13.12 is not required at entrances, doors, or doorways that are operated only by security personnel or where security requirements prohibit full compliance with these provisions.

(2) Toilet and Bathing Facilities. At least one toilet facility shall comply with 4.22 and one bathing facility shall comply with 4.23. Privacy screens shall not intrude on the clear floor space required for fixtures and the accessible route.

(3) Beds. Beds shall have maneuvering space at least 36 in (915 mm) wide along one side. Where more than one bed is provided in a room or cell, the maneuvering space provided at adjacent beds may overlap.

(4) Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers. At least one drinking fountain shall comply with 4.15.

(5) Fixed or Built-in Seating or Tables. Fixed or built-in seating, tables and counters shall comply with 4.32.

(6) Fixed Benches. At least one fixed bench shall be mounted at 17 in to 19 in (430 mm to 485 mm) above the finish floor and provide back support (e.g., attachment to wall). The structural strength of the bench attachments shall comply with 4.26.3.

(7) Storage. Fixed or built-in storage facilities, such as cabinets, shelves, closets, and drawers, shall contain storage space complying with 4.25.

(8) Controls. All controls intended for operation by inmates shall comply with 4.27.

(9) Accommodations for persons with hearing impairments required by 12.4.3 and complying with 12.6 shall be provided in accessible cells or rooms.

12.6 Visual Alarms and Telephones.

Where audible emergency warning systems are provided to serve the occupants of holding or housing cells or rooms, visual alarms complying with 4.28.4 shall be provided. Where permanently installed telephones are provided within holding or housing cells or rooms, they shall have volume controls complying with 4.31.5.

EXCEPTION: Visual alarms are not required where inmates or detainees are not allowed independent means of egress.

15 RECREATION FACILITIES.

Newly designed or newly constructed and altered recreation facilities shall comply with the applicable requirements of section 4 and the special application sections, except as modified or otherwise provided in this section.

15.1 Amusement Rides

15.1.1 General. Newly designed or newly constructed and altered amusement rides shall comply with 15.1.

EXCEPTION 1: Mobile or portable amusement rides shall not be required to comply with 15.1.

EXCEPTION 2: Amusement rides which are controlled or operated by the rider shall be required to comply only with 15.1.4 and 15.1.5.

EXCEPTION 3: Amusement rides designed primarily for children, where children are assisted on and off the ride by an adult, shall be required to comply only with 15.1.4 and 15.1.5.

EXCEPTION 4: Amusement rides without amusement ride seats shall be required to comply only with 15.1.4 and 15.1.5.

15.1.2 Alterations to Amusement Rides. A modification to an existing amusement ride is an alteration subject to 15.1 if one or more of the following conditions apply:

1. The amusement ride's structural or operational characteristics are changed to the extent that the ride's performance differs from that specified by the manufacturer or the original design criteria; or
2. The load and unload area of the amusement ride is newly designed and constructed.

15.1.3 Number Required. Each amusement ride shall provide at least one wheelchair space complying with 15.1.7, or at least one amusement ride seat designed for transfer complying with 15.1.8, or at least one transfer device complying with 15.1.9.

15.1.4 Accessible Route. When in the load and unload position, amusement rides required to comply with 15.1 shall be served by an accessible route complying with 4.3. Any part of an accessible route serving amusement rides with a slope greater than 1:20 shall be considered a ramp and shall comply with 4.8.

EXCEPTION 1: The maximum slope specified in 4.8.2 shall not apply in the load and unload areas or on the amusement ride where compliance is structurally or operationally infeasible, provided that the slope of the ramp shall not exceed 1:8.

EXCEPTION 2: Handrails shall not be required in the load and unload areas or on the amusement ride where compliance is structurally or operationally infeasible.

EXCEPTION 3: Limited-use/limited-application elevators and platform lifts complying with 4.11 shall be permitted to be part of an accessible route serving the load and unload area.

15.1.5 Load and Unload Areas. Load and unload areas serving amusement rides required to comply with 15.1 shall provide a maneuvering space complying with 4.2.3. The maneuvering space shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48.

15.1.6 Signage. Signage shall be provided at the entrance of the queue or waiting line for each amusement ride to identify the type of access provided. Where an accessible unload area also serves as the accessible load area, signage shall be provided at the entrance to the queue or waiting line indicating the location of the accessible load and unload area.

15.1.7 Amusement Rides with Wheelchair Spaces. Amusement rides with wheelchair spaces shall comply with 15.1.7.

15.1.7.1 Floor or Ground Surface. The floor or ground surface of wheelchair spaces shall comply with 15.1.7.1.

15.1.7.1.1 Slope. The floor or ground surface of wheelchair spaces shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48 when in the load and unload position and shall be stable and firm.

15.1.7.1.2 Gaps. Floors of amusement rides with wheelchair spaces and floors of load and unload areas shall be coordinated so that, when the amusement rides are at rest in the load and unload position, the vertical difference between the floors shall be within plus or minus 5/8 inches (16 mm) and the horizontal gap shall be no greater than 3 inches (75 mm) under normal passenger load conditions.

EXCEPTION: Where compliance is not operationally or structurally feasible, ramps, bridge plates, or similar devices complying with the applicable requirements of 36 C.F.R. 1192.83(c) shall be provided.

15.1.7.2 Clearances. Clearances for wheelchair spaces shall comply with 15.1.7.2.

EXCEPTION 1: Where provided, securement devices shall be permitted to overlap required clearances.

EXCEPTION 2: Wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be mechanically or manually repositioned.

EXCEPTION 3: Wheelchair spaces shall not be required to comply with 4.4.2.

15.1.7.2.1 Width and Length. Wheelchair spaces shall provide a clear width of 30 inches (760 mm) minimum and a clear length of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum measured to 9 inches (230 mm) minimum above the floor surface.

15.1.7.2.2 Wheelchair Spaces - Side Entry. Where the wheelchair space can be entered only from the side, the ride shall be designed to permit sufficient maneuvering space for individuals using a wheelchair or mobility device to enter and exit the ride.

15.1.7.2.3 Protrusions in Wheelchair Spaces. Objects are permitted to protrude a distance of 6 inches (150 mm) maximum along the front of the wheelchair space where located 9 inches (230 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor or ground surface of the wheelchair space. Objects are permitted to protrude a distance of 25 inches (635 mm) maximum along the front of the wheelchair space, where located more than 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor or ground surface of the wheelchair space (see Fig. 58).

NOTE: Figure 58 shows in side elevation that objects may protrude 6 inches maximum along the front of the wheelchair space where located 9 inches minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor or ground surface of the wheelchair space. Objects may protrude a distance of 25 inches maximum along the front of the wheelchair space, where located more than 27 inches above the floor or ground surface.

15.1.7.3 Openings. Where openings are provided to access wheelchair spaces on amusement rides, the entry shall provide a 32 inch (815 mm) minimum clear opening.

15.1.7.4 Approach. One side of the wheelchair space shall adjoin an accessible route.

15.1.7.5 Companion Seats. Where the interior width of the amusement ride is greater than 53 inches (1346 mm), seating is provided for more than one rider, and the wheelchair is not required to be centered within the amusement ride, a companion seat shall be provided for each wheelchair space.

15.1.7.5.1 Shoulder-to-Shoulder Seating. Where an amusement ride provides shoulder-to-shoulder seating, companion seats shall be shoulder-to-shoulder with the adjacent wheelchair space.

EXCEPTION: Where shoulder-to-shoulder companion seating is not operationally or structurally feasible, compliance with this provision shall be required to the maximum extent feasible.

15.1.8 Amusement Ride Seats Designed for Transfer. Amusement ride seats designed for transfer shall comply with 15.1.8 when positioned for loading and unloading.

15.1.8.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. Clear floor or ground space complying with 4.2.4 shall be provided in the load and unload area adjacent to the amusement ride seats designed for transfer.

15.1.8.2 Transfer Height. The height of the amusement ride seats shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum to 24 inches (610mm) maximum measured above the load and unload surface.

15.1.8.3 Transfer Entry. Where openings are provided to transfer to amusement ride seats, the space shall be designed to provide clearance for transfer from a wheelchair or mobility device to the amusement ride seat.

15.1.8.4 Wheelchair Storage Space. Wheelchair storage spaces complying with 4.2.4 shall be provided in or adjacent to unload areas for each required amusement ride seat designed for transfer and shall not overlap any required means of egress or accessible route.

15.1.9 Transfer Devices for Use with Amusement Rides. Transfer devices for use with amusement rides shall comply with 15.1.9 when positioned for loading and unloading.

15.1.9.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. Clear floor or ground space complying with 4.2.4 shall be provided in the load and unload area adjacent to the transfer devices.

15.1.9.2 Transfer Height. The height of the transfer device seats shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum to 24 inches (610 mm) maximum measured above the load and unload surface.

15.1.9.3 Wheelchair Storage Space. Wheelchair storage spaces complying with 4.2.4 shall be provided in or adjacent to unload areas for each required transfer device and shall not overlap any required means of egress or accessible route.

15.2 Boating Facilities.

15.2.1 General. Newly designed or newly constructed and altered boating facilities shall comply with 15.2.

15.2.2 Accessible Route. Accessible routes, including gangways that are part of accessible routes, shall comply with 4.3.

EXCEPTION 1. Where an existing gangway or series of gangways is replaced or altered, an increase in the length of the gangway is not required to comply with 15.2.2, unless required by 4.1.6(2).

EXCEPTION 2. The maximum rise specified in 4.8.2 shall not apply to gangways.

EXCEPTION 3. Where the total length of the gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is at least 80 feet (24 m), the maximum slope specified in 4.8.2 shall not apply to the gangways.

EXCEPTION 4. In facilities containing fewer than 25 boat slips and where the total length of the gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is at least 30 feet (9140 mm), the maximum slope specified in 4.8.2 shall not apply to the gangways.

EXCEPTION 5. Where gangways connect to transition plates, landings specified by 4.8.4 shall not be required.

EXCEPTION 6. Where gangways and transition plates connect and are required to have handrails, handrail extensions specified by 4.8.5 shall not be required. Where handrail extensions are provided on gangways or transition plates, such extensions are not required to be parallel with the ground or floor surface.

EXCEPTION 7. The cross slope of gangways, transition plates, and floating piers that are part of an accessible route shall be 1:50 maximum measured in the static position.

EXCEPTION 8. Limited-use/limited-application elevators or platform lifts complying with 4.11 shall be permitted in lieu of gangways complying with 4.3.

15.2.3 Boat Slips: Minimum Number. Where boat slips are provided, boat slips complying with 15.2.5 shall be provided in accordance with Table 15.2.3. Where the number of boat slips is not identified, each 40 feet (12 m) of boat slip edge provided along the perimeter of the pier shall be counted as one boat slip for the purpose of this section.

Table 15.2.3

Total Boat Slips in Facility	Minimum Number of Required Accessible Boat Slips
1 to 25	1
26 to 50	2
51 to 100	3

101 to 150	4
151 to 300	5
301 to 400	6
401 to 500	7
501 to 600	8
601 to 700	9
701 to 800	10
801 to 900	11
901 to 1000	12
1001 and over	12, plus 1 for each 100 or fraction thereof over 1000

15.2.3.1 Dispersion. Accessible boat slips shall be dispersed throughout the various types of slips provided. This provision does not require an increase in the minimum number of boat slips required to be accessible.

15.2.4 Boarding Piers at Boat Launch Ramps. Where boarding piers are provided at boat launch ramps, at least 5 percent, but not less than one of the boarding piers shall comply with 15.2.4 and shall be served by an accessible route complying with 4.3.

EXCEPTION 1. Accessible routes serving floating boarding piers shall be permitted to use exceptions 1, 2, 5, 6, 7, and 8 in 15.2.2.

EXCEPTION 2. Where the total length of the gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is at least 30 feet (9140 mm), the maximum slope specified by 4.8.2 shall not apply to the gangways.

EXCEPTION 3. Where the accessible route serving a floating boarding pier or skid pier is located within a boat launch ramp, the portion of the accessible route located within the boat launch ramp shall not be required to comply with 4.8.

15.2.4.1 Boarding Pier Clearances. The entire length of the piers shall comply with 15.2.5.

15.2.5 Accessible Boat Slips. Accessible boat slips shall comply with 15.2.5.

15.2.5.1 Clearances. Accessible boat slips shall be served by clear pier space 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum and at least as long as the accessible boat slips. Every 10 feet (3050 mm) maximum of linear pier edge serving the accessible boat slips shall contain at least one continuous clear opening 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width (see Fig. 59).

NOTE: Figure 59 illustrates pier clearances in plan view. Accessible boat slips are served by clear pier space 60 inches wide minimum and at least as long as the accessible boat slips. Every 10 feet maximum of linear pier edge serving the accessible boat slips contains at least one continuous clear opening 60 inches minimum wide.

EXCEPTION 1: The width of the clear pier space shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum, provided that multiple 36 inch (915 mm) wide segments are separated by segments that are 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum clear in width and 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum clear in length. (see Fig. 60)

NOTE: Figure 60 shows in plan view that the width of the clear pier space can be 36 inches wide minimum for a length of 24 inches maximum where multiple 36 inch wide segments are separated by clear segments 60 by 60 inches minimum.

EXCEPTION 2: Edge protection 4 inches (100 mm) high maximum and 2 inches (51 mm) deep maximum shall be permitted at the continuous clear openings. (see Fig. 61)

NOTE: Figure 61 shows in elevation pier edge protection that is 4 inches high maximum and 2 inches deep maximum.

EXCEPTION 3: In alterations to existing facilities, clear pier space shall be permitted to be located perpendicular to the boat slip and shall extend the width of the boat slip, where the facility has at least one boat slip complying with 15.2.5, and further compliance with 15.2.5 would result in a reduction in the number of boat slips available or result in a reduction of the widths of existing slips.

15.2.5.2 Cleats and Other Boat Securement Devices. Cleats and other boat securement devices shall not be required to comply with 4.27.3.

15.3 Fishing Piers and Platforms.

15.3.1 General. Newly designed or newly constructed and altered fishing piers and platforms shall comply with 15.3.

15.3.2 Accessible Route. Accessible routes, including gangways that are part of accessible routes, serving fishing piers and platforms shall comply with 4.3.

EXCEPTION 1: Accessible routes serving floating fishing piers and platforms shall be permitted to use exceptions 1, 2, 5, 6, 7, and 8 in 15.2.2.

EXCEPTION 2: Where the total length of the gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is at least 30 feet (9140 mm), the maximum slope specified by 4.8.2 shall not apply to the gangways.

15.3.3 Railings. Where railings, guards, or handrails are provided, they shall comply with 15.3.3.

15.3.3.1 Edge Protection. Edge protection shall be provided and shall extend 2 inches (51 mm) minimum above the ground or deck surface.

EXCEPTION: Where the railing, guard, or handrail is 34 inches (865 mm) or less above the ground or deck surface, edge protection shall not be required if the deck surface extends 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of the railing. Toe clearance shall be 9 inches (230 mm) minimum above the ground or deck surface beyond the railing. Toe clearance shall be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum wide (see Fig. 62).

NOTE: Figure 62 shows in side elevation (a) and front elevation (b) edge protection at fishing piers. Where a railing or guard is no higher than 34 inches, edge protection shall not be required if the deck surface extends 12 inches minimum beyond the inside face of the railing. Toe clearance shall be at least 9 inches high beyond the railing and at least 30 inches wide.

15.3.3.2 Height. At least 25 percent of the railings, guard, or handrail shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the ground or deck surface.

EXCEPTION: This provision shall not apply to that portion of a fishing pier or platform where a guard which complies with sections 1003.2.12.1 (Height) and 1003.2.12.2 (Opening limitations) of the International Building Code (incorporated by reference, see 2.3.2) is provided.

15.3.3.3 Dispersion. Railings required to comply with 15.3.3.2 shall be dispersed throughout a fishing pier or platform.

15.3.4 Clear Floor or Ground Space. At least one clear floor or ground space complying with 4.2.4 shall be provided where the railing height required by 15.3.3.2 is located. Where no railings are provided, at least one clear floor or ground space complying with 4.2.4 shall be provided.

15.3.5 Maneuvering Space. At least one maneuvering space complying with 4.2.3 shall be provided on the fishing pier or platform.

15.4 Golf.

15.4.1 General. Newly designed or newly constructed and altered golf courses, driving ranges, practice putting greens, and practice teeing grounds shall comply with 15.4.

15.4.2 Accessible Route - Golf Course. An accessible route shall connect accessible elements and spaces within the boundary of the golf course. In addition, an accessible route shall connect the golf car rental area, bag drop areas, practice putting greens, accessible practice teeing grounds, course toilet rooms, and course weather shelters. The accessible route required by this section shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum wide. Where handrails are provided, the accessible route shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum wide.

EXCEPTION 1: A golf car passage complying with 15.4.7 shall be permitted in lieu of all or part of an accessible route required by 15.4.2.

EXCEPTION 2: The handrail requirements of 4.8.5 shall not apply to an accessible route located within the boundary of a golf course.

15.4.3 Accessible Route - Driving Ranges. An accessible route shall connect accessible teeing stations at driving ranges with accessible parking spaces and shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) wide minimum. Where handrails are provided, the accessible route shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum.

EXCEPTION: A golf car passage complying with 15.4.7 shall be permitted in lieu of all or part of an accessible route required by 15.4.3.

15.4.4 Teeing Grounds. Teeing grounds shall comply with 15.4.4.

15.4.4.1 Number Required. Where one or two teeing grounds are provided for a hole, at least one teeing ground serving the hole shall comply with 15.4.4.3. Where three or more teeing grounds are provided for a hole, at least two teeing grounds shall comply with 15.4.4.3.

15.4.4.2 Forward Teeing Ground. The forward teeing ground shall be accessible.

EXCEPTION: In alterations, the forward teeing ground shall not be required to be accessible where compliance is not feasible due to terrain.

15.4.4.3 Teeing Grounds. Teeing grounds required by 15.4.4.1 and 15.4.4.2 shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the teeing ground.

15.4.5 Teeing Stations at Driving Ranges and Practice Teeing Grounds. Where teeing stations or practice teeing grounds are provided, at least 5 percent of the practice teeing stations or practice teeing grounds, but not less than one, shall comply with 15.4.4.3.

15.4.6 Weather Shelters. Where weather shelters are provided on a golf course, each weather shelter shall have a clear floor or ground space 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum and shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit.

15.4.7 Golf Car Passage. Where curbs or other constructed barriers are provided along a golf car passage to prohibit golf cars from entering a fairway, openings at least 60 inches (1525 mm) wide shall be provided at intervals not to exceed 75 yds (69 m).

15.4.7.1 Width. The golf car passage shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum wide.

15.4.8 Putting Greens. Each putting green shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the putting green.

15.5 Miniature Golf.

15.5.1 General. Newly designed or newly constructed and altered miniature golf courses shall comply with 15.5.

15.5.2 Accessible Holes. At least fifty percent of holes on a miniature golf course shall comply with 15.5.3 through 15.5.5 and shall be consecutive.

EXCEPTION: One break in the sequence of consecutive accessible holes shall be permitted, provided that the last hole on a miniature golf course is the last hole in the sequence.

15.5.3 Accessible Route. An accessible route complying with 4.3 shall connect the course entrance with the first accessible hole and the start of play area on each accessible hole. The course shall be configured to allow exit from the last accessible hole to the course exit or entrance and shall not require travel back through other holes.

15.5.3.1 Accessible Route - Located On the Playing Surface. Where the accessible route is located on the playing surface of the accessible hole, exceptions 1-5 shall be permitted.

EXCEPTION 1: Where carpet is provided, the requirements of 4.5.3 shall not apply.

EXCEPTION 2: Where the accessible route intersects the playing surface of a hole, a 1 inch (26 mm) maximum curb shall be permitted for a width of 32 inches (815 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTION 3: A slope of 1:4 maximum for a 4 inch (100 mm) maximum rise shall be permitted.

EXCEPTION 4: Landings required by 4.8.4 shall be permitted to be 48 inches (1220 mm) in length minimum. Landing size required by 4.8.4(3) shall be permitted to be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum. Landing slopes shall be permitted to be 1:20 maximum.

EXCEPTION 5: Handrail requirements of 4.8.5 shall not apply.

15.5.3.2 Accessible Route - Adjacent to the Playing Surface. Where the accessible route is located adjacent to the playing surface, the requirements of 4.3 shall apply.

15.5.4 Start of Play Areas. Start of play areas at holes required to comply with 15.5.2 shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48 and shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

15.5.5 Golf Club Reach Range. All areas within accessible holes where golf balls rest shall be within 36 inches (915 mm) maximum of an accessible route having a maximum slope of 1:20 for 48 inches (1220 mm) in length (see Fig. 63).

NOTE: Figure 63 shows in plan view golf club reach range to be 36 inches maximum measured from accessible routes with a width of 36 inches minimum and a slope of 1:20 maximum.

15.6 Play Areas.

15.6.1 General. Newly designed and newly constructed play areas for children ages 2 and over and altered portions of existing play areas shall comply with the applicable provisions of section 4, except as modified or otherwise provided by this section. Where separate play areas are provided within a site for specified age groups, each play area shall comply with this section. Where play areas are designed or constructed in phases, this section shall be applied so that when each successive addition is completed, the entire play area complies with all the applicable provisions of this section.

EXCEPTION 1: Play areas located in family child care facilities where the proprietor actually resides shall not be required to comply with 15.6.

EXCEPTION 2: Where play components are relocated in existing play areas for the purpose of creating safe use zones, 15.6 shall not apply, provided that the ground surface is not changed or extended for more than one use zone.

EXCEPTION 3: Where play components are altered and the ground surface is not altered, the ground surface shall not be required to comply with 15.6.7, unless required by 4.1.6(2).

EXCEPTION 4: The provisions of 15.6.1 through 15.6.7 shall not apply to amusement attractions.

EXCEPTION 5: Compliance with 4.4 shall not be required within the boundary of the play area.

EXCEPTION 6: Stairs shall not be required to comply with 4.9.

15.6.2 Ground Level Play Components. Ground level play components shall be provided in the number and types required by 15.6.2.1 and 15.6.2.2. Ground level play components that are provided to comply with 15.6.2.1 shall be permitted to satisfy the number required by 15.6.2.2, provided that the minimum required types of play components are provided. Where more than one ground level play component required by 15.6.2.1 and 15.6.2.2 is provided, the play components shall be integrated in the play area.

15.6.2.1 General. Where ground level play components are provided, at least one of each type provided shall be located on an accessible route complying with 15.6.4 and shall comply with 15.6.6.

15.6.2.2 Additional Number and Types. Where elevated play components are provided, ground level play components shall be provided in accordance with Table 15.6.2.2. Ground level play components required by 15.6.2.2 shall be located on an accessible route complying with 15.6.4 and shall comply with 15.6.6.

EXCEPTION: If at least 50 percent of the elevated play components are connected by a ramp, and if at least 3 of the elevated play components connected by the ramp are different types of play components, 15.6.2.2 shall not apply.

**Table 15.6.2.2 Number and Types of Ground Level Play Components
Required to be on Accessible Route**

Number of Elevated Play Components Provided	Minimum Number of Ground Level Play Components Required to be on Accessible Route	Minimum Number of Different Types of Ground Level Play Components Required to be on Accessible Route
1	Not applicable	Not applicable
2 to 4	1	1
5 to 7	2	2
8 to 10	3	3
11 to 13	4	3
14 to 16	5	3
17 to 19	6	3
20 to 22	7	4
23 to 25	8	4
More than 25	8 plus 1 for each additional 3 over 25, or fraction	5

	thereof	
--	---------	--

15.6.3 Elevated Play Components. Where elevated play components are provided, at least 50 percent shall be located on an accessible route complying with 15.6.4. Elevated play components connected by a ramp shall comply with 15.6.6.

15.6.4 Accessible Routes. At least one accessible route complying with 4.3, as modified by 15.6.4, shall be provided.

EXCEPTION 1: Transfer systems complying with 15.6.5 shall be permitted to connect elevated play components, except where 20 or more elevated play components are provided, no more than 25 percent of the elevated play components shall be permitted to be connected by transfer systems.

EXCEPTION 2: Where transfer systems are provided, an elevated play component shall be permitted to connect to another elevated play component in lieu of an accessible route.

EXCEPTION 3: Platform lifts (wheelchair lifts) complying with 4.11 and applicable State or local codes shall be permitted to be used as part of an accessible route.

15.6.4.1 Location. Accessible routes shall be located within the boundary of the play area and shall connect ground level play components as required by 15.6.2.1 and 15.6.2.2 and elevated play components as required by 15.6.3, including entry and exit points of the play components.

15.6.4.2 Protrusions. Objects shall not protrude into ground level accessible routes at or below 80 in (2030 mm) above the ground or floor surface.

15.6.4.3 Clear Width. The clear width of accessible routes within play areas shall comply with 15.6.4.3.

15.6.4.3.1 Ground Level. The clear width of accessible routes at ground level shall be 60 in (1525 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTION 1: In play areas less than 1,000 square feet, the clear width of accessible routes shall be permitted to be 44 in (1120 mm) minimum, provided that at least one turning space complying with 4.2.3 is provided where the restricted accessible route exceeds 30 feet (9.14 m) in length.

EXCEPTION 2: The clear width of accessible routes shall be permitted to be 36 in (915 mm) minimum for a distance of 60 in (1525 mm) maximum, provided that multiple reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 60 in (1525 mm) minimum in width and 60 in (1525 mm) minimum in length.

15.6.4.3.2 Elevated. The clear width of accessible routes connecting elevated play components shall be 36 in (915 mm).

EXCEPTION 1: The clear width of accessible routes connecting elevated play components shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 in (815 mm) minimum for a distance of 24 in (610 mm) maximum provided that reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 48 in (1220 mm) minimum in length and 36 in (915 mm) minimum in width.

EXCEPTION 2: The clear width of transfer systems connecting elevated play components shall be permitted to be 24 in (610 mm) minimum.

15.6.4.4 Ramp Slope and Rise. Any part of an accessible route with a slope greater than 1:20 shall be considered a ramp and shall comply with 4.8, as modified by 15.6.4.4.

15.6.4.4.1 Ground Level. The maximum slope for ramps connecting ground level play components within the boundary of a play area shall be 1:16.

15.6.4.4.2 Elevated. Where a ramp connects elevated play components, the maximum rise of any ramp run shall be 12 in (305 mm).

15.6.4.5 Handrails. Where required on ramps, handrails shall comply with 4.8.5, as modified by 15.6.4.5.

EXCEPTION 1: Handrails shall not be required at ramps located within ground level use zones.

EXCEPTION 2: Handrail extensions shall not be required.

15.6.4.5.1 Handrail Gripping Surface. Handrails shall have a diameter or width of 0.95 in (24.1 mm) minimum to 1.55 in (39.4 mm) maximum, or the shape shall provide an equivalent gripping surface.

15.6.4.5.2 Handrail Height. The top of handrail gripping surfaces shall be 20 in (510 mm) minimum to 28 in (710 mm) maximum above the ramp surface.

15.6.5 Transfer Systems. Where transfer systems are provided to connect elevated play components, the transfer systems shall comply with 15.6.5.

15.6.5.1 Transfer Platforms. Transfer platforms complying with 15.6.5.1 shall be provided where transfer is intended to be from a wheelchair or other mobility device (see Fig. 64).

NOTE: Figure 64a shows a transfer platform with a surface height 11 to 18 inches (280 to 455 mm) above the ground. Figure 64b shows in plan view a transfer platform 14 inches (355 mm) deep minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) wide, minimum; clear floor space that is 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum is centered on this dimension parallel to the 24 in (610 mm) minimum long unobstructed side of the transfer platform.

15.6.5.1.1 Size. Platforms shall have a level surface 14 in (355 mm) minimum in depth and 24 in (610 mm) minimum in width.

15.6.5.1.2 Height. Platform surfaces shall be 11 in (280 mm) minimum to 18 in (455 mm) maximum above the ground or floor surface.

15.6.5.1.3 Transfer Space. A level space complying with 4.2.4 shall be centered on the 48 in (1220 mm) long dimension parallel to the 24 in (610 mm) minimum long unobstructed side of the transfer platform.

15.6.5.1.4 Transfer Supports. A means of support for transferring shall be provided.

15.6.5.2 Transfer Steps. Transfer steps complying with 15.6.5.2 shall be provided where movement is intended from a transfer platform to a level with elevated play components required to be located on an accessible route (see Fig. 65).

NOTE: Figure 65(a) shows a transfer step 8 inches (205 mm) high maximum. Figure 65(b) shows a transfer step that is 14 inches (355 mm) deep minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum.

15.6.5.2.1 Size. Transfer steps shall have a level surface 14 in (355 mm) minimum in depth and 24 in (610 mm) minimum in width.

15.6.5.2.2 Height. Each transfer step shall be 8 in (205 mm) maximum high.

15.6.5.2.3 Transfer Supports. A means of support for transferring shall be provided.

15.6.6 Play Components. Ground level play components located on accessible routes and elevated play components connected by ramps shall comply with 15.6.6.

15.6.6.1 Maneuvering Space. Maneuvering space complying with 4.2.3 shall be provided on the same level as the play components. Maneuvering space shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48 in all directions. The maneuvering space required for a swing shall be located immediately adjacent to the swing.

15.6.6.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space. Clear floor or ground space shall be provided at the play components and shall be 30 in (760 mm) by 48 in (1220 mm) minimum. Clear floor or ground space shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48 in all directions.

15.6.6.3 Play Tables: Height and Clearances. Where play tables are provided, knee clearance 24 in (610 mm) high minimum, 17 in deep (430 mm) minimum, and 30 in (760 mm) wide minimum shall be provided. The tops of rims, curbs, or other obstructions shall be 31 in (785 mm) high maximum.

EXCEPTION: Play tables designed or constructed primarily for children ages 5 and under shall not be required to provide knee clearance if the clear floor or ground space required by 15.6.6.2 is arranged for a parallel approach and if the rim surface is 31 in (785 mm) high maximum.

15.6.6.4 Entry Points and Seats: Height. Where a play component requires transfer to the entry point or seat, the entry point or seat shall be 11 in (280 mm) minimum and 24 in (610 mm) maximum above the clear floor or ground space.

EXCEPTION: The entry point of a slide shall not be required to comply with 15.6.6.4.

15.6.6.5 Transfer Supports. Where a play component requires transfer to the entry point or seat, a means of support for transferring shall be provided.

15.6.7 Ground Surfaces. Ground surfaces along accessible routes, clear floor or ground spaces, and maneuvering spaces within play areas shall comply with 4.5.1 and 15.6.7.

15.6.7.1 Accessibility. Ground surfaces shall comply with ASTM F 1951 Standard Specification for Determination of Accessibility of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment (incorporated by reference, see 2.3.2). Ground surfaces shall be inspected and maintained regularly and frequently to ensure continued compliance with ASTM F 1951.

15.6.7.2 Use Zones. If located within use zones, ground surfaces shall comply with ASTM F 1292 Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment (incorporated by reference, see 2.3.2).

15.6.8 Soft Contained Play Structures. Soft contained play structures shall comply with 15.6.8.

15.6.8.1 Accessible Routes to Entry Points. Where three or fewer entry points are provided, at least one entry point shall be located on an accessible route. Where four or more entry points are provided, at least two entry points shall be located on an accessible route. Accessible routes shall comply with 4.3.

EXCEPTION: Transfer systems complying with 15.6.5 or platform lifts (wheelchair lifts) complying with 4.11 and applicable State or local codes shall be permitted to be used as part of an accessible route.

15.7 Exercise Equipment and Machines, Bowling Lanes, and Shooting Facilities.

15.7.1 General. Newly designed or newly constructed and altered exercise equipment and machines, bowling lanes, and shooting facilities shall comply with 15.7.

15.7.2 Exercise Equipment and Machines. At least one of each type of exercise equipment and machines shall be provided with clear floor or ground space complying with 4.2.4 and shall be served by an accessible route. Clear floor or ground space shall be positioned for transfer or for use by an individual seated in a wheelchair. Clear floor or ground spaces for more than one piece of equipment shall be permitted to overlap.

15.7.3 Bowling Lanes. Where bowling lanes are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one of each type of lane shall be served by an accessible route.

15.7.4 Shooting Facilities. Where fixed firing positions are provided at a site, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of each type of firing position shall comply with 15.7.4.1.

15.7.4.1 Fixed Firing Position. Fixed firing positions shall contain a 60 inch (1525 mm) diameter space and shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48.

15.8 Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, and Spas.

15.8.1 General. Newly designed or newly constructed and altered swimming pools, wading pools, and spas shall comply with 15.8.

EXCEPTION: An accessible route shall not be required to serve raised diving boards or diving platforms.

15.8.2 Swimming Pools. At least two accessible means of entry shall be provided for each public use and common use swimming pool. The primary means of entry shall comply with 15.8.5 (Swimming Pool Lifts) or 15.8.6 (Sloped Entries). The secondary means of entry shall comply with one of the following: 15.8.5 (Swimming Pool Lifts), 15.8.6 (Sloped Entries), 15.8.7 (Transfer Walls), 15.8.8 (Transfer Systems), or 15.8.9 (Pool Stairs).

EXCEPTION 1: Where a swimming pool has less than 300 linear feet (91 m) of swimming pool wall, at least one accessible means of entry shall be provided and shall comply with 15.8.5 (Swimming Pool Lifts) or 15.8.6 (Sloped Entries).

EXCEPTION 2: Wave action pools, leisure rivers, sand bottom pools, and other pools where user access is limited to one area, shall provide at least one accessible means of entry that complies with 15.8.5 (Swimming Pool Lifts), 15.8.6 (Sloped Entries), or 15.8.8 (Transfer Systems).

EXCEPTION 3: Catch pools shall be required only to be served by an accessible route that connects to the pool edge.

15.8.3 Wading Pools. At least one accessible means of entry complying with 15.8.6 (Sloped Entries) shall be provided for each wading pool.

15.8.4 Spas. At least one accessible means of entry complying with 15.8.5 (Swimming Pool Lifts), 15.8.7 (Transfer Walls), or 15.8.8 (Transfer Systems) shall be provided for each spa.

EXCEPTION: Where spas are provided in a cluster, 5 percent, but not less than one, in each cluster shall be accessible.

15.8.5 Pool Lifts. Pool lifts shall comply with 15.8.5.

15.8.5.1 Pool Lift Location. Pool lifts shall be located where the water level does not exceed 48 inches (1220 mm).

EXCEPTION 1: Where the entire pool depth is greater than 48 inches (1220 mm), 15.8.5.1 shall not apply.

EXCEPTION 2: Where multiple pool lift locations are provided, no more than one shall be required to be located in an area where the water level does not exceed 48 inches (1220 mm).

15.8.5.2 Seat Location. In the raised position, the centerline of the seat shall be located over the deck and 16 inches (405 mm) minimum from the edge of the pool. The deck surface between the centerline of the seat and the pool edge shall have a slope not greater than 1:48 (see Fig. 68).

NOTE: Figure 68 shows pool lift seat in plan view located over the deck 16 inches minimum from the edge of the pool, measured to the seat centerline.

15.8.5.3 Clear Deck Space. On the side of the seat opposite the water, a clear deck space shall be provided parallel with the seat. The space shall be 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum and shall extend forward 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum from a line located 12 inches (305 mm) behind the rear edge of the seat. The clear deck space shall have a slope not greater than 1:48 (see Fig. 69).

NOTE: Figure 69 - plan view of clear deck space at pool lifts. On the side of the seat opposite the water, a clear deck space at least 36 inches wide and 48 inches long is shown parallel to the seat. The 48 inch length extends from a line located 12 inches behind the rear edge of the seat.

15.8.5.4 Seat Height. The height of the lift seat shall be designed to allow a stop at 16 inches (405 mm) minimum to 19 inches (485 mm) maximum measured from the deck to the top of the seat surface when in the raised (load) position (see Fig. 70).

NOTE: Figure 70 - elevation drawing shows pool lift seat height to be 16 inches minimum to 19 inches maximum measured from the deck to the top of the seat surface when in the raised (load) position.

15.8.5.5 Seat Width. The seat shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum wide.

15.8.5.6 Footrests and Armrests. Footrests shall be provided and shall move with the seat. If provided, armrests positioned opposite the water shall be removable or shall fold clear of the seat when the seat is in the raised (load) position.

EXCEPTION: Footrests shall not be required on pool lifts provided in spas.

15.8.5.7 Operation. The lift shall be capable of unassisted operation from both the deck and water levels. Controls and operating mechanisms shall be unobstructed when the lift is in use and shall comply with 4.27.4.

15.8.5.8 Submerged Depth. The lift shall be designed so that the seat will submerge to a water depth of 18 inches (455 mm) minimum below the stationary water level (see Fig. 71).

NOTE: Figure 71 shows in elevation a pool lift with a seat submerged to a water depth of 18 inches minimum below the stationary water level.

15.8.5.9 Lifting Capacity. Single person pool lifts shall have a minimum weight capacity of 300 lbs. (136 kg) and be capable of sustaining a static load of at least one and a half times the rated load.

15.8.6 Sloped Entries. Sloped entries designed to provide access into the water shall comply with 15.8.6.

15.8.6.1 Sloped Entries. Sloped entries shall comply with 4.3, except as modified below.

EXCEPTION: Where sloped entries are provided, the surfaces shall not be required to be slip resistant.

15.8.6.2 Submerged Depth. Sloped entries shall extend to a depth of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum to 30 inches (760 mm) maximum below the stationary water level. Where landings are required by 4.8, at least one landing shall be located 24 inches (610 mm) minimum to 30 inches (760 mm) maximum below the stationary water level (see Fig. 72).

NOTE: Figure 72 shows in side elevation a sloped entry with a submerged depth of 24 inches minimum to 30 inches maximum below the stationary water level at the landing.

EXCEPTION: In wading pools, the sloped entry and landings, if provided, shall extend to the deepest part of the wading pool.

15.8.6.3 Handrails. Handrails shall be provided on both sides of the sloped entry and shall comply with 4.8.5. The clear width between handrails shall be 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 38 inches (965 mm) maximum (see Fig. 73).

NOTE: Figure 73 is an elevation drawing of a sloped entry with handrails on both sides that provide a clear width of 33 inches minimum and 38 inches maximum.

EXCEPTION 1: Handrail extensions specified by 4.8.5 shall not be required at the bottom landing serving a sloped entry.

EXCEPTION 2: Where a sloped entry is provided for wave action pools, leisure rivers, sand bottom pools, and other pools where user access is limited to one area, the required clear width between handrails shall not apply.

EXCEPTION 3: The handrail requirements of 4.8.5 and 15.8.6.3 shall not be required on sloped entries in wading pools.

15.8.7 Transfer Walls. Transfer walls shall comply with 15.8.7.

15.8.7.1 Clear Deck Space. A clear deck space of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum with a slope not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided at the base of the transfer wall. Where one grab bar is provided, the clear deck space shall be centered on the grab bar. Where two grab bars are provided, the clear deck space shall be centered on the clearance between the grab bars (see Fig. 74).

NOTE: Figure 74 shows in plan view clear deck space of 60 by 60 inches minimum. Figure (a) shows this space centered at one grab bar. Figure (b) shows this space centered on the clearance between two grab bars.

15.8.7.2 Height. The height of the transfer wall shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum to 19 inches (485 mm) maximum measured from the deck (see Fig. 75).

NOTE: Figure 75 shows in elevation the height of a transfer wall 16 inches minimum to 19 inches maximum measured from the deck.

15.8.7.3 Wall Depth and Length. The depth of the transfer wall shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum to 16 inches (405 mm) maximum. The length of the transfer wall shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum and shall be centered on the clear deck space (see Fig. 76).

NOTE: Figure 76 illustrates in plan view a transfer wall with a depth of 12 inches minimum to 16 inches maximum and a length of 60 inches minimum.

15.8.7.4 Surface. Surfaces of transfer walls shall not be sharp and shall have rounded edges.

15.8.7.5 Grab Bars. At least one grab bar shall be provided on the transfer wall. Grab bars shall be perpendicular to the pool wall and shall extend the full depth of the transfer wall. The top of the gripping surface shall be 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above

walls. Where one grab bar is provided, clearance shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum on both sides of the grab bar. Where two grab bars are provided, clearance between grab bars shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum. Grab bars shall comply with 4.26 (see Fig. 77).

NOTE: Figure 77 illustrates grab bars at transfer walls that are perpendicular to the pool wall and that extend the full depth of the transfer wall. Figure (a) shows in plan view two grab bars with a clearance between them of 24 inches minimum. Figure (b) shows in plan view one grab bar with a clearance of 24 inches minimum on both sides. Figure (c) shows in side elevation a height of the grab bar gripping surface 4 to 6 inches above the wall, measured to the top of the gripping surface.

15.8.8 Transfer Systems. Transfer systems shall comply with 15.8.8.

15.8.8.1 Transfer Platform. A transfer platform 19 inches (485 mm) minimum clear depth by 24 inches (610 mm) minimum clear width shall be provided at the head of each transfer system (see Fig. 78).

NOTE: Figure 78 shows in plan view a transfer platform at the head end with a clear depth of 19 inches minimum clear and a clear width of by 24 inches minimum clear width.

15.8.8.2 Clear Deck Space. A clear deck space of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum with a slope not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided at the base of the transfer platform surface and shall be centered along a 24 inch (610 mm) minimum unobstructed side of the transfer platform (see Fig. 79).

NOTE: Figure 79 shows clear deck space 60 by 60 inches minimum at the base of the transfer platform surface that is centered along a 24 inch minimum unobstructed side of the transfer platform.

15.8.8.3 Height. The height of the transfer platform shall comply with 15.8.7.2.

15.8.8.4 Transfer Steps. Transfer step height shall be 8 inches (205 mm) maximum. Transfer steps shall extend to a water depth of 18 inches (455 mm) minimum below the stationary water level (see Fig. 80).

NOTE: Figure 80 shows in elevation transfer system steps that are 8 inches high maximum that extend to a water depth of 18 inches minimum below the stationary water level.

15.8.8.5 Surface. The surface of the transfer system shall not be sharp and shall have rounded edges.

15.8.8.6 Size. Each transfer step shall have a tread clear depth of 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 17 inches (430 mm) maximum and shall have a tread clear width of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum (see Fig. 81).

NOTE: Figure 81 illustrates in plan view a transfer system with each step having a tread clear depth of 14 inches minimum and 17 inches maximum and a tread clear width of 24 inches minimum.

15.8.8.7 Grab Bars. At least one grab bar on each transfer step and the transfer platform, or a continuous grab bar serving each transfer step and the transfer platform, shall be provided. Where provided, the top of the gripping surface shall be 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above each step and transfer platform. Where a continuous grab bar is provided, the top of the gripping surface shall be 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the step nosing and transfer platform. Grab bars shall comply with 4.26 and be located on at least one side of the transfer system. The grab bar located at the transfer platform shall not obstruct transfer (see Fig. 82).

NOTE: Figure 82 shows in elevation grab bars at transfer systems. Figure (a) shows the top of the gripping surface to be 4 inches minimum and 6 inches maximum above each step and transfer platform. Figure (b) shows a continuous grab bar with the top of the gripping surface 4 inches minimum and 6 inches maximum above the step nosing and transfer platform.

15.8.9 Pool Stairs. Pool stairs shall comply with 15.8.9.

15.8.9.1 Pool Stairs. Pool stairs shall comply with 4.9, except as modified below.

15.8.9.2 Handrails. The width between handrails shall be 20 inches (510 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum. Handrail extensions required by 4.9.4 shall not be required at the bottom landing serving a pool stair.

15.8.10 Water Play Components. Where water play components are provided, the provisions of 15.6 and 4.3 shall apply, except as modified or otherwise provided in this section.

EXCEPTION 1: Where the surface of the accessible route, clear floor or ground spaces and maneuvering spaces connecting play components is submerged, the provisions of 15.6 and 4.3 for cross slope, running slope, and surface shall not apply.

EXCEPTION 2: Transfer systems complying with 15.6.5 shall be permitted to be used in lieu of ramps to connect elevated play components.